This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

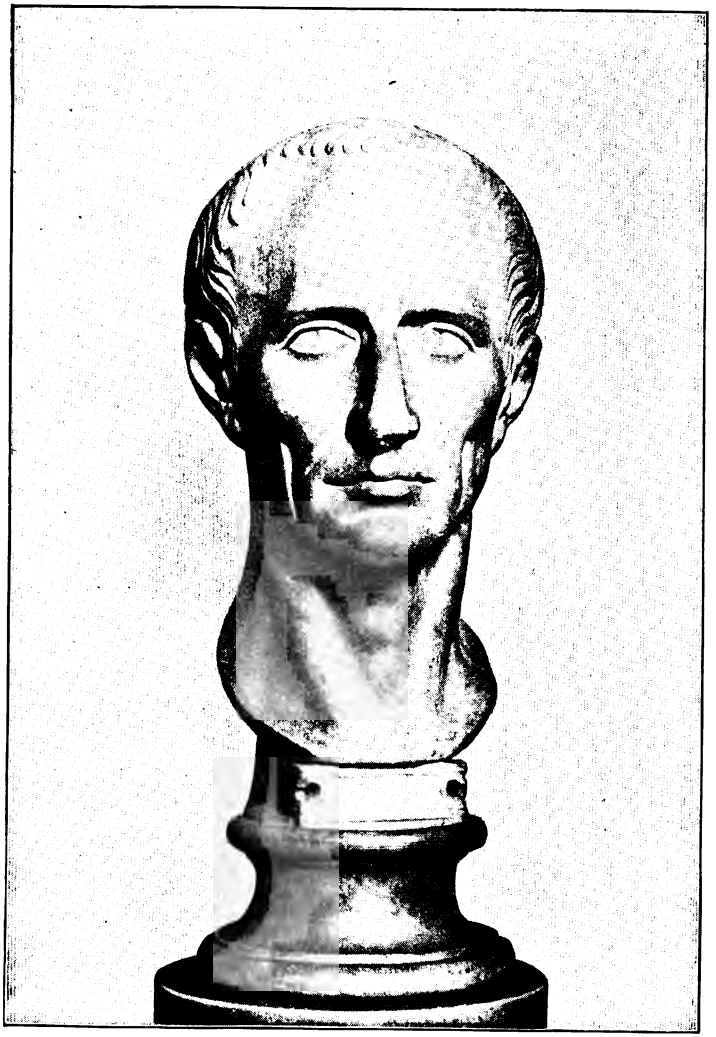
TX 478.61 .C128r
Caesar, Julius.
Caesar. : Gallic war, books I-II. /
Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 04926 9884

CAESAR
GALLIC WAR
BOOKS I-II

SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES



JULIUS CAESAR.

Bust in the British Museum.

CAESAR
GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I–II

EDITED WITH NOTES
SUMMARY OF FORMS AND SYNTAX, PROSE
COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARY BY

ERNST RIESS

AND

ARTHUR L. JANES

OF THE DEPARTMENT OF CLASSIC LANGUAGES
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

597618

C

COPYRIGHT, 1914, BY

E. RIESS AND A. L. JANES.

COPYRIGHT, 1914, IN GREAT BRITAIN.

RIESS AND JANES. CAESAR GALLIC WAR I–II.

E. P. I

PREFACE

THIS edition of Caesar has been prepared in view of the tendency of many teachers of Latin, in accordance with the recommendations of the New York State Education Department for second-year Latin, to limit the intensive study of Caesar to Books I and II of the *Gallic War*, thus leaving for sight reading a wider variation of material to be selected from the remainder of the *Gallic War*, from the *Civil War*, or from the *Lives* of Nepos. It provides the material for thorough study of these two books and furthermore, as a preparation for the requirements of the College Entrance Examination Board, it will be found serviceable when used in conjunction with any collection of sight reading material, although it is specially designed to be used with Janes's *Second Year Sight Reading*.

The text is that of Meusel, revised on the basis of the *Caesar Studien* by Klotz. To aid in the important part which reading aloud should hold in the classroom, all long vowels have been marked, and to insure the acquisition of a working vocabulary, all words required by the New York City Syllabus, which is based on the Lodge list, have been printed in full-faced type where they occur first. These words are also listed on pages 263 to 271 in order of first occurrence for purposes of drill and review.

The notes on the two books are equally full in order to enable teachers to begin the reading of the Commentaries with either book. Our aim has been to make difficult points clear to the pupil without either unduly facilitating the translation or befogging him by elaborate grammatical explanations. The editors have regarded their practical experience in the classroom as their safest guide.

The introduction, for which we beg to acknowledge

gratefully the help derived from Sihler's *Annals of Caesar*, is intended to be assigned to the pupil for recitation. It should help him to understand the historical background of the work, to grow into an appreciation of Caesar as a man and as a writer, and to form a clear idea of the Roman army as a splendidly organized machine of war. For this latter part Oehler's excellent monograph on the Roman army has been used as foundation.

The illustrations, while their artistic merit may serve as well to attract the eye of the casual reader, have been selected with care to clear up, by objective representation, points not readily elucidated in the compass of a note.

The editors are convinced that second-year pupils are not mature enough to profit by thumbing a grammar. Therefore, an appendix has been added which provides in simple form all of the Caesarean syntax required, illustrated by examples taken from the text. In this, as well as in the making of the prose exercises, the statistics gathered by Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators have been of the greatest service. A short outline of accidence has been included, to enable the teacher to give during the year the ever necessary review in forms.

One distinctly novel feature is to be noted. While the exercises for prose composition follow a systematic syntactical outline, their content covers a connected narrative of the events of the two campaigns. The editors believe that during the second year students should be required only to render into Latin sentences that are reasonably short. But they hope, by the arrangement just indicated, that these sentences will have been made more interesting in their sequence than would otherwise have been the case.

ERNST RIESS,
ARTHUR L. JANES.

CONTENTS

PAGE

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS 7

MAPS AND PLANS 8

INTRODUCTION:

I. Caesar's Life:

A. To the Governorship of Gaul 9

B. The Conquest of Gaul 13

C. Caesar as Ruler of Rome 14

II. Caesar's Writings 17

III. Caesar the Man 18

IV. The Roman Army 20

V. The Gallic Civilization 40

TEXT OF *Gallic War:*

Book I 43

Book II 81

NOTES:

Book I 101

Book II 165

GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY:

Inflections 199

Syntax 232

WORD LIST 263

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION 273

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY VI

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY VII

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Julius Caesar. Bust in the British Museum . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

Roman Soldier. Photograph of a model in the Central Museum, Mainz, Germany 20

Roman Shield. Reconstruction from a shield found in the River Tyne, near South Shields, England 22

Pilum 23

Gladius 23

Centurion 25

Roman Horseman 27

Musical Instruments 28

Standard Bearer 29

Eagle of the Legion 29

Testudo 31

Roman Camp. From plan of Novaesium in Germany . . 33

Siege of a Town 35

Siege Engines. (1) *Ariēs*. (2) *Vīnea*. (3) Sketch showing *agger*, *turris*, and *vīneae* 37

Siege Artillery. (1) *Catapulta*. (2) *Scorpiō*. (3) *Ballista* . 38

Roman Ship 39

Gallic Warrior 41

Carrus et Iumenta 45

Roman Bridge 51

Matara et Tragula 59

Gallic Coin 61

Head of a German 69

Sagittarius 85

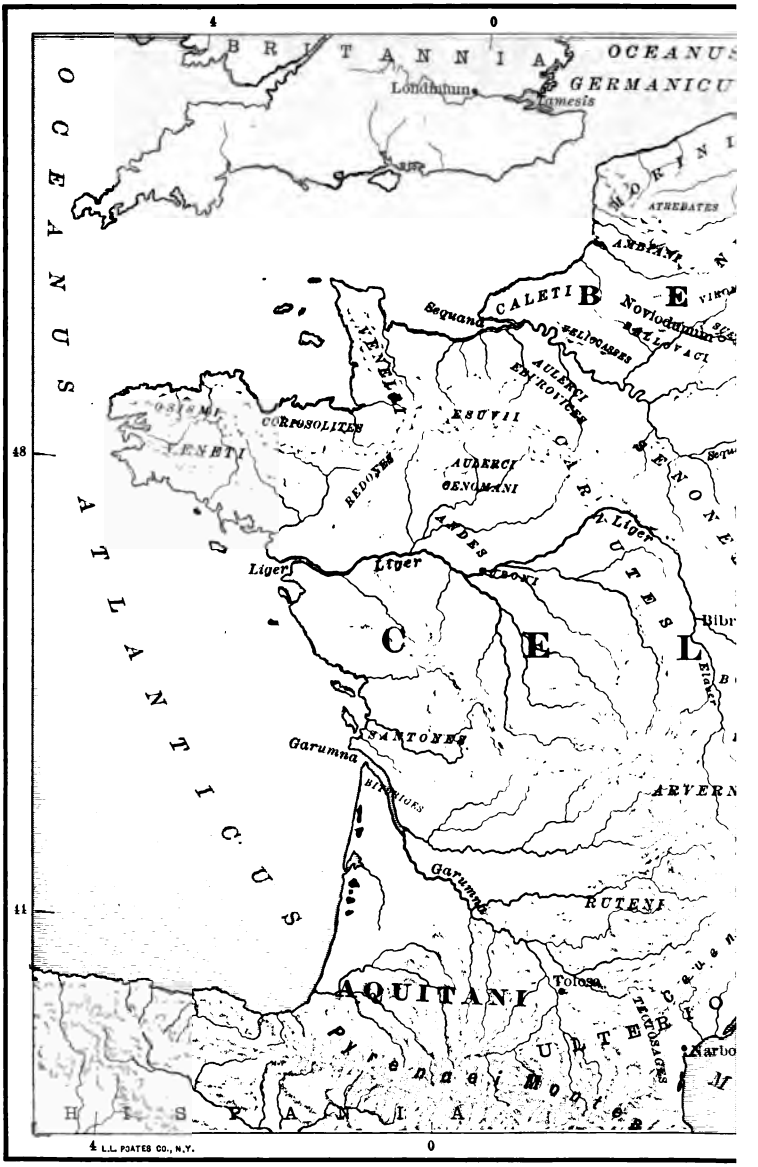
Funditor 85

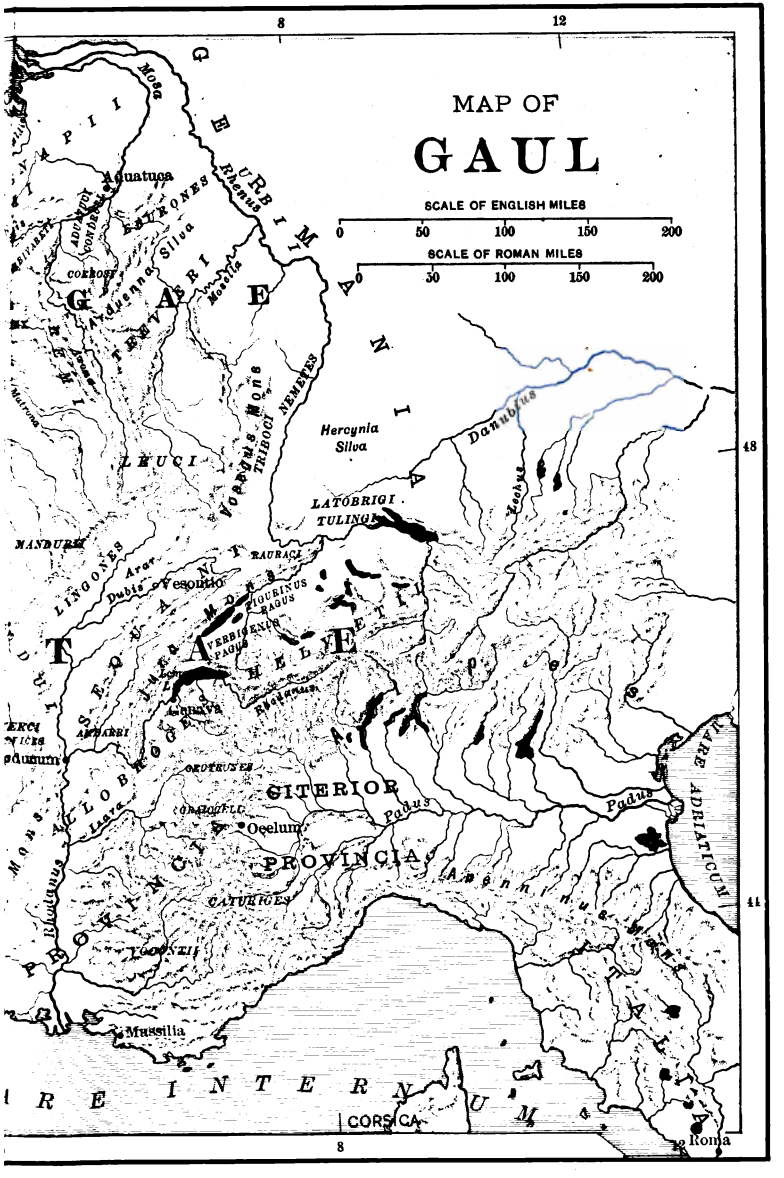
MAPS AND PLANS

Gaul (double page) 9

Campaign of B.C. 58 . . . . . *facing* 43

Fortifications along the Rhone . . . . . *facing* 48
Battle with the Helvetians . . . . . " 58
Sketch of Vesontio 68
Maneuvers of Ariovistus . . . . . *facing* 76
Campaign of B.C. 57 . . . . . " 81
Battle on the Axona . . . . . " 86
Battle with the Nervii . . . . . " 92


4
0
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS
GERMANICU
Londinium
Tamesis
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
CALETI
BELGAE
Bequani
Novioduni
VELLOCASSES
AULERCI EBUROVICES
VENELLI
OSISMI
CORIOSOLITES
VENETI
REDONES
XSUVII
AULERCI CENOMANI
CARNUTES
SENONES
Liger
Loire
ANDES
Garumna
SANTONES
PETROCORII
RUTENI
AQUITANI
Tolosa
TECTOSAGES
Narbo
Pyrenaei Montes
HISPANIA
48
41
4
0
L.L. POATES CO., N.Y.


MAP OF
GAUL
SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100 150 200
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 50 100 150 200
GERMANIA
GERMANI CISRHENANI
GALLIA
BELGICA
Mosa
Rhenus
Aquatuca
EBURONES
CONDRUSI
CAERESI
PEMANI
COCOSATES
Silva Arduenna
TREVERI
Mosella
NERVII
Fluvius Matrona
Mons Vosegus
TRIBOCI
NEMETES
Hercynia Silva
Danubius
Taurus
LEUCI
LATOBRIGI
TULINGI
MANDUBII
LINGONES
Arar
Dubis
Vesontio
RAURACI
SEQUANI
HELVETII
VERBIGENUS PAGUS
TIGURINUS PAGUS
Rhodanus
Aquae
ALLOBROGES
SEDUNI
VERAGRI
HELVETII
Lacus Lemannus
Rhodanus
SEQUANI
Jura Mons
SEQUANI
HELVETII
Pennine Alpes
Alpes Graiae
Alpes Cottiae
Alpes Maritimae
Padus
Padus
Padus
Mare Adriaticum
CISALPINA
GITERIOR
PROVINCIA
Ocelum
Augusta Taurinorum
CATURIGES
VOCONTII
Massilia
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
Roma
48
44
8
12

INTRODUCTION

I. Caesar's Life.

A. *To the Governorship of Gaul*

1. Gaius Iulius Caesar was born at Rome on July 12, 100 B.C. His family belonged to the highest nobility of the city, tracing its origin back through Iulus, son of Aeneas, the founder of Lavinium, to the goddess Venus herself and incidentally, through this connection, to Romulus, the founder of Rome. In spite of this, however, the men of the family, for some generations before Gaius, had not held the highest office in the gift of the Roman nation, the consulship. Nor was that branch of the Julian house to which Gaius belonged closely allied with the ruling aristocracy. On the contrary, Caesar's aunt had married the great leader of the popular party, Marius, and this family tie was of marked consequence in shaping the political career of the young man.

2. He had hardly finished his early education, which had been completely under Greek influence, when — in 85 B.C. — his father died, just after the youth had been nominated by Marius to one of the highest priestly offices in Rome, the priesthood of Juppiter. In Roman fashion, he married very early, when barely seventeen years old. His bride was Cornelia, daughter of Cornelius Cinna, the successor of Marius. Thus his marriage bound the young man more closely still to the destinies of the popular party. Small wonder, then, that upon the restoration of the aristocratic power by Sulla he was one of the first to fall under the ban of the dictator. He was ordered

to divorce his young wife, but with a courage extremely rare among his contemporaries he refused to obey and was proscribed. Only through the earnest prayers of his friends was the dictator moved to pardon Caesar, although, with deep insight into the young man's character, he is said to have exclaimed, "In this one youth there are many Mariuses."

3. Caesar thought it wise to withdraw from the eyes of the ruler and, in order to gain some military experience, entered the Roman army then fighting against King Mithradates in the East. There he so distinguished himself by personal bravery that he received the *corōna cīvica*, a wreath given to those who, at the risk of their own lives, had rescued a fellow soldier from death.

4. After the death of Sulla, Caesar returned to Rome and became a prominent member of the Roman bar, distinguishing himself as a relentless prosecutor of aristocratic evildoers. Probably to escape the enmity aroused by this attitude, he took refuge once more in the East, on this occasion in the island of Rhodes, where he studied eloquence under the Greek teachers, who at that time were the chief glory of that commonwealth. During his journey thither he fell into the hands of the pirates who thronged the waterways of the Mediterranean. The story goes that while he charmed these men by his wit and amiability, he did not hesitate to assert, in apparent jest, that as soon as he should be set free he would pursue them and would put them to death. This promise he kept. His studies at Rhodes were interrupted by the renewal of the Mithradatic War. Out of his own fortune he enlisted some troops and with them held the southwest of Asia Minor, Caria, and Lycia, against the powerful enemy.

5. In 73 B.C. he again returned to Rome and became

the successful candidate for the office of *pontifex*, a dignity in which he succeeded his mother's brother. In 68 he entered upon his political career, by filling the office of *quaestor*. After his wife's death, he, for a while, seemed to ally himself with the aristocrats, for he married Pompeia, Sulla's granddaughter. His quaestorship took him to Spain and he discharged its important financial duties with skill and devotion. Upon his return he supported Pompey, now his relative, for the command in the Mithradatic War, thus joining forces with the orator Cicero against the aristocrats. In 65 he held the office of *aedilis*, the duties of which consisted chiefly in supervising the grain supply and in winning the favor of the populace in the capital by lavish public spectacles. In 63 Caesar became the head of the pontifical College (*pontifex maximus*), and at the same time he was elected *praetor* for the year succeeding. He now declared himself openly the leader of the popular party. When, after the disclosure of the conspiracy of Catiline, the aristocrats had voted to inflict the extreme penalty on the conspirators, he had the courage to oppose these measures and proposed life imprisonment instead of the illegal execution of the defendants. After discharging the duties of the praetorship he went to Spain as governor. This province he managed with great skill, although not with exceeding honesty. On the contrary, he understood so well how to enrich himself at the expense of the provincials that upon his return he was sufficiently in funds to be able to pay off a debt of more than $1,000,000, and still had left an ample fortune.

6. On his return to Rome, Caesar found himself confronted by a critical political situation. Pompey, a man a few years older than himself, had, by a peculiar chain of circumstances, achieved great fame as a military com-

mander. In his early youth a supporter of Sulla, he had been rapidly promoted, had served with credit in Sicily, had crushed the remnants of the Marian party, who had made their last stand in Spain under the gifted leader Sertorius, and had finally risen to the pinnacle of his fame by an energetic campaign against the pirates in 66 B.C. Thanks to this success, he had been appointed commander in chief of the armies in the East, had accomplished the defeat of Mithradates and, after settling the affairs of the Orient, he had now returned, the darling of the army, and easily able to gain the control of the Roman state, if he so desired. Caesar realized with rare insight that the only chance for the democracy lay in effecting a compromise with the man who had the armed forces of the state at his bidding. The charm of Caesar's personality proved irresistible, and in the year 60 Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus, the representative of the equestrian, or financier, order in Rome, formed an informal alliance for the control of the state, often spoken of as the First Triumvirate.

7. The next year saw Caesar *consul*, hampered, it is true, to a certain extent, by the opposition of his aristocratic colleague Bibulus; but, secure in the support of his two confederates, he easily overbore this opposition, which was more stubborn than energetic. Bibulus soon ceased to participate in the active discharge of the duties of the consulship, and the ever-ready Roman wit expressed Caesar's mastery by calling this year the consulate of Gaius and Iulius. Several reforms of the social structure were launched, but with indifferent success. Caesar, who realized that his chances depended on the loyal support of a strong army, determined to procure this.

8. According to the partition agreed upon, he was given the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul, that is, northern Italy,

to which the Senate, of its own accord, added Transalpine Gaul (southern France), to the West, and Illyricum, to the East. Thus began that period in Caesar's life which was to prove of the greatest importance, both for his own career and for the future growth of the Roman Empire.

B. *The Conquest of Gaul*

9. For centuries Celtic tribes, known to the Romans as Gauls, had been pressing upon the Italian peninsula from the north. According to Roman legend they had once even succeeded in capturing the city itself. But the reaction had inevitably followed. In Caesar's time a large part of territory formerly Gallic had been incorporated into Italy itself, the part between the Apennines and the Alps had become a province with numerous Roman settlements, and even in modern France Rome claimed the sovereignty over the South, from the eastern end of the Pyrenees to the mouth of the Rhone and as far north as Lyons (*Lugudūnum*). The greater part of the country, however, remained free, although a few tribes had entered into friendly relations with Rome, and although the ever-recurring jealous bickering among the Gauls themselves offered tempting opportunities to an ambitious general. To Caesar's credit it must be said that he did not create the opportunity, but that it was offered to him.

10. A Gallic tribe in western Switzerland, the Helvetians, unable to withstand any longer the pressure of the Germans from the northeast, had determined to emigrate and seek homes in southwestern France. Retarded by the treachery of one of their great nobles, Orgetorix, they decided to make a start in the spring of 58 and demanded from Caesar right of passage through the Roman province. When refused permission, they tried to enter by a circuitous route. But

with admirable energy Caesar raised first the militia, then a force of six legions, and succeeded in annihilating the greater part of the invaders and turning the rest back into Switzerland. The story of how, through this victory, he was led into a war with the Germans, how the Gauls of the north, fearing for their independence, rose up in arms, only to be defeated, forms the content of the first two books of Caesar's Commentaries; the remainder tells of the complete subjugation of France, the repeated invasion by the Roman army of both Germany and Britain, and, finally, of the last great, and almost successful, struggle of the Gauls for their freedom under their brave leader, Vercingetorix. When this man had finally been captured, Gallic independence was forever at an end, and Caesar could turn to more peaceful means of incorporating the conquered in the Roman Empire.

11. We can hardly overestimate the importance of this conquest of Gaul. For the first time in a century Rome ceased to face toward the east, and turned her aspirations toward the west, where she was destined to leave her abiding impress in the ultimate creation of the so-called Romance nations, Spain and France, whose languages still show the stamp of the centuries of Roman domination. Nay more, had not Rome, continuing in Caesar's footsteps, made the west her own, there would be to-day no Roman church and the world of western, that is, European and American, civilization would bear a totally different aspect.

C. *Caesar as Ruler of Rome*

12. Caesar was not destined to carry the pacification of Gaul to its completion. The alliance of the three triumvirs had been renewed at a conference at Lucca, in 56 B.C. Yet at the end of the five-year period for which it had been

concluded, Caesar and Pompey had become bitter enemies. The death of Crassus, who in 53 had fallen at Carrhae in Syria in a battle against the Parthians, had made it plain that the question must be decided whether Caesar or Pompey should become the sole ruler. The former, as yet, gave no indication of the wide range of his ambitions. He demanded merely permission to stand again for the consulship while still governor of Gaul — an unconstitutional proceeding, it is true, but the Roman constitution had by now often been set aside — and together with this the renewal of his governorship for another five years. When both demands had been refused, the senate in subservience to Pompey tried to weaken his forces, — they demanded that he detach some of his legions for a pretended war of vengeance against the Parthians, — and when all peace proposals on his part had been scornfully rejected, Caesar took the decisive step. He crossed the little stream Rubico, which formed the boundary between his province and Italy, and thus began the Civil War.

13. Pompey, pursued by Caesar's troops, fled, first to Brundisium in the southeast of Italy, and later to Greece; while Caesar, preferring to secure his rear before pursuing, returned to Rome, established there a provisional government of his own, and then set out to defeat Pompey's lieutenants in the latter's official province, Spain. After a difficult but successful campaign, he returned, crossed to Greece, and confronted his adversary, first at Dyrrhachium on the west coast, where he was unsuccessful, and a few months later on the plain of Pharsalus in Thessaly. There Pompey was so thoroughly defeated that he took ship for Egypt, hoping for a refuge with its boy king whom in times of distress he had befriended. But he was treacherously betrayed by Ptolemy, and when Caesar, in hasty pursuit,

established a monarchy upon the ruins of the old Roman republic.

II. Caesar's Writings.

15. Caesar himself has left us an account of his conquest of Gaul in his *Commentarii Rerum Gestarum Belli Gallici*, in seven books. Each of these books describes the campaign of one year, the last closing with the most dramatic episode of the war, the uprising under Vercingetorix and the final eclipse of Gallic freedom. One of Caesar's subordinates added an eighth book, covering the campaign of the year 51. The *Commentarii* were written by Caesar probably before the end of the year 52, from his own notes and the reports which he had received during the seven years. The title shows that the work is not a history, but merely a collection of material for the future historian. This may account in large part for the absence of rhetorical devices in the narrative, and for the arrangement by which book follows book with scarcely more than a word or two to mark the transition from one year to the next. All the more must we admire the lucidity of its style, which is especially apparent in the description of localities, such as the battlefields, and the clearness which makes it possible even to-day to follow the story of his battles step by step. For the student, however, this simplicity has worked serious difficulty, since all speeches are given in indirect discourse, contrary to the customary procedure of ancient historians.

16. The books must, of course, be read with a certain degree of caution. Although Caesar speaks of himself but rarely in the first person, he designed the book to be both a defense and a glorification of his achievements, and while he does not tell any actual untruth, he still has taken pains to

color his narrative in such a manner that he appears to have been drawn into every one of his wars against his inclination and to have undertaken them only to defend and safeguard the Roman state and its allies. Yet, even his contemporaries, torn as they were by conflicting emotions of love and hatred, bestowed unanimous admiration upon the charm of his narrative. The Commentaries, however, never became popular in the way in which the great classics of Roman literature intertwined themselves with the life of the Romans. They were never used by the Romans as a schoolbook.

17. Space permits us merely to mention, in passing, that there are still extant other writings by Caesar, dealing with the Civil War (three books), the campaigns in Alexandria, in Africa, and in Spain. The last three are Caesar's only indirectly, in so far as they are based upon his notes. The real authors are to be sought among the officers of his staff.

III. Caesar the Man.

18. No book can claim to be great, unless in reading it we clearly discern the character of the man who composed it. Judged by this standard, Caesar's Commentaries may justly lay claim to greatness. His character, both in public and private relations, is revealed in his writings. As a soldier, he was resourceful, energetic but cautious, personally brave, and always ready to learn both from his own mistakes and those of his subordinates or of the enemy. A relentless fighter, he knew, true statesman as he was, how to temper severity with clemency, when by its means he might gain the love of those whom he had taught the superiority of the Roman arms. And yet, this man, who speaks of his mercy as well known, could punish resistance or treachery with a cruelty which seems a blot on his

character, but which must be credited to the necessity imposed upon a conqueror who is far from the base of national support. He knew and loved his soldiers, and by strict but just discipline, as well as by indulgence at the right moment, he had ensured a loyalty and devotion on their part, which more than once won the day for him when all seemed lost. With all his tireless energy and devotion to duty he possessed a keen sense of humor and a gift of making warm personal friends, not only among his Roman associates, but also among the Gauls whom he ruled and conquered. Nothing, perhaps, is more marvelous than that, after eight years of incessant warfare, and only one year after a rebellion which had threatened to bury the conqueror amid the ruins of his conquest, he could leave Gaul, without fear of a new revolt, never to set foot in it again. In fact, a generation after the conquest the country had become thoroughly Romanized, and within a century it was fitted to receive from the emperor Claudius full Roman citizenship.

19. As Caesar stands revealed in his writings, so he is shown in his portraits, of which several have survived to our own times. The high forehead — he had early become bald and later loved to hide this blemish under a laurel wreath — shows the deep and clear thinker, the bold eye reveals the keen glance which penetrated and read the souls of men. The thin but sensitive lips betray the orator and the wit, but also the man who appreciated the good things of life, while the spare but lithe frame befits the soldier of many campaigns.

20. Such in image and in word Caesar stands before us, the greatest Roman of the end of the republic. Much hated and much loved, he has been made the object of immoderate praise and immoderate abuse, both among an-

cients and moderns. But, if his admirers have exaggerated his good traits no less than his adversaries have overdrawn the faults of his nature, in one thing friend and foe unite, and that is praise of the general, the statesman, and the writer. He stands deservedly a solitary but imposing figure at the portal leading from republican to imperial Rome, type and model of both ages.

ROMAN SOLDIER.
(Photograph of a model in the Central Museum, Mainz, Germany.)

IV. The Roman Army.

21. Originally a militia of the citizens in arms, fighting in times of war, but otherwise engaged in the peaceful pursuits of agriculture and commerce, the Roman army had undergone great changes about two generations before Caesar's ascendancy. When, in the times of Marius, the citizens' levy had proved insufficient for the demands of modern and prolonged warfare, the great military genius of Marius had turned the army into a professional body, still nominally re-

cruited from among the citizens, but enlisted for a period of twenty years and thoroughly drilled in a rigid system of tactics.

22. The army consisted of **infantry** (*mīlitēs*, *peditēs*) and of **cavalry** (*equitēs*). The former was divided into soldiers of the legions (*legiōnāriī*) and allies (*auxilia*).

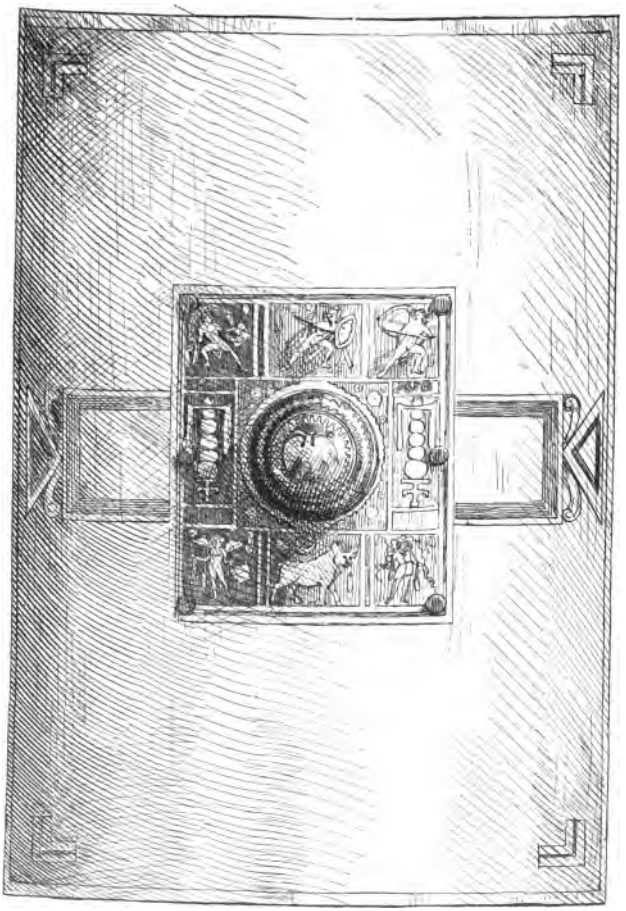
23. The **legiōnārius** was a citizen, who by the oath of allegiance (*sacrāmentum*) enlisted for twenty years. This gave him the right to carry arms and the claim to wages (*stīpendium*) and a pension (*praemia mīlitāria*). Caesar raised the annual pay of the private from 120 to 225 *dēnāriī* ($50), of the subaltern from 250 to 450 *dēnāriī* ($100). This was paid three times a year, and after deducting certain moneys for supplies furnished, the remainder was — at least in imperial times — invested for the soldier's benefit. The total saved, together with gifts on the part of the general and the soldier's share in the booty, was paid to him when he was honorably discharged, and in addition he received a special reward, either in cash or in the form of a land grant.

24. The **unit of the army** was the *legion* — theoretically 6000 men strong, but in fact generally numbering about 4000, divided as follows:

1 *legiō* = 10 *cohortēs* = 30 *manipulī* = 60 *centuriae*.

After eight years of service a legion earned the honorary title of *legiō veterāna*; until then it was known, first as a body of recruits (*tirōnēs*), and then as newly enrolled (*proximē cōnscripta*). The legions were officially numbered throughout the whole army. The consuls commanded numbers I–IV. Caesar began with the seventh legion; by enrollment he reached number XV, and at the last he also had *legiō I* under his command, *ten* legions all together.

25. The soldier was **dressed** in high boots (*calīga*), a

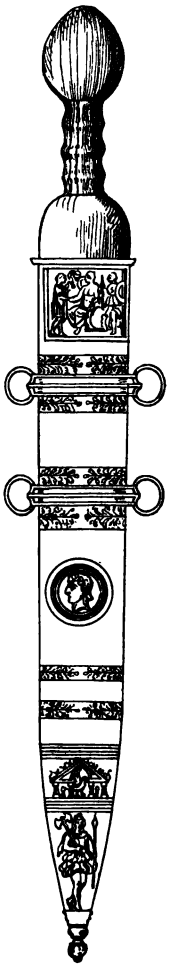


ROMAN SHIELD.

(Reconstruction from a shield found in the River Tyne, near South Shields, England.)

PILUM.

thick shirtlike garment (*tūnica*), and a short cloak (*sagum*) fastened by a safety pin on the right shoulder. The tunic was belted to hold it close. In very cold weather he wore also a thick hooded cloak. His head was protected by a helmet (*galea*), ornamented with a crest (*crista*) of three feathers. On the march the helmet was carried over the right shoulder. He also had a leather cuirass (*lōrīca*) and a shield (*scūtum*), four-cornered and oblong, curved like a half cylinder. This shield was made of two layers of wood covered with canvas or skin, and reënforced with metal strips. The center was further strengthened by a boss (*umbō*), from which metal strips radiated to the corners, forming the representation of a thunderbolt. Leather covers protected the shield on the march and saved the labor of polishing. They were taken off immediately before going into battle. On the march the shield was carried by means of a strap, commonly on the back.



GLADIUS.

26. The **weapons of attack** were two. The javelin (*pīlum*) was about six feet long, of which one third to one half was formed by the iron point, a thin rod of iron with a steel head, while the shaft itself

was of heavy wood. It could be fetched back, in case of a miss, by means of a leather strap fastened to its end. The shaft ended in a short pointed metal shoe, by which it could be rammed into the ground when the army encamped. But the principal weapon was a short, straight sword (*gladius*), two-edged and pointed and used chiefly for thrusting. Contrary to our custom, it was carried on the right side by means of a belt from the left shoulder to the right hip.

27. **On the march** the soldier was burdened not only with his arms, but also with a large amount of baggage (*sarcinae*), several posts for the fortifying of the camp, saws, spades, hatchets, a sickle for the cutting of forage, a cooking spit, a pot, and a cup. In addition to this he carried a war ration of three days' grain, and on forced marches, when the supply train was left behind, he carried 20 days' biscuit. All together he was burdened (*impedītus*) with about 44 pounds' weight. To enable him to transport all this, he was equipped with a forked stick to which the poles, etc., were tied and which he carried over his left shoulder. The whole burden, of course, was always laid aside (*expedītus*) before the army went into battle.

28. The great mass of **supplies**, also the tents and the siege engines (*impedīmenta*), were transported with their attendants on wagons and pack animals, and accompanied by a large number of general servants (*cālōnēs*).

29. The army was also accompanied by **traders** who bought up the booty and prisoners, and by **hucksters**. These, however, were not allowed inside the camp and had to stop outside the rear gate.

30. The **immediate command** of the soldiers was in the hands of the *centuriōnēs*, heads of the *centuriae*. These men had risen from the ranks and could not attain a

higher position. The sixty centurions in each legion ranked according to the number of the cohorts, so that the six centurions of the first cohort — *prīmī pīlī* — outranked all others and were privileged to take part in the deliberations of the council of war. They were distinguished by their uniform and by carrying a cane, of which they made a liberal use in disciplining the soldiers.

CENTURION.

31. Between the centurions and the privates there were several **petty officers**, among whom the standard bearers (*sīgniferī*) were the most important. They had to be men of great courage, since the standards, and especially that of the legion, the eagle, were looked upon as holy and their loss was an irreparable disgrace.

32. The **staff officers** began with the *tribūnī mīlitum*, six to a legion and holding command in rotation, each for two months. In Caesar's army these men were appointed by him from among the young Romans in his suite, and were, therefore, not always distinguished for their military excellence. The great panic before the encounter with Ariovistus was started by these young men.

33. Directly under the commander in chief were the general officers, *lēgātī*, who were nominated by the Roman

senate. Caesar, in the battle with Ariovistus, for the first time introduced the custom of placing them in command of a legion. At that time he had only five *lēgātī* and therefore was compelled to place one legion under his paymaster-general, the *quaestor*. The highest in rank among the *lēgātī* had the title *prō praetōre*, and commanded the army during the absence of the commander in chief.

34. All staff officers were distinguished by their **uniform**, chiefly by a red tunic, and by a cuirass made of metal instead of leather.

35. The **commander in chief** (*dux*) wore the *palūdāmentum*, a cloak of purple color.

36. The **finances** of the army were in the hands of the paymaster-general, *quaestor*, who was elected by the people, while the engineer corps of the army was directly under the supervision of the *praefectus fabrum*, who in Caesar's camp also acted as his confidential secretary.

37. The *auxilia*, who were recruited among non-citizens, furnished the light-armed troops and the main body of the cavalry. The foot soldiers among them served chiefly as slingers and archers, or were equipped with their national arms. From their usual position at the right and left wings of the army in battle line they were also known as *ālāriī*. Caesar's cavalry consisted largely of Gauls, and after the first year, when Caesar had learned to appreciate their skill, of hired Germans as well. They were commanded by native officers under a Roman staff commander, the *praefectus equitum*, and were divided into troops (*turmae*) of about 80 men each.

38. The **bodyguard** of the commander was formed by the *cohors praetōria*, a body of picked men who received 50 per cent more pay than the ordinary privates.

39. The army also numbered in its ranks **musicians**, who

were employed to give the necessary signals. The instruments used were the *tuba*, a straight wind instrument, about three feet long, used chiefly for summons to attack or to retreat, a signal repeated for each detachment on the *cornū*, an almost circular instrument. The signal for relieving the watches was given on the *būcina*. Every even-

ROMAN HORSEMAN.

ing after supper the *classicum* or "taps" was sounded, to mark the beginning of night service.

40. The soldiers, however, placed their chief reliance for the commands to be given in the **standards** (*sīgna*). Each legion had a silver eagle (*aquila*) placed on a cross-piece on top of a pole. This eagle, carried by the *aquilifer*, was in charge of the *senior prīmus pīlus* and was always kept in the quarters of the commander of the legion. The cohort had no standard, but each *manipulus* had one,

MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS.

STANDARD BEARER.

consisting of a pole topped by a crosspiece with ribbons and medals fastened to the pole. The auxiliaries, too, had their *sīgna*, sometimes known as *vēxilla*, a piece of cloth fastened to a crosspiece on top of a pole. Such *vēxilla* were also

EAGLE OF THE LEGION.

carried by any detached body of troops. In addition, there was a scarlet *vēxillum*, displayed over the commander's tent (*vēxillum prōpōnere*) when the men were to form under arms. On the march, the standards were carried in the van, but in battle they were placed behind the last line. In camp, the colors were massed next to headquarters, near a little chapel.

41. The **battle order** was commonly a triple line (*aciēs triplex*) for each legion, 4, 3, 3 cohorts. In each cohort the maniples stood side by side and in each maniple the *centuriae* behind each other, thus:

FRONT

= = = =

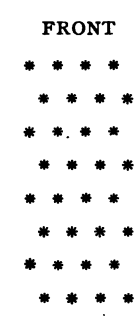
the intervals between the cohorts being equal to the space filled by a cohort. After the first discharge, the second line moved up into the vacant spaces and a single line of seven cohorts was formed, thus:

FRONT

= = = | = = = | = = = | = = = | = = = | = = = | = = =

= = = = = = = = = =

while the third line remained in reserve.



The lines seem to have had a depth of 8 men. The individual soldiers occupied about 3 feet each, while a space of 3 feet separated the ranks, as shown in the diagram.

42. The **tactics** were always offensive. If possible, position was taken on a gentle hill slope, in order to increase the momentum of the charge. An address by the general (*cohortātiō*) after the troops were drawn up (*aciem īnstruere*) preceded the action. Then the countersign was passed along the ranks and the *tuba* gave the signal to charge. First the soldiers threw their *pīla;* then they followed this up with a sword charge, which was repeated again and again, until one of the two armies gave way. As long as the men retreated in an orderly fashion, facing the enemy (*pedem referre*), the victory might still be regained, but to turn around (*terga vertere*) usually meant a total rout. In an uphill battle the soldiers often formed a roof of shields (*testūdō*). The first line held their shields in front, while the others raised the shields over their heads so as to overlap each other. This formation was also used in storming a fortification.

TESTUDO.

43. **On the march** the army was divided into a van (*agmen prīmum*), the main body (*agmen*), and a rear guard (*agmen novissimum*), while scouts and the cavalry preceded and followed and also screened the sides of the marching column.

44. A detachment of centurions and **surveyors**, under the command of a tribune, preceded the column at a considerable distance, in order to select and lay out the camp for the end of the day.

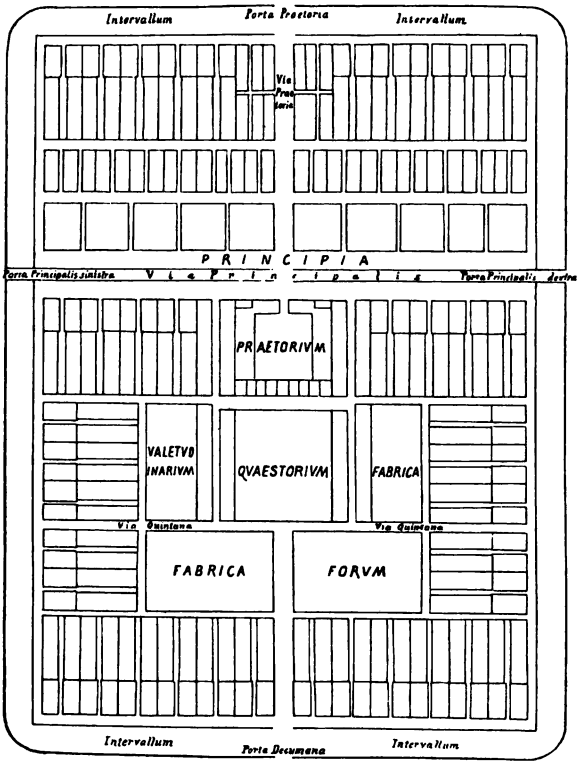
45. The **baggage train** of each legion commonly followed immediately in its rear, but when the army was near the enemy, three fourths of the soldiers, *sub sarcinīs*, preceded, and one fourth followed, the train of the whole army. In these circumstances, where the territory permitted it, the whole body marched in battle line.

46. The **length of the march** usually amounted to about 12 to 15 miles (*iter iūstum*), interrupted by halts for rest. There were also rest days. When speed was paramount, forced marches (*magna itinera*) of over 20 miles, or *maxima itinera* of about 25 miles, were resorted to, and at critical times even night marches were demanded of the soldiers.

47. When the army reached the spot selected, the place for each body of troops as well as the lines of the rampart and the places for the gates had already been marked by flags and the soldiers could at once go to work **building the camp** (*castra mūnīre*).

48. Whenever possible, the camp was built in the form of a **rectangle** with rounded corners. The earth for building the rampart was secured by making a trench and throwing the excavated earth to the inside. But timber for strengthening the rampart and sods to cover its slope had to be fetched from some distance. In the neighborhood of the enemy, this was, of course, done under the protection of a guard and the soldiers kept their cuirasses on. The posts which each soldier carried were fastened to the top of the rampart and formed a stockade, which was strengthened by wooden turrets erected at regular intervals. The gates, of which there were four, one in the middle of each side, were protected by a fronting rampart (*clāvicula*), which compelled all strangers to approach them with the unprotected (right) side facing the soldiers.

A space of 200 feet in width was left unoccupied behind the rampart so as to give free communication all around. The front gate (*porta praetōria*) was connected with the



ROMAN CAMP.
(From plan of Novaesium in Germany.)

rear gate (*porta decumāna*) by a road 50 feet wide (*cardō, via decumāna*), which was broken at the center by the *praetōrium* and *quaestōrium*. As the camp was generally located on the slope of a hill, the road ascended from the

front to the rear, thus making a successful attack more difficult. About midway, the *via decumāna* was intersected by another road, 100 feet wide (*via prīncipālis*), connecting the two side gates (*porta prīncipālis dextra, porta prīncipālis sinistra*). On this street headquarters fronted. In the middle of the *via decumāna* was an altar, while immediately behind it was the general's tent (*praetōrium*) to the right and left of which the *cohors praetōria* camped. To the right was the quaestor's tent, while in the rear there were workshops and the guardhouse. Narrower paths divided the tents of the *centuriae* and the cohorts, so arranged that they stood back to back between the streets. In short, the camp very much resembled, imitated in fact, the plan of a Roman city. The tents (*pellēs, tentōria, tabernācula*) were made of leather and housed each a mess of ten men.

49. At all times the camp was well patrolled, in two reliefs by day and in four watches by night, inspected by the tribunes, while on each side there were strong outposts (*statiōnēs*). When, in the morning, camp was broken (*castra movēre*), three signals were given: at the first the men packed their baggage and struck tents, at the second the carts and pack animals were loaded, at the third the march began.

50. In times of peace, or in winter quarters, the soldiers were subject to **incessant drill**, both in marching and in the use of their arms. Maneuvers formed a regular part of their practice, and three times a month they were exercised on a practice march of ten miles.

51. The **discipline** was severe and the **punishments** (fines, lashes, degradation, dishonorable discharge, and execution) were frequent and swift. On the other hand, merit was rewarded by public commendation, money gifts, promotion,

increased pay and rations, and by military decorations. The latter (*īnsīgnia*) consisted of wreaths of various kinds, among which the most highly prized were an oak wreath (*corōna cīvica*), given for the rescue of a comrade in the face

SIEGE OF A TOWN.

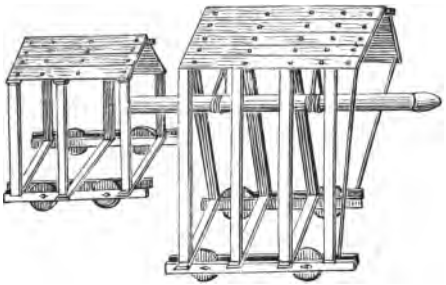
of an enemy, and a golden crown (*corōna mūrālis*) for the man who first scaled the wall of an enemy's fortress. In addition, the men received medals (*phalerae*) which they wore fastened to their cuirasses (see illustration on p. 25).

52. In contrast to the field operations, which were carried on with great rapidity, the **capture of a fortified town**, unless

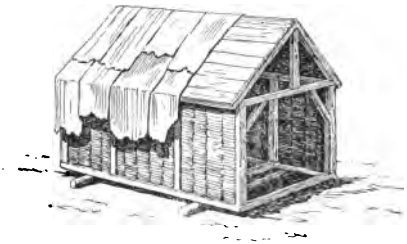
it could be taken by surprise (*ex itinere oppugnāre*), was a slow and tedious process. First the ground was leveled to give easier access to the siege engines. This was done behind huge movable shields (*pluteī*). Then an *agger* or causeway was constructed of beams, stones, earth, etc. It commenced at a distance and gradually rose until it nearly equaled in height that of the city wall. As it approached this, the soldiers worked under the protection of *vīneae*, sheds of strong timbers on rollers, covered with hides, soaked in water, so as to frustrate any attempt on the part of the beleaguered to set them on fire. When the agger had been extended across the moat, a movable tower (*turris ambulātōria*), several stories in height and furnished with artillery and drawbridges, was brought up, or, if the energy of the defenders prevented this, the battering ram (*ariēs*) was brought into play. Such a ram consisted of a tree trunk, 60 to 100 feet long, with an iron ram's head in front. It was suspended from the ceiling of a *vīnea* and swung against the walls by means of ropes. Until this ram had approached the walls, the townspeople might ask for terms of surrender, but after that the town, even if surrendered, was considered to have been taken by storm (*expugnāre*) and its inhabitants were killed or sold into slavery.

53. Where siege works were considered impossible on account of the difficulty of the ground, the still more tedious process of starving the town by a **blockade** (*obsidiō*) was employed.

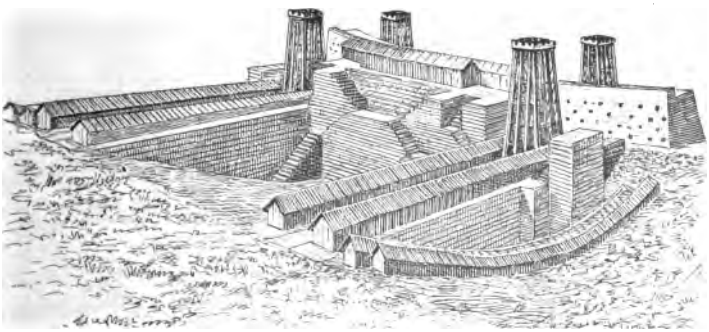
54. The **artillery** (*tormenta*) were used by Caesar for the first time in field operations, largely, however, for defensive purposes. They were of two kinds, according as to whether they shot stones (*ballista*) or beams (*catapulta*), but were both constructed on the same principle. They



(1)



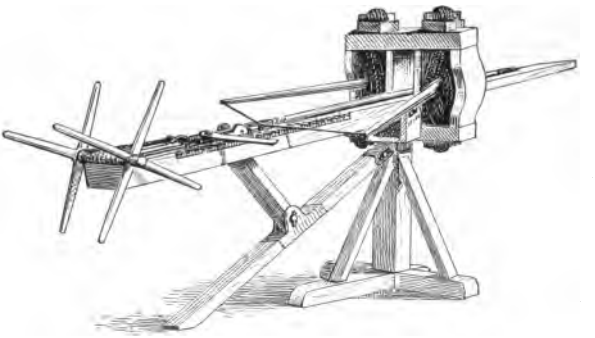
(2)



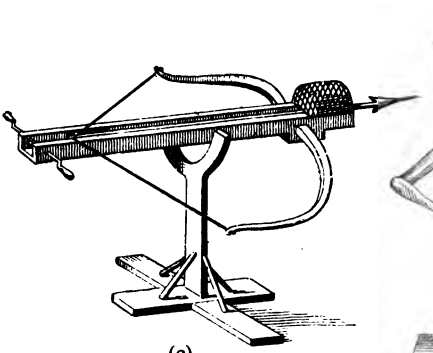
(3)

SIEGE ENGINES.

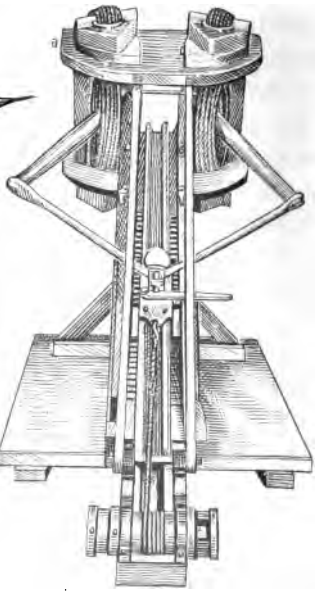
(1) *Ariēs.* (2) *Vinea.* (3) Sketch showing *agger*, *turris*, and *vineae*.



(1)



(2)



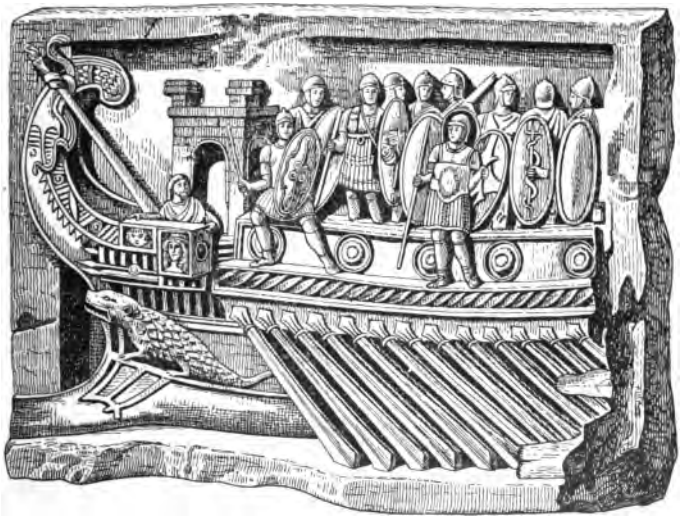
(3)

SIEGE ARTILLERY.

(1) *Catapulta.* (2) *Scorpiō.* (3) *Ballista.*

were worked by means of twisted ropes (*torques*) which, when released, shot their missile with great force and as far as 300 feet. A lighter weapon, the *scorpiō*, could be handled by one man.

55. The **Roman navy** consisted of two kinds of vessels, the galleys (*nāvēs longae*) and the dispatch boats. The



ROMAN SHIP.

galleys were open, rather long and narrow, and were propelled by oars, assisted by the hoisting of a sail when the wind was favorable. The rowers were arranged in tiers or rows, one above the other. The steering was done by means of sweeps, huge paddles, one on each side of the stern. The chief strength of the galleys, which otherwise were very frail vessels, lay in their ram (*rōstrum*), a heavy piece of timber tipped with iron or bronze, at or under the water line. In an engagement the aim was

to cripple the hostile ship either by ramming it or by breaking one side of its oarage by driving one's vessel over it. Roman galleys often carried collapsible towers with artillery in them, or boarding bridges. By means of the latter the galley was fastened to the enemy's vessel, and the contest thus turned into one of military strength, in which the complement of regular soldiers carried by the galley generally proved superior to the sailors of the enemy. Scouting was done by dispatch boats (*nāvēs āctuāriae*). Merchant vessels (*nāvēs onerāriae*) of all kinds were impressed to carry the troops and supplies where a landing on hostile soil was intended.

V. The Gallic Civilization.

56. The Gauls were by no means a nation of savages, though far less advanced in civilization than their conquerors. They were an agricultural people, and generally lived in open villages or in fortified towns. Their houses were as a rule circular, with thatch roofs. Politically they were divided into a large number of tribes, which were governed by their nobles. In some instances they lived under kings, and often the great landholders intrigued to attain royal dignity. There was little unity among the tribes, which were jealous of one another's prosperity. In Caesar's time, however, matters had somewhat crystallized, so that we may distinguish the three parts of which he speaks, Celts, Aquitanians, and Belgians. Of these, the Aquitanians seem to have been least civilized; certainly they were of the least importance politically. The Belgians seem to have been bound together by a loose confederacy, but this did not prove itself strong enough when the invader came, and the tribes fell one by one into his hands. The Celts were the most progressive of the three divisions.

Through long contact with the Greek settlers of Massilia, they had even acquired the art of writing, using a modification of the Greek alphabet. There were among them two factions, one led by the *Aeduī*, the other by the *Arvernī*.

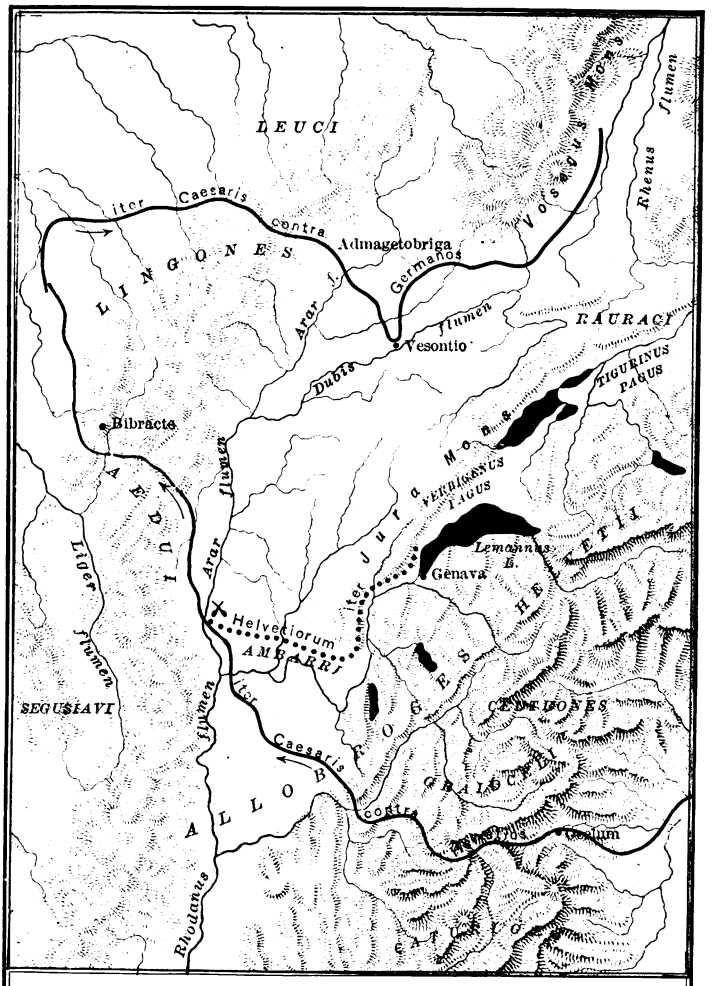
GALLIC WARRIOR.

Both of these factions desired the sole control, but as neither was strong enough, they leaned on foreign help, — the *Arvernī* on the Germans, the *Aeduī* on the Romans, — thus furnishing both foreign nations the longed-for opportunity to conquer the country.

57. All the Gauls, including the inhabitants of Britain,

who were related to the continental Gauls, had the common bond of religion, a rather obscure worship of several divinities, directed by a caste of learned priests, the Druids, and of a stern and forbidding nature. It was certainly disfigured by the custom of human sacrifices, which were made chiefly as burnt offerings.

58. **As soldiers**, the Gauls were brave and enthusiastic, but they lacked the power of prolonged resistance. One defeat commonly sufficed to bring about the surrender of a tribe. They fought in a rude sort of battle line, a solid square (*phalanx*), often strengthened by a bulwark of their carts. Their camps generally were made in the form of a circle. They wore no protective armor, save a rude helmet made of the heads of wild animals, and shields of wood or wicker. They employed several kinds of javelins (*matara*, *trāgula*), and a long bronze saber for hewing. The tribes of northwestern Gaul, especially the *Venetī* (Vendée), were good sailors, skilled in maneuvering their sailing vessels. These were built with special regard to the nature of the rough sea of the Bay of Biscay, and for a while offered a stout resistance to Roman attack.



CAMPAIGNS OF 58 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES 0 20 40 60 80

ROMAN MILES 0 20 40 60 80

C. IULII CAESARIS

RERUM GESTARUM BELLI GALLICI

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

Gaul and its inhabitants.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem

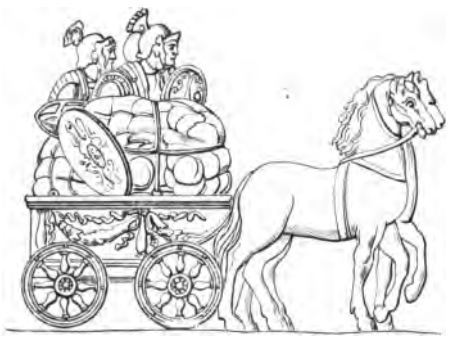
sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs **montēs** et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter **occāsum** sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The conspiracy of Orgetorix, the Helvetian; his death.

2. **Apud** Helvētiōs longē **nōbilissimus** fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, **rēgnī** cupiditāte **inductus** coniūrātiōnem **nōbilitātis fēcit** et **cīvitātī persuāsit ut** dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus **cōpiīs exīrent**: Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus **praestārent, tōtīus** Galliae **imperiō potīrī**. Id hōc **facilius** iīs persuāsit, quod **undique locī nātūrā** Helvētiī continentur: ūnā **ex** parte flūmine Rhēnō **lātissimō** atque **altissimō**, quī **agrum** Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; **altērā** ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā **lacū** Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs **rēbus fīēbat** ut et minus lātē **vagārentur** et minus facile **fīnitimīs** bellum **īnferre possent**; quā ex parte **hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō** dolōre afficiēbantur. **Prō multitūdine autem** hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitūdinis **angustōs** sē fīnēs **habēre** arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem **mīlia passuum** CCXL, in **lātitūdinem** CLXXX **patēbant.**

3. Hīs rēbus **adductī** et **auctōritāte** Orgetorīgis **permōtī cōnstituērunt** ea quae ad **proficīscendum** pertinērent **comparāre**, iūmentōrum et **carrōrum quam** maximum **numerum** coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in **itinere** cōpia **frūmentī** suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus **pācem** et **amīcitiam cōnfirmāre**. Ad eās rēs **cōnficiendās** biennium sibi **satis** esse **dūxērunt**; in tertium **annum profectiōnem** lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx **dēligitur**. Is sibi **lēgātiōnem** ad cīvitātēs **suscipit**. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Cata-

mantaloedis **fīliō**, Sēquanō, cuius **pater** rēgnum in Sēquanīs **multōs** annōs obtinuerat et ā **senātū populī** Rōmānī



CARRUS ET IUMENTA.

amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā **occupāret**, quod pater **ante** habuerat; **item**que Dumnorīgī Aeduō, **frātrī** Dīviciācī, quī eō **tempore** prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī **acceptus** erat, ut **idem cōnārētur** persuādet, eīque **fīliam** suam in mātrimōnium **dat**. Perfacile factū esse **illīs probat** cōnāta **perficere**, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: **Nōn** esse dubium **quīn** tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētii possent: sē suīs cōpiīs suōque **exercitū** illīs rēgna **conciliātūrum** cōnfirmat. Hāc **ōrātiōne** adductī inter sē **fidem** et **iūs iūrandum** dant et rēgnō occupātō **per** trēs potentissimōs ac **firmissimōs** populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse **spērant**.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium **ēnūntiāta**. **Mōribus** suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere **coēgērunt**; damnātum poenam **sequī oportēbat**, ut **ignī** cremārētur. **Diē** cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia **decem**, undique coēgit, et omnēs **clientēs** obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum

magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem **condūxit**; per **eōs, nē** causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās **ob** eam **rem incitāta armīs** iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs **magistrātūs** cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; **neque** abest **suspīciō**, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi **mortem** cōnscīverit.

The Helvetians prepare to emigrate; their choice of routes.

5. **Post** eius mortem **nihilō** minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. **Ubi iam** sē ad eam rem **parātōs** esse arbitrātī sunt, **oppida** sua omnia, numerō ad **duodecim, vīcōs** ad **quadringentōs,** reliqua **prīvāta aedificia incendunt**; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum **portātūrī** erant, combūrunt, ut, **domum** reditiōnis **spē sublātā**, parātiōrēs ad omnia **perīcula subeunda** essent; trium **mēnsium** molita cibāria sibi **quemque** domō efferre **iubent**. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs utī eōdem **ūsī cōnsiliō,** oppidīs suīs vīcisque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum **trānsierant** Nōrēiamque **oppugnābant, receptōs** ad sē **sociōs** sibi ascīscunt.

6. Erant **omnīnō** itinera **duo** quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, **vix** quā **singulī** carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque **expeditius**, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper **pācātī** erant, Rhodanus **fluit**, isque **nōnnūllīs** locīs **vadō** trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō **pōns** ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē

vel persuāsūrōs, quod **nōndum bonō** animō in populum Rōmānum **vidērentur, exīstimābant,** vel **vī** coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs **īre paterentur.** Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad **rīpam** Rhodanī omnēs **conveniant.** Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Aprīl., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar hurries to Gaul; he parleys with the Helvetians.

7. Caesarī cum id **nūntiātum** essent, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, **mātūrat** ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem** contendit et ad Genavam **pervenit.** Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest **mīlitum** numerum **imperat** (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre **legiō** ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius **adventū** Helvētiī **certiōrēs** factī sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mittunt,** nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius **prīncipem** locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō **sine ūllō maleficiō** iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent **nūllum**; **rogāre** ut eius **voluntāte** id sibi facere **liceat.** Caesar, quod **memoriā tenēbat** L. Cassium cōnsulem **occīsum** exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs **pulsum et sub iugum** missum, **concēdendum** nōn **putābat**; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā **facultāte** per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, **temperātūrōs** ab **iniūriā** et maleficiō exīstimābat. **Tamen,** ut **spatium intercēdere** posset, **dum** mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs **respondit** diem sē ad dēlīberandum **sūmptūrum**; **sī quid vellent,** ad Īd. Aprīl. **reverterentur.**

Caesar fortifies the passes and repulses the enemy.

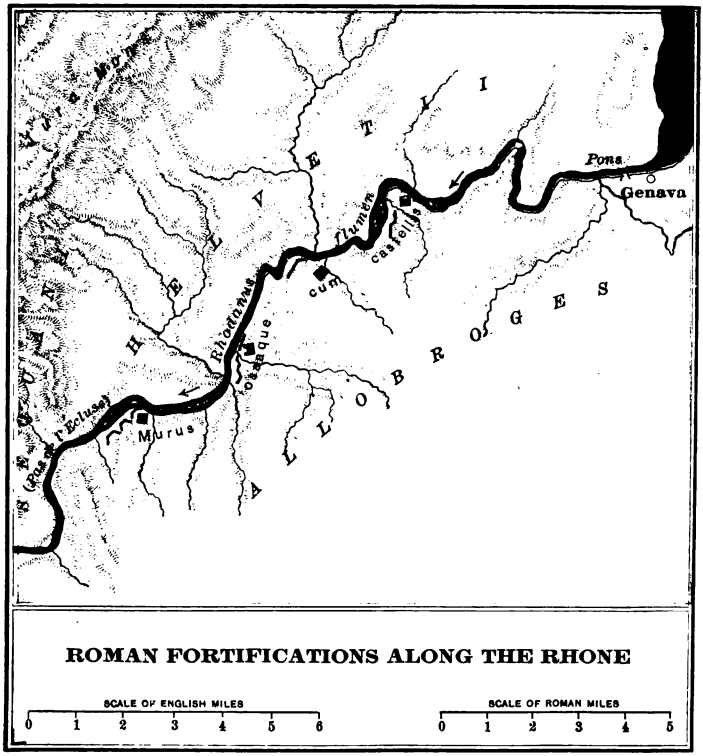
8. Interea eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in

flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XIX **mūrum** in **altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossam**que **perdūcit.** Eō **opere** perfectō **praesidia dispōnit, castella** commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē **invītō** trānsīre cōnentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs **vēnit** et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum **ostendit.** Helvētiī eā spē **dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibus**que **complūribus** factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā mīnima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius **noctū** sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis **mūnītiōne** et mīlitum **concursū** et **tēlīs repulsī** hōc cōnātū **dēstitērunt.**

The Helvetians negotiate with the Sequanians; Caesar levies an army.

9. **Relinquēbātur** ūna per Sēquanōs **via,** quā Sēquanīs invītīs **propter angustiās** īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā **sponte** persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs **impetrārent.** Dumnorīx **grātiā** et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus **novīs** rēbus **studēbat** et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō **beneficiō** habēre obstrictās volēbat. **Itaque** rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, **obsidēs**que utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī **renūntiātur** Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, **intellegēbat** magnō



ROMAN FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE

cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque **frūmentāriīs** fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum **praeficit**; ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque **ibi** legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae **circum** Aquilēiam **hiemābant**, ex **hībernīs ēdūcit**, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat cum hīs **quīnque** legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs **superiōribus** occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō** pervenit; **inde** in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum **prīmī**.

The Gauls appeal to Caesar for aid.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās **trādūxerant**, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs **populābantur**. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs **dēfendere** nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum **auxilium**: **Ita** sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō **meritōs** esse ut **paene** in **cōnspectū** exercitūs nostrī agrī **vāstārī**, **līberī** in **servitūtem** abdūcī, oppida **expugnārī** nōn **dēbuerint**. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, **necessāriī** et **cōnsanguineī** Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim **hostium** prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant **fugā** sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et **dēmōnstrant** sibi **praeter** agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn **exspectandum** sibi **statuit** dum, omnibus

fortūnīs sociōrum **cōnsūmptīs**, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

After part of the Helvetians have been annihilated, they try to negotiate with Caesar; he defies them.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, **incrēdibilī** lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in **utram** partem fluat **iūdicārī** nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per **explōrātōrēs** Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxīsse, **quārtam** ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē **castrīs** profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs **impedītōs** et inopīnantēs **aggressus** magnam partem eōrum **concīdit**; reliquī sē fugae **mandārunt** atque in proximās **silvās abdidērunt**. Is **pāgus** appellābātur Tigurīnus; **nam** omnis cīvitās Helvētia in **quattuor** pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem **interfēcerat** et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve **cāsū** sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae **īnsignem calamitātem** populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn **sōlum pūblicās sed** etiam prīvātās iniūriās **ultus** est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut **cōnsequī** posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum **cūrat** atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī **repentīnō** eius adventū **commōtī**, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx **aegerrimē** cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō **dux** Helvēti-

ōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare **ēgit**: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem

ROMAN BRIDGE.

itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōn-
230 stituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminīscerētur et **veteris** incommodī populī Rōmānī et **prīstinae** virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod **improvīsō** ūnum pāgum **adortus** esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium **ferre** nōn possent, nē ob eam rem
235 aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs **dēspiceret**; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut **insidiīs** nīterentur. Quārē nē **committeret** ut is locus ubi **cōnstitissent** ex

calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō **gravius** ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī **accidissent**; quī sī **alicuius** iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile **cavēre**; sed eō **dēceptum**, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē **timēret**, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris **contumēliae** oblīviscī vellet, num etiam **recentium** iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim **temptāssent**, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs **vexāssent**, memoriam **dēpōnere** posse? Quod suā **victōriā tam** īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam **diū** sē impūne iniūriās intulisse **admīrārentur**, eōdem pertinēre. **Cōnsuēsse enim** deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex **commūtātiōne** rērum **doleant**, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs **secundiōrēs interdum** rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae **pollicean-tur** factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō **discessit**.

Caesar's cavalry defeated.

15. **Posterō** diē castra ex eō locō **movent**. Idem facit Caesar **equitātum**que omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, **praemittit** quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum

agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

Caesar suspects treachery on the part of the Aeduans.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

His suspicions confirmed; Dumnorix accused.

17. **Tum dēmum** Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat **prōpōnit**: Esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum **valeat**, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem **dēterrēre** nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia **perferre**; neque **dubitāre** quīn, sī Helvētiōs **superāverint** Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs **lībertātem** sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse; quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē **quantō** id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī **sentiēbat**; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, **celeriter concilium dīmittit**, Liscum **retinet**. **Quaerit** ex sōlō ea quae in **conventū** dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; **reperit** esse **vēra**: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō **pretiō redēmpta** habēre, propterea quod illō licente **contrā** licērī **audeat nēmō**. Hīs rēbus et suam rem **familiārem auxisse** et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs **largiter** posse, atque huius potentiae causā **mātrem** in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō **collocāsse**, ipsum ex

Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, **sorōrem** ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. **Favēre** et **cupere** Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit **restitūtus**. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium **equestre adversum** paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, inītium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum **perterritum**.

Caesar consults Diviciacus, Dumnorix's brother, and pardons the traitor.

19. Quibus rēbus **cōgnitīs**, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs **accēderent**, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrātur quārē in eum aut ipse **animadverteret** aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum **studium**, summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem, **iūstitiam**, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet **verēbātur**. Itaque **priusquam quicquam** cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus **remōtīs**, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum

eō **colloquitur**; **simul** commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. **Petit** atque **hortātur** ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multīs cum **lacrimīs** Caesarem **complexus** obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: **Scīre** sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad **minuendam** grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre **frāternō** et exīstimātiōne **vulgī** commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus **verbīs flēns** ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius **dextram** prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem **ōrandī** faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem **adhibet**; quae in eō **reprehendat** ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; **monet** ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum **loquātur**, scīre possit.

An ambuscade is planned, but frustrated by the cowardice of one of the officers.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte **cōnsēdisse** mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs **octō**,

quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in **circuitū** ascēnsus quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant summum iugum montis **ascendere** iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī **mīlitāris perītissimus** habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et **posteā** in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā **lūce**, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex **captīvīs comperit**, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius **equō admissō** ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum **collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.** Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, **nisi** ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs **impetus** fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium **timōre** perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat **intervāllō**, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar turns to Bibracte; the Helvetians follow.

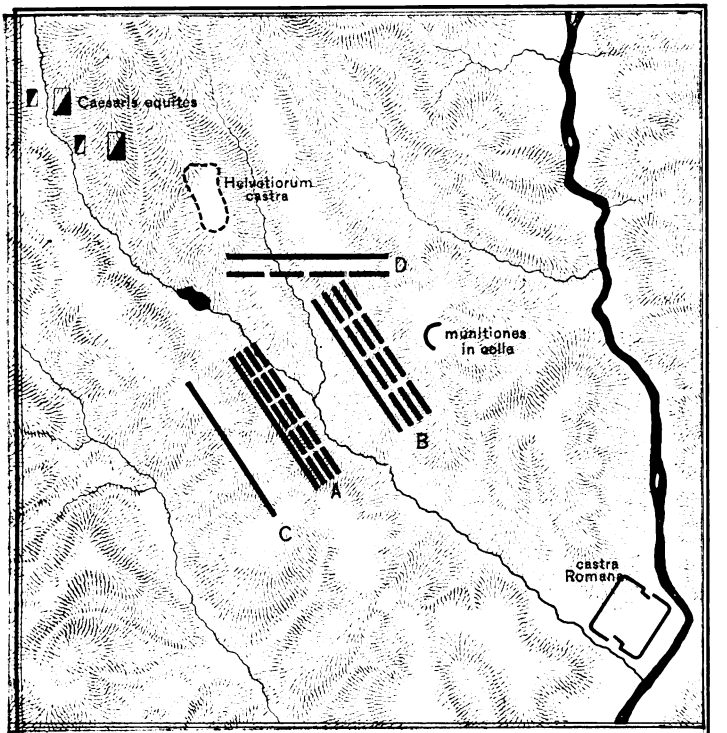
23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō **bīduum supererat** cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiō-

sissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod **prīdiē** superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā **interclūdī** posse **cōnfīderent**, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere **conversō** nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

The Helvetians, defeatea in a decisive battle, flee.

24. **Postquam** id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī **sustinēret** hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle **mediō triplicem** aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ita utī **suprā** sē tōtum montem hominibus **complēret, impedīmenta** sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant **mūnīrī** iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī **cōnfertissimā** aciē, **rēiectō** nostrō equitātū, **phalange** factā sub prīmam nostram aciem **successērunt**.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, **cohortātus** suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre **pīlīs** missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā **gladiīs** dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad **pugnam** erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum **scūtīs** ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

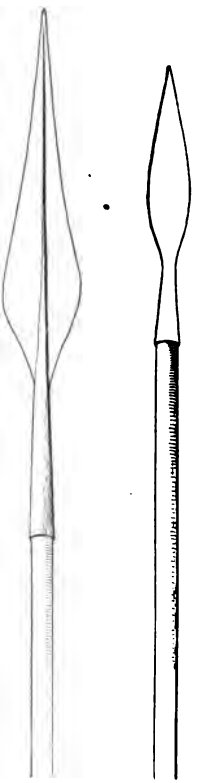
A. Position of Helvetians at the beginning of first engagement
B. Position of Romans at the beginning of first engagement
C. Position of Romans after the first engagement
D. Position of Helvetians after renewing the battle

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 ½ 1 1½

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 ½ 1 1½

ēvellere neque **sinistrā** impedītā satis **commodē pugnāre** poterant, multī ut diū iactātō **bracchiō** praeoptārent scūtum **manū** ēmittere et nūdō **corpore** pugnāre. **Tandem** **vulneribus dēfessī** et pedem **referre** et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab **latere apertō** aggressī **circumvenīre**, et id **cōnspicātī** Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, **rūrsus** īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa **sīgna** bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut **victīs** ac submōtīs **resisteret**; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita **ancipitī** proeliō diū atque **ācriter** pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab **hōrā** septimā ad **vesperum** pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro **vāllō** carrōs **obiēcerant** et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla **coniciēbant**, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās **subiciēbant** nos-



MATARA ET TRAGULA.

trōsque **vulnerābant.** Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere **intermissō** in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī **trīduum morātī** eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs **litterās nūntiōsque** mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē **iuvārent**; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetians surrender and are sent back to their country.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum **inopiā** adductī lēgātōs dē **dēditiōne** ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs **prōiēcissent suppliciterque** locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent **poposcit.** Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs **trāditīs** suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē **salūtis** inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum **ēgressī** ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et **redūcerent,** sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in

fīnēs suōs, **unde** erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus **āmissīs** domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē **ratiōne** fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant **vacāre**, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in **parem** iūris libertātisque **condiciōnem** atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Size of the Helvetian forces.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in

GALLIC COIN.

tabulīs **nōmināt**im ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot **puerī**, senēs, **mulierēs**que. Summa erat **capitum**

Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia **nōnāgintā** duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum **rediērunt** cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

The Gauls appeal to Caesar for help against Ariovistus. How this man had come to Gaul.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex **ūsū** Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō **flōrentissimīs** rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā **opportūnissimum** ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre **quāsdam** rēs quās ex **commūnī** cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē **permissā** diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et **labōrāre**, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum

esset, summum in **cruciātum** sē ventūrōs vidērent. Lo-
cūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus
factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre
Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē poten-
tātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī
ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde **arcesserentur.**
Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteā-
quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs **ferī**
ac **barbarī** adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in
Galliā ad **centum** et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs
Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs **semel** atque **iterum** armīs con-
tendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem
nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse.
Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā
virtūte et populī Rōmānī **hospitiō** atque amīcitiā plūrimum
ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs
dare, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem ob-
stringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium
ā populō Rōmānō **implōrātūrōs** neque **recūsātūrōs quō-
minus perpetuō** sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.
Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum quī addūcī
nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret.
Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte **profūgisse** et Rōmam ad senā-
tum vēnisse auxilium **postulātum**, quod sōlus neque iūre
iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed peius **victōribus**
Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod
Ariovistus, **rēx** Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsē-
disset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus
tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā
Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēn-
sibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnis-
sent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse
paucīs annīs utī omnēs Gallī ē fīnibus pellerentur atque

omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc **cōnsuētūdinem victūs** cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, **superbē** et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque **ēdere**, sī qua rēs nōn ad **nūtum** aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur**. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās **cēterī** facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō **terram** intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō **vōcem** exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in **occultō** quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem,

velut sī **cōram** adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī **intrā** fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar's reasons for interfering.

33. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. **Paulātim** autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē **occurrendum** putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Ariovistus rejects Caesar's request for a conference. Caesar sends an ultimatum; Ariovistus's haughty reply.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium

utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. **Praetereā** sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō **commeātū** atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum **contrahere** posse. Sibi autem **mīrum** vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō **negōtiī** esset.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: **Quoniam** tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venīre **invītātus gravārētur** neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs **redderet** Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sē, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn **neglēctūrum**.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent

imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius **praescrīptum**, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs **congressī** ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi **dēteriōra** faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō **manērent** quod convēnisset **stīpendium**que quotannīs **penderent**; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

Renewed complaints of the Gauls. Caesar starts against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam **trānsportātī** essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē **coniūnxisset**, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Caesar seizes Vesontio. His soldiers are panic-stricken.

38. Cum trīduī viam **processisset**, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. **Namque** omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī **sīc** mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum **cingit**; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum **sescentōrum**, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut **rādīcēs** eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus **circumdatus** arcem **efficit** et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī **magnitūdine** corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque **exercitātiōne** in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum iīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque **perturbāret**. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā **tribūnīs** mīlitum, praefectīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī

ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, **remanēbant**. Hī neque vultum **fingere** neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs **centuriōnēs**que quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus **timidōs** exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō **audientēs** mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

HEAD OF A GERMAN.

He quells the mutiny. The soldiers apologize. He starts again.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque **ōrdinum** ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīmum, quod aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; **cūr** hunc tam **temerē** quisquam ab **officiō** discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum **perspectā**, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā **impulsus** bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Marīō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā **nōbīs** accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū **inermēs** sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā **armātōs** ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, **plērumque** superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac **palūdibus** tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et **dispersōs** subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae **difficultātem** angustiāsque itineris per cūrae **simulātiōnem** cōnferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre vidērentur aut prae-

scrībere audērent. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs **brevī** tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque sīgna lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam **dēfuisse** aut aliquō facinore compertō **avāritiam** esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium **an** timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā **decimā** legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sibique eam praetōriam **cohortem** futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et **indulserat** praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī illāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, mīlium amplius **quīnquāgintā** circuitū, locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus

certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Ariovistus offers to meet Caesar.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset **ultrō** pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem **peditem** ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium **interpositā** causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus **dētractīs**, eō **legiōnāriōs** mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, **impōnere**, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

The conference has no result; treachery of the Germans.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā **tumulus** terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus **aequum** ferē spatium ā castrīs

utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod **mūnera** amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī **docēbat**; illum, cum neque **aditum** neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberalitāte suā ac senātūs ea **praemia** cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs **cōnsulta** quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī **attulissent**, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: Nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum **remittere** posset, **at** nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuē-

rint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse **dēcertāre**; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn **dētrīmentō** esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditicīī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā facere; eius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn opportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Aeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sēsē **suspicārī** simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī **opprimendī** causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum **dēdūcat** ex hīs **regiōnibus**, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbi-

libus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumquē bella gerī vellet sine ūllō eius **labōre** et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī ut optimē meritōs sociōs **dēsereret**, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus **īgnōvisset** neque in prōvinciam **redēgisset** neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

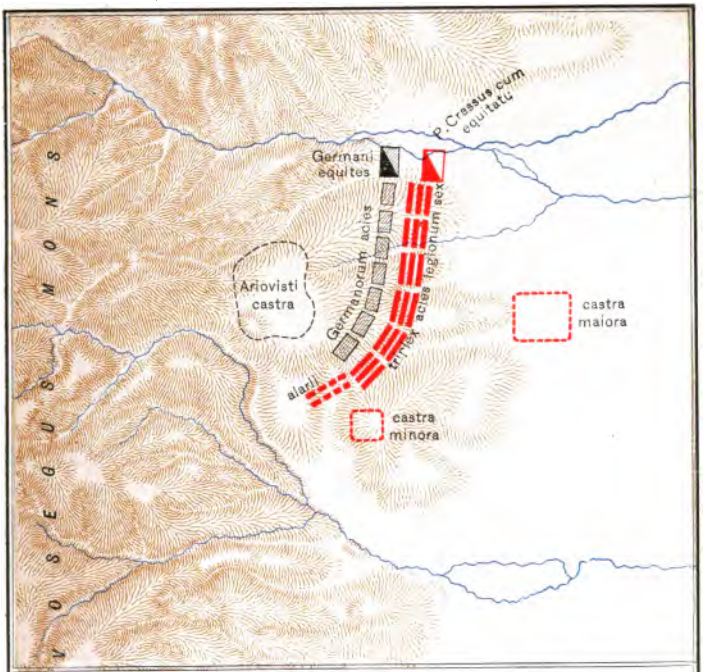
46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre et **lapidēs** tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam **etsī** sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteā quam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī **iniectum** est.

Ariovistus asks for a new meeting, but illtreats the envoys.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valeriī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte **adulēscentem**, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus **longinquā** cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus **cōnspēxisset**, exercitū suō praesente **conclāmāvit**: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in **catēnās** coniēcit.

Ariovistus threatens to cut off Caesar's base of supplies. Caesar's counterstroke.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus **ultrā** eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs **continuōs** quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās **prōdūxit** et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō



MANEUVERS OF ARIOVISTUS

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES

0 1 2

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 1 2

contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. **Genus** hoc erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, **totidem** numerō peditēs **vēlōcissimī** ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs **versābantur**, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat **dūrius**, **concurrēbant**; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, **circumsistēbant**; sī quō erat longius **prōdeundum** aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne **celeritās** ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum **cursum adaequārent**.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs **idōneum** locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitatū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

The Germans are forced to give battle.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, **paulum**que ā maiōribus castrīs **prōgressus** aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dē-

mum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum **sortibus** et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit; ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnariōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad **speciem** ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs **passīs** manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

The Germans are defeated; Ariovistus escapes.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et **quaestōrem** praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō **cornū**, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut

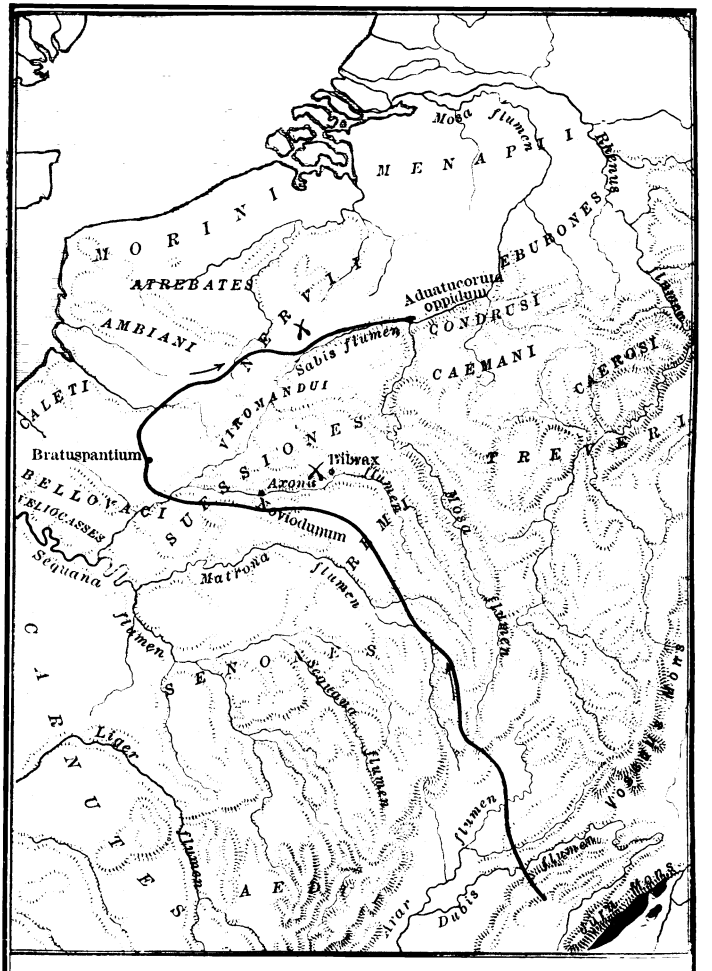
spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum **excēpērunt**. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem **premēbant**. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs **subsidiō** mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs **terga vertērunt** nec prius **fugere** dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam **nactus** eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba **nātiōne**, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā **trīnīs** catēnīs **vīnctus traherētur**, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem **incidit**. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et **hospitem**, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā volup-tāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē **ter** sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum

ignī **statim necārētur** an in aliud tempus **reservārētur**; sortium beneficiō sē esse **incolumem.** Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The other Germans abandon their invasion. The Romans go into winter quarters. Caesar leaves for Italy.

1110 **54.** Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs ubi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt, īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā **aestāte** duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius
1115 paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



CAMPAIGNS OF 57 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES

0 20 40 60 80 100

ROMAN MILES

0 20 40 60 80 100

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

Caesar hears of plots on the part of the Belgians. He recruits reënforcements.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, **crēbrī** ad eum **rūmōrēs** afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum **coniūrāre** obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omnī pāçātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et **initā** aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse **inciperet**, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī **cōnstanter** omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīs-

cerētur. Rē frūmentāriā **prōvīsā** castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi, a Belgian tribe, join Caesar.

3. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnium **opiniōne** vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sēsē cum reliquīs Belgīs **cōnsēnsisse**, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum iīs cōnsentīrent.

Who the Belgians are; the strength of their army.

4. Cum ab iīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent **expulisse**, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre **explōrāta** Rēmī dicēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque

multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte **dēferrī**; oppida habēre numerō XII; pollicērī mīlia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar camps at the river Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus **līberāliter**que ōrātiōne **prōsecūtus** omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs **dīligenter** ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum introdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre

neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum supportārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

The Belgians assault Bibrax, a Remian town, but foiled by Roman reënforcements, they proceed toward Caesar.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum **oppugnātiō** est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs **iacī** coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus **nūdātus** est, **testūdine** factā propius succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi **submittātur**, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum

SAGITTARIUS.

FUNDITOR.

adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque **paulisper** apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō **adīre** potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

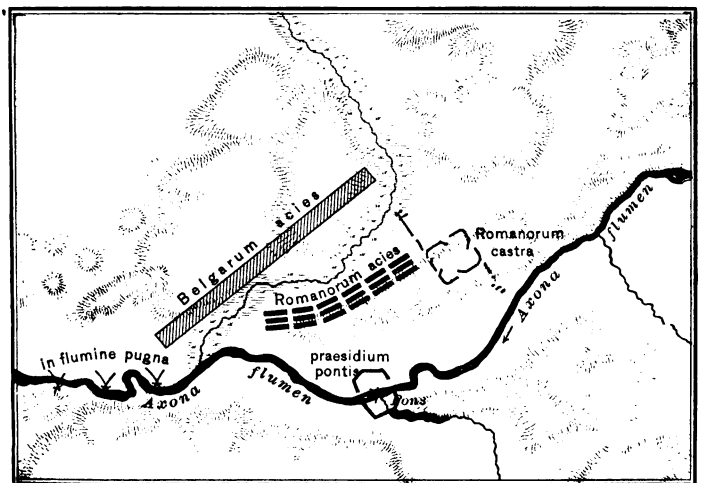
An attempt to storm Caesar's camp is frustrated. The Belgians disperse, but suffer much during their retreat.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs

ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta tenēre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in **fronte** lēniter fastigātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi **neutrī** trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et **levis** armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō



BATTLE ON THE AXONA

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 1 2 3

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 1 2 3

locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria **dēficere** coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum **appropinquāre** cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum **strepitū** ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre **properāret**, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit eīque Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus **subsequī** iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt. Cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōnsiste-

rent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, **priōrēs**, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō **clāmōre** perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnēbant. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones and the Bellovaci surrender.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod **vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs **vineās** agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, **aggere** iactō **turribus**que cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs **nātū** ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in

eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post **discessum** Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

Surrender of the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservatūrum dīxit, et, quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine **morā dēdidērunt**. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī **vīnī** reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse

hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī āditus nōn esset.

Caesar advances toward the Sabis river. The Nervii, at the advice of Belgian deserters, plan to ambush him there. Character of the country.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. **Adiuvābat** etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid

possunt **pedestribus** valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī **praedandī** causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs **arboribus** incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem **rāmīs** ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum **praebērent** quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā **nōminā̆vimus**, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et **contrārius**, passūs circiter ducentōs ab īnfimō apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae **statiōnēs** equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

Caesar's precautions foil the ambuscade. A pitched battle follows.

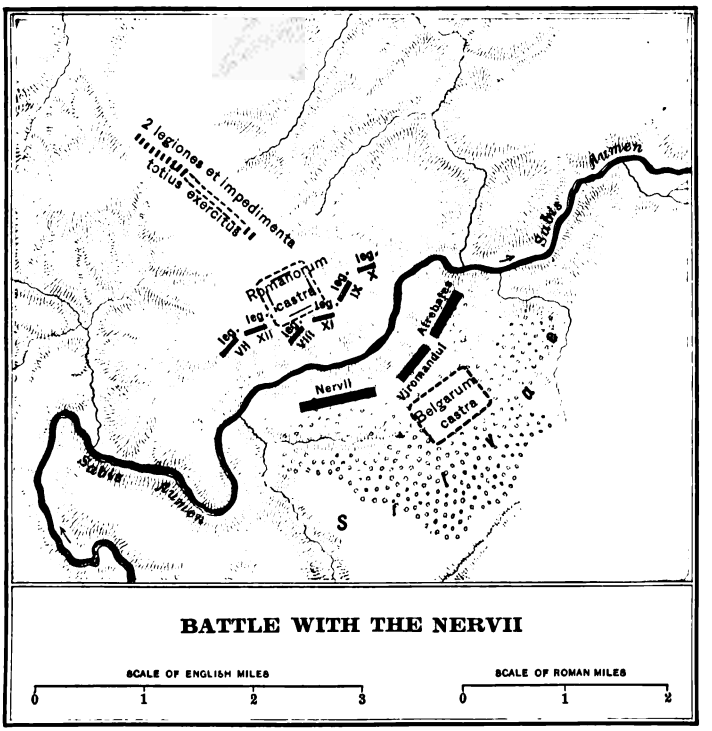
19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem

porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant **cēdentēs** īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab īīs quī in silvīs abditī **latēbant** vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen **dēcucurrērunt**, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The greatness of the danger.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsīgne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum **tubā** dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod, superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur **administrābant**.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam **dēvēnit**. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrā-



BATTLE WITH THE NERVII

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES

0 1 2 3

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 1 2

tiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum **adigī** posset, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad **dīmicandum** animus ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia **accommodanda**, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspēxit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque **dēnsissimīs**, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque **ēventūs variī** sequēbantur.

The plight of the ninth and tenth legions relieved by Caesar.

23. Legiōnis **nōnae** et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine **exanimātōs** vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen **compulērunt**, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs,

ūndecima et **octāva**, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxerāmus, cum sēsē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum **respēxissent** et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, **praecipitēs** fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor **fremitus**que oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs **urgērī** sīgnīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis

omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō **virō**, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse **tardiōrēs** et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō **excēdere** ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus **operam** nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Caesar relieves the seventh legion.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxta cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs alii subsidium ferrent, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et

imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The battle turns in favor of the Romans. The Nervii surrender.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī **prōcubuissent,** scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandī studiō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus **praeferrent.** At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus **īnsisterent** atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Siege of Aduatuca.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās **rūpēs** dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum ducentōrum relinquēbātur; quem locum **duplicī** altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī **ponderis saxa** et praeacūtās **trabēs** in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiae ac praesidiō sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere **exstrūctō** turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī **oneris** turrim in mūrō sē posse collocāre cōnfīderent?

Surrender of the town. The treachery of the inhabitants is severely punished.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existīmāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsi ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, **quamvīs** fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, illī sē quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, **cēlātā** atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-

tūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, **pellibus** indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō **ēruptiōnem** fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar **vēndidit**. Ab iīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

Conquest of the tribes along the coast.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne septimā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt **maritimae** cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The army in winter quarters. Caesar goes to Italy.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātiōnēs ad Caesarem mitterentur quae sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam

Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iis locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

NOTES

References to the text are preceded by l. (line) or Ch. (Chapter); all others are to sections in the *Grammatical Summary*.

BOOK I

CHAPTER I. — DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

Page 43. LINE 1. **Gallia**: the free Gaul, exclusive of the two provinces (*Gallia Citerior*, *Gallia Ulterior*), and comprising parts of France as well as of Belgium, Holland, Germany, and Switzerland.

omnis: translate by an adjective phrase; *as a whole*.

dīvīsa: participle used as an adjective; hence *est dīvīsa* = a present tense.

trēs: numerals commonly precede their nouns. The position gives emphasis to the word.

quārum: genitive of the whole (55).

2. **Belgae**, etc.: the subject follows the predicate because the latter is emphasized. The verb must be (mentally) repeated with *Aquītānī* and (*ii*) *quī*.

ipsōrum: instead of *suā*, so as to contrast it with *nostrā*.

3. **linguā**: ablative of means (85). Translation into idiomatic English?

Celtae, Gallī: predicate nominatives (49). All parts of Gaul were inhabited by men speaking Celtic, the ancestral language of the Irish, Gaelic, and Welsh languages. The word *Gallī*, too, is not Roman, but Celtic. It is the same word as the *Galatians* of the Bible. However, the tribes living in Gaul were not pure, but contained large admixtures of the original inhabitants in Aquitania, and of Germans in Belgium and Eastern Gaul.

linguā, etc.: ablatives of specification (95). Here *linguā* = *dialect*.

4. **lēgibus**: In translating insert *and*. In an enumeration the Romans either used no connectives at all or connected all the members of the series.

inter sē: *from one another*. *One another* is expressed in Latin by *inter* and the reflexive pronoun.

Gallōs: the inhabitants of Central Gaul, the most important neighbors of the Roman province of Gallia Ulterior.

6. **dīvidit**: the predicate is in the singular because the river and its tributary, followed from source to mouth, form one boundary line and so are considered a unit. See map between pages 8 and 9.

Hōrum: for case cp. *quārum*, l. 1.

omnium: in direct agreement with *hōrum* = *of all these.*

propterea quod: literally, *for this reason that* = *because.* To reach a satisfactory and idiomatic English rendering the student should first reach a perfect understanding of the Latin idea.

7. **quod**: to be understood again before *minimēque*, l. 8, and *proximīque*, l. 10.

cultū atque hūmānitāte: the former refers to outward, the latter to intellectual refinement.

prōvinciae: *Gallia Ulterior*, which is Southern Gaul, the modern Provence. Greek and Roman influences had combined to give the Province a polish which was but imperfectly reflected among its free neighbors.

8. **minimēque**: with *saepe*, literally *least often.* The Romans used *parum, minus, minimē*, with the sense of a negative. The phrase means *very seldom.*

mercātōrēs: Greek and Roman peddlers.

9. **ad . . . animōs**: this is not a purpose construction. *Pertinēre* is regularly used with *ad.* Translate *to weaken the character.*

10. **Germānīs**: dative with an adjective (70).

trāns Rhēnum: on which bank of the river?

incolunt: here intransitive. Above, l. 2, it is used as a transitive. The student should early train himself to notice the different constructions possible for the same word.

11. **quibuscum**: for the position of *cum* see 100, 2.

Quā dē causā: translate *and for this reason.* The Romans tried to connect their sentences, if possible. Hence, a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstrative. When a preposition governs a noun with a modifier, the regular Latin order is: modifier, preposition, noun.

12. **quoque**: postpositive. This word cannot be placed at the beginning of a sentence or clause. Other words of this character are *autem* and *enim.*

Gallōs: direct object of *praecēdunt.* Very many compounded verbs are used with an accusative instead of a dative (65, *a*).

virtūte: see note on second *linguā*, l. 3.

13. **proeliīs**: see note on first *linguā*, l. 3.

14. **cum . . . prohibent, . . . gerunt**: this clause explains the preceding statement. Do not translate such constructions by *when*, but by phrases.

suīs: refers to *Helvētiī*, as does *ipsī*, while *eōs*, *eōrum* refer to the Germans.

15. **fīnibus**: ablative of separation (79).

Eōrum: refers to *hōrum omnium*, l. 6. Here begins a geographical digression. The main topic is resumed in Ch. 2.

ūna pars: refers to the country, not to the people. Translate *division*.

quam: object of *obtinēre*, of which *Gallōs* is the subject accusative. The words *quam . . . obtinēre* form the subject of *dictum est*.

17. **Ōceanō**: the Atlantic, the only ocean known to the ancients.

18. **ab Sēquanīs**: ablative of point of view (80); *on the side of*, etc. Latin emphasizes the *place from which*, while in English it appears more natural to lay stress on the *place where*.

19. **septentriōnēs**: the seven stars of the Great Bear or Dipper; *north*. The singular is used below.

extrēmīs . . . fīnibus: counting from the Province.

21. **in . . . sōlem**: northeast.

Page 44. 23. **ad Hispāniam**: *near Spain, i.e.* the Bay of Biscay.

24. **inter**, etc.: northwest.

CHAPTERS 2–29. — THE HELVETIAN INVASION

25. **longē**: with superlatives measure is commonly expressed by an adverb, while the ablative is used with comparatives.

dītissimus = *dīvitissimus*: the order emphasizes the name (found on Gallic coins as *ORGETIRIX* = "king of the slayers").

26. **M. . . . cōnsulibus**: read *Mārcō*. Always use the full, unabridged form of Roman names. For the manner of naming a Roman see 175. The Romans dated their years by the names of the (two annual) chief magistrates, which were put in the ablative absolute (96), with or without *et* between the two names. *Cōnsulibus* represents the noun part of the predicate, the present participle of *esse* being missing. *Marcus, etc., being consuls = in the consulate of . . .*, here = 61 B.C.

27. **rēgnī, nōbilitātis**: objective genitive and subjective genitive (54, 53). Test this by turning the phrases into sentences with active verbs, when the genitive will become either subject or object, thus:

Orgetorīx cupiēbat rēgnum, nōbilitās coniūrāvit. In most Gallic states the royal power had been abolished in favor of popular government, but attempts at its restoration by the nobles were frequent.

nōbilitātis: notice that the suffix *-tās* here has collective force, the word meaning *a body of nobles*. So *cīvitātī*, immediately following. Translate *nobles, citizens*.

28. **ut . . . exīrent**: a substantive clause of purpose, used as object of *persuāsit* (145). Literally, *he made it pleasant to the body of citizens that they should . . .* ; be careful about the idiomatic translation. The verb is plural because with the collective noun the writer thinks of the *cīvēs* composing the *cīvitās*.

cum . . . cōpiīs: in military expressions accompaniment is commonly expressed by the ablative without a preposition. But it is questionable whether the word here has the military meaning.

29. **Perfacile**, etc.: infinitive of indirect discourse (164, *b*), because *persuāsit* indicates that Orgetorix said something. The subject of the indirect discourse is the infinitive *potīrī*. Infinitives are of the neuter gender (114, *a*), hence *perfacile*. The *per-* serves to strengthen the meaning of the adjective; what degree might have been used instead? See 106, 2. In translating the sentence into English, supply *it* before *perfacile* as a merely grammatical subject.

esse: the present tense, because Orgetorix used this tense when speaking. But *praestārent* is in the imperfect because subordinate verbs, *i.e.* subjunctives in indirect discourse, follow the rule for sequence of tenses (158) after the verb of saying, *persuāsit*. In English a similar change of tense takes place with each verb: 'I cannot come because I am ill; he says that he cannot come because he is ill; he *said* he *could* not come because he *was* ill.'

cum: causal, with subjunctive (132).

omnibus: dative with compounds (65).

30. **Galliae**: objective genitive.

imperiō: ablative (of means) with certain deponents (86).

Id: direct object of *persuāsit* (64, *c*).

hōc: ablative of degree of difference (89) or of cause (83) with *facilius*.

facilius: adverb.

31. **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; supply *continentur*. For case see note on l. 18. The Latin idiom is also the reason for the use of *undique*, literally, *from all sides*.

32. **lātissimō**: for degree see 106, 2.

quī: agrees with what?

33. **alterā**: here the same as *aliam* in l. 2. What is the usual difference between *alius* and *alter?*

34. **monte**: singular, but referring to the whole range. In l. 23 the plural was used. Account for the gender of *Iūra*. The highest elevation is about 5000 feet.

35. **tertiā**: supply *ex parte*.

quī . . . dīvidit: only the part of the Rhone from Geneva to Vienna formed the boundary line. The lower (southern) course, from Vienna to Arles, was within the province.

36. **fīēbat**: supply *it* as grammatical subject. Notice the tense, which shows that the change was taking place during these years (62–58 B.C.).

37. **ut . . . vagārentur**: substantive clause of result (148), subject of *fīēbat*. The Helvetians were not a nomadic tribe, as one might conclude, but were slowly yielding to the constant pressure of German tribes in the north and east.

38. **bellum īnferre**: distinguish this from *bellum gerere*. The former always refers to an offensive war.

quā ex parte: *and for this reason*; ablative of source (81), with causal meaning.

hominēs: *as men*; appositive to the subject of *afficiēbantur*.

bellandī: gerund in the genitive after an adjective (58).

39. **Prō**: *in proportion to, for*.

autem: see note on *quoque*, l. 12.

40. **bellī**: objective genitive (54).

bellī atque fortitūdinis: *for bravery in war*. Caesar likes to express one idea by two independent nouns (hendiadys, 171, 1).

41. **sē**: subject of *habēre*, of which *fīnēs* is the object.

in longitūdinem: accusative of limit of motion (75); and so *in lātitūdinem*, l. 42.

mīlia passuum: i.e. *miles*. *Mīlle passūs*, 1000 paces of five Roman feet each, is one Roman mile (about 4850 English feet). The plural is used as a neuter noun with the genitive of the whole.

42. **patēbant**: the indicative shows that these measurements are added by Caesar. As the total number of Helvetians was 263,000 (Ch. 29), a population of 16.6 (or, if we refer 263,000 to soldiers only, of 83) to the square mile does not appear overcrowded to

modern ideas. Modern Switzerland supports about 212 persons to the square mile. But undoubtedly much less land was then under cultivation, and industrial life with its attendant crowding was entirely unknown.

43. CHAPTER 3. **His rēbus**: the facts mentioned before. Be careful about the translation of *rēs*, which rarely means *thing*. Its meaning must be taken from the matters to which it refers.

permōtī: force of *per-?*

44. **ea**: object of *comparāre*, which is complementary (object) infinitive (163, 2) to *cōnstituērunt*; so also *coëmere*, *facere*, *cōnfīrmāre*, lines 46 and 48.

ea . . . pertinērent: *the things required for . . . .* Latin sentences may be simplified by turning dependent clauses, especially relative clauses, into phrases. The verb is in the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse (159) because *cōnstituērunt* is a verb of thinking.

45. **carrōrum**: a Gallic word (cp. our *car*), but early adopted by the Romans.

quam, etc.: see 106, 2.

46. **sēmentēs . . . facere**: *to make sowings = to raise crops.*

ut . . . suppeteret: adverb clause of purpose (123).

48. **Ad . . . cōnficiendās**: *to accomplish this end*; a gerundive construction of purpose (169, 3).

49. **sibi**: dative of reference (66).

dūxērunt: notice the meaning of this verb when followed by an infinitive (of indirect discourse).

in tertium annum: translate *for*, etc.

50. **cōnfīrmant**: the narrative tense (properly past) is often changed to the present in order to give greater vividness (historical present, 116, *a*). So also in the following lines: *dēligitur*, *persuādet*, *dat*, *probat*, *dant*, *spērant*. As the sense is past, a dependent subjunctive may be used either in principal or historical sequence (*occupāret*, l. 55).

52. **Casticō**: "fair-eye."

Catamantaloedis: "just."

Page 45. 54. **multōs annōs**: accusative of extent of time (74).

obtinuerat: be careful about the correct translation of tenses, in the use of which Latin is much more accurate than English. Cp. *obtinēbat*, l. 58.

populī Rōmānī: an example of double dependence. The phrase modifies both *senātū* and *amīcus*; with both it is possessive. In translating, use a possessive adjective besides the noun: *friend of the Roman*

nation by its senate. This was an honorable title bestowed by the Senate upon foreigners, both persons and tribes, implying a loose alliance. Do not translate *populus* by *people*, but rather by *nation*, so as to keep clear the number of the verb.

55. **amīcus**: predicate nominative (49).

ut . . . occupāret: see note on l. 28. Distinguish carefully *occupāre* = *to seize* from *obtinēre* = *to occupy, hold.* It is always dangerous to translate a Latin word by its English derivative.

56. **ante** = *anteā*: adverb.

habuerat: for mood see note on l. 42.

Dumnorīgī: with *persuādet*, l. 52. *Dumnorīx*, "king of the world." The rivalry between these two brothers was destined to have far-reaching consequences in the events of the next five years.

57. **quī**: refers to Dumnorix.

eō tempore: ablative of time when (97).

prīncipātum: not an official position.

58. **maximē**: with *acceptus* = superlative.

plēbī: dative with an adjective (*acceptus*). See 70.

59. **mātrimōnium**: accusative of limit of motion, because there is a change from the unmarried to the married state.

60. **Perfacile . . . esse**: infinitive of indirect discourse after *probat*. Its subject is *perficere*.

factū: ablative of supine after an adjective (170, *b*). As it has the same stem as *perfacile*, it need not be translated.

cōnāta: a perfect passive participle used as a noun.

61. **obtentūrus esset**: the periphrastic conjugation (43, 1) here denotes intention. Why is the verb in the subjunctive ?

62. **Nōn . . . quīn**: the clause introduced by *quīn* (147) is the subject of the infinitive. Supply a grammatical subject, *it*.

plūrimum . . . possent: *multum possum* = *I am powerful.*

63. **sē, suīs, suō**: the repeated reflexives emphasize the importance attached to Orgetorix.

cōpiīs: not *troops*.

64. **conciliātūrum**: supply *esse*. The auxiliary verb of compound infinitives is frequently omitted.

inter sē . . . dant: *give to each other* = *exchange.* See note on l. 4.

65. **fidem et iūs iūrandum**: hendiadys, *pledge and oath* = *a sworn pledge.* See note on l. 40.

rēgnō occupātō: ablative absolute, showing circumstance.

66. **tōtīus Galliae**: double dependence; see note on l. 54. It is genitive of the whole with *populōs*, and objective genitive with *potīrī*, which is followed by the ablative or genitive (86, 1).

67. **posse**: this verb lacks the future infinitive, which should be used with *spērāre* (157, 1).

68. CHAPTER 4. **Ea rēs**: see note on l. 43.

indicium: abstract with collective force. See note on l. 27.

ēnūntiāta: what is the effect of separating this participle from its auxiliary? Why is the prefix *ē-* used?

Mōribus: ablative of accordance (93).

69. **ex vinculīs**: what preposition must be used in English? See note on *ab Sēquanīs*, l. 18.

causam dīcere: *tell his case = plead.*

70. **damnātum**: object of *sequī*, of which *poenam* is the subject. The whole phrase is subject of *oportēbat*, and means, literally, *(it) was necessary for the punishment to follow the condemned man. Damnātum*, however, is equivalent to *sī damnātus erat*. Translate freely, *upon his conviction, the established punishment would be. . . .*

ut . . . cremārētur: explanatory (144) of *poenam*. What is the literal, and what the idiomatic translation of *ignī cremārī?*

71. **Diē cōnstitūtā**: ablative of time when. Notice the gender. In the singular *diēs* is usually feminine when denoting a fixed and appointed day.

causae dictiōnis: *causae dictiō* forms one idea, *pleading.*

72. **familiam**: be careful about the translation of this word.

ad: with numerals *ad* means *about.*

73. **obaerātōs**: men who had entered a semi-servile condition in payment for financial support. Distinguish between *et* and *-que*. The latter is much the closer connective. Here two classes of people are summoned by Orgetorix; his immediate dependents (*familia*), and people under contract obligation to him. The latter are again subdivided into *clientēs* and *obaerātī*. There is a striking resemblance of these relations to the vassalage and serfdom of the Middle Ages.

Page 46. 74. **eōdem**: adverb.

condūxit: contrast with *habēbat*. The latter is imperfect of description; the former shows a simple past fact.

75. **nē . . . ēripuit**: *sē ēripuit = impedīvit*; therefore the *nē* clause (147).

76. **armīs**: ablative of means, with *exsequī*.

iūs: viz., to punish criminals.

cōnārētur, cōgerent: the subjunctive shows that this is circumstantial (129). Distinguish between *cum* = *when*, showing the time of an event (indicative), and *cum* = *when*, showing in what circumstances the action occurs (subjunctive).

multitūdinem: a levy of militia in times of disturbance.

78. **ut . . . arbitrantur**: *ut* with the indicative means (1) *as*, (2) *when, as soon as*, (3) *because*. What is its meaning with the subjunctive?

79. **quīn . . . cōnscīverit**: *neque abest suspīciō* is almost equivalent to *nōn est dubium*. See note on l. 62.

ipse sibi: *he himself to himself*. Notice the difference between the intensive *ipse, himself*, and the reflexive. In English we may omit the *ipse*. What would be a good English translation for *mortem sibi cōnscīscere?*

80. CHAPTER 5. **nihilō**: *by nothing the less* = *nevertheless*; ablative of degree of difference.

id . . . cōnstituerant: turn into a phrase, object of *facere; their purpose*, etc.

81. **cōnantur**: for the present tenses in this chapter see note on *cōnfīrmant*, l. 50.

ut . . . exeant: substantive clause of purpose, appositive to *id quod*. Insert *namely*.

82. **Ubi**: expressions of place are often used with regard to time.

83. **numerō**: ablative of specification.

84. **reliqua**: not *the rest of*.

prīvāta aedificia: isolated houses outside of towns and villages; *farmhouses*.

85. **praeter quod**: supply *id*.

sēcum: see note on *quibuscum*, l. 11.

portātūrī: see note on *obtentūrus esset*, l. 61.

combūrunt: distinguish between this word and *incendunt*, l. 84. Can the difference be illustrated by English derivatives?

domum . . . sublātā: an ablative absolute of circumstance. *Domum reditiōnis spē* forms one idea, *hope of returning home*. *Reditiōnis* is objective genitive with *spē*; *domum* is accusative of limit of motion (75. 1) with *reditiōnis*, a noun formed from a verb and retaining verbal force.

86. **sublātā**: from *tollō*.

ad . . . subeunda: see note on *ad . . . cōnficiendās*, l. 48.

87. **essent**: purpose clause.

mēnsium: genitive of measure (57, *a*); translate by *for*. Allowing about 1 bushel a man per month, the load to be transported weighed at least 16,000 tons, and must have required no fewer than that number of animals for transporting.

sibi: dative of reference.

88. **quemque**: this word, if possible, is always placed next to a reflexive.

domō: see 78, 1.

Rauracīs, etc.: these tribes lived to the northeast, between Basle and Lake Constance. *Rauracī*, "masters"; *Tulingī* and *Latobrīgae*, "mountaineers."

89. **utī**: notice the short *u* and distinguish from *ūtī*, *to use*.

ūsī: translate as if *ut ūtantur*. Similarly, *exustīs* = *ut exurant*.

90. **oppidīs . . . exustīs**: appositive to *cōnsiliō*.

cum iīs: we should expect *sēcum*.

91. **Bōiōsque**: "the terrors." It is the object of *ascīscunt*. The Boii lived north of the Rhine and were trying to escape the pressure of the Germans by moving eastward into Styria and Carinthia (*Noricum*). The name survives in the word *Bohemia*.

92. **Nōrēiam**: the present Neumarkt in Styria.

oppugnābant: contrast this tense with *trānsierant* and use an appropriate translation.

receptōs ad sē: appositive to *Bōiōs*.

93. **sociōs**: predicate accusative with *ascīscunt* (73, *c*).

sibi: dative with compound verbs (65). Literally, *attach to themselves*; freely, *receive as their*.

94. CHAPTER 6. **Erant**: *esse* meaning *exist* is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

itineribus: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause belongs to the formal, especially the legal language. It shows the influence of Caesar's law studies upon his style. The case is ablative of means, regularly employed to denote the way by which one proceeds.

95. **possent**: characteristic relative clause (125, *a*); *roads of such a kind that . . .* They might have crossed the Rhine to the north and made their way through Alsace, but that would have meant a conflict with the Germans, whom they wanted to escape.

per Sēquanōs: the people, instead of their country; insert *the land of.*

96. **inter**, etc.: on the right bank through the Pas de L'Écluse, where the Rhone passes through a narrow defile. See map facing p. 48.

vix quā = *quā* (adverb) *vix: barely such that there . . .*

singulī: *one each* = *single file.* See 24.

97. **dūcerentur**: see note on *possent*, l. 95. Insert *could.*

98. **facile**: adverb.

perpaucī: force of the prefix ?

possent: subjunctive of result.

per, etc.: on the left bank of the river.

99. **multō**: ablative of degree of difference.

100. **Allobrogum**: "settlers on foreign soil," *i.e.* in the Province.

101. **nūper**: 62 B.C.

locīs: when *locus* is accompanied by a modifier, no preposition is used.

102. **trānsītur**: *is crossed* (*again and again*) = *can be crossed.*

103. **fīnibus**: with *proximum* (70).

104. **sēsē**: *i.e.* the Helvetians.

Page 47. 105. **bonō animō**: descriptive ablative (94, 1) with *esse* understood.

in populum: accusative of the person toward whom the feeling is directed.

106. **vidērentur**: subjunctive of indirect discourse with *exīstimābant.*

coāctūrōs: the object (*eōs*) is not expressed.

ut . . . paterentur: object of both *persuāsūrōs* and *coāctūrōs.* With the latter the infinitive is more common.

107. **suōs**: i.e. *Allobrogum.*

eōs: i.e. *Helvētiōs.*

108. **diem dīcunt**: a law phrase, *appoint a day.*

diē: for use of the word see note on *itineribus*, l. 94. For gender see note on l. 71.

109. **conveniant**: relative clause of purpose (123, 4).

diēs: masculine, because it is a calendar date.

a. d.: for the Roman way of reckoning time see 173, 174. Owing to the confusion of the Roman calendar at that time, the date cannot be fixed with certainty. It probably coincided with the spring equinox, a favorite date for such assemblies.

110. **L. Pīsōne**: see note on l. 26. Piso was Caesar's father-in-law. The year was 58 B.C., the time of the present narrative.

111. CHAPTER 7. **Caesarī**: indirect object of *nūntiātum esset* (circumstantial *cum* clause), placed before its clause (anticipated) to center attention on the hero.

id: explained by *eōs . . . cōnārī*, an appositive to *id*. In translating the infinitive construction insert *namely*.

112. **facere**: object (complementary) infinitive with *cōnārī*. *Cōnārī* is infinitive of a progressive present.

mātūrat: this verb is never followed by the *place to which*.

ab urbe: which was the only *city* for a Roman? Caesar, as proconsul, had been near Rome, which a magistrate with military command was forbidden to enter; therefore *ab*, not *ex*.

113. **quam maximīs**: see 106, 2; the plural, because a long march is made every day.

itineribus: see note on first *linguā*, l. 3.

114. **ad Genavam**: for use of preposition see 75, 1, *a*.

pervenit: force of *per-*?

Prōvinciae: indirect object of *imperat*. The direct object is *numerum*. Translate *levies upon*.

116. **erat**: indicative, because it is a geographical note of Caesar's.

117. **rescindī**: *iubeō* is followed by an infinitive in indirect discourse. When the person commanded is named, the infinitive is active; otherwise it is passive.

Ubi: see note on l. 82.

certiōrēs factī: see Vocabulary, *certus*.

118. **lēgātōs**: appositive to *nōbilissimōs*.

119. **cuius lēgātiōnis**: *lēgātiōnis* is antecedent of *cuius*. It is appositive to *nōbilissimōs*, but has been incorporated into the relative clause and put in the same case as the relative.

Nammēius: "son of Nammus."

Verucloetius: "far-famed."

prīncipem: words like *prīnceps*, *dux*, *rēx*, are often used as adjectives.

120. **quī dīcerent**: relative clause of purpose. The infinitives *esse* and *rogāre* depend, as indirect discourse, on this *dīcerent*.

sibi: i.e. *Helvētiīs*, possessive dative (68); literally, *they had in mind* = *they intended*. That which is in their mind (*facere*) is the subject of *esse*.

122. **nūllum**: emphasized by its position. How does English emphasize a negative?

rogāre: supply *sē;* used with *ut . . . liceat* as object clause of purpose. Notice the irregular sequence of *liceat*.

eius: i.e. *Caesaris*. The fullness of the expression, *it might be allowed to them to march with his consent*, is peculiar to the language of diplomacy. Translate freely, *that he would consent to their marching*.

123. **L. Cassium cōnsulem**: 107 B.C.

124. **occīsum, pulsum, missum, concēdendum**: supply *esse*.

125. **sub iugum**: as a sign of disgrace, a surrendered army was sometimes forced to march through a gate (*iugum*) made of a spear laid horizontally over two spears fastened in the ground and so low that the soldiers had to bow their heads to pass. Cp. *subjugate*.

concēdendum: with *esse* understood, infinitive of the second periphrastic (43). An example of the impersonal use of the passive, employed by the Romans when they wished to leave the doer of an action indefinite (115). Translate *he ought not to give his permission*.

126. **hominēs**: subject of *temperātūrōs*. Supply *sibi esse*.

animō: descriptive ablative.

datā facultāte: ablative absolute = a condition.

127. **itineris faciundī**: the genitive is objective with *facultāte; faciundī = faciendī*.

128. **dum**: with subjunctive it means *until*.

129. **quōs**: see note on **prōvinciae**, l. 114.

130. **diem**: here of indefinite time.

ad dēlīberandum: gerund construction of purpose (169, 3).

quid: instead of *aliquid* (112, 2).

131. **Id.**: see 172, *c*, 3.

reverterentur: the subjunctive is used because an imperative, when reported, is changed to the third person of the subjunctive. Caesar said, *sī quid vultis, revertiminī*.

132. CHAPTER 8. **legiōne, mīlitibus**: ablatives of means.

133. **quī . . . īnfluit**: we should say that the lake has its outlet in the river.

Page 48. 135. **mīlia**: accusative of extent of space (74).

136. **mūrum**: Caesar exaggerates. In reality he only fortified level places and increased the slope of the river bank.

fossamque: as there was a fixed ratio of about 3 : 2 between width of trench and height of rampart, only one measurement need be given.

perdūcit: because the work progresses as if one draws a line with the ruler.

137. **dispōnit**: note the force of *dis-*, *at intervals*.

castella: these were at some distance behind the rampart and formed the reserves for the sentinels on it. From them the troops, when needed, were summoned by a signal.

commūnit: note the force of *com-*; see Vocabulary.

138. **quō**: regularly used with a comparative instead of *ut eō*, to express purpose. The case is ablative of degree of difference.

sē invītō: ablative absolute; *he being unwilling = against his will.*

cōnentur: subjunctive of (implied) indirect discourse, giving the reason in Caesar's mind and representing an original future indicative.

139. **diēs**: see note on l. 71.

vēnit: *ubi = when* is regularly used with the perfect indicative (126), regardless of the time of the narrative. In past time we must use the pluperfect.

140. **negat . . . posse**: *says that he cannot*. *Negāre* regularly = *dīcere nōn*.

mōre: ablative of accordance (93).

mōre et exemplō: hendiadys, *established precedent* (171, 1).

141. **iter**: *permission to march.*

ūllī: usually an adjective; the pronoun is *quisquam*. Both are usual in negative sentences.

142. **cōnentur**: subjunctive of indirect discourse instead of future indicative. Notice the sequence and see note on *cōnfīrmant*, l. 50.

prohibitūrum: supply *sē esse*.

Helvētiī: subject of *dēstitērunt*, l. 147. *Aliī*, l. 144, is appositive to *Helvētiī*. We should expect an *aliī* also before *nāvibus* (*some . . . others*) but it is omitted to show that the greater number used *nāvēs*.

143. **spē**: ablative of separation (79). Translate *thrown down from = disappointed in*.

nāvibus . . . factīs: not ablative absolute, but ablative of means. Boats were fastened together and covered with boards so as to serve as a flatboat ferry.

144. **quā**: adverb.

minima: predicate adjective.

145. **interdiū, noctū**: adverbs, instead of the ablative of the nouns.

sī . . . possent: object clause (indirect question) after a verb of trying, regularly introduced by *sī* (151).

146. **mūnītiōne**: ablative of means. Notice the order: the rampart is the first obstacle; then, at the alarm given by the sentinels, the

soldiers come from the *castella* and, by a hail of missiles, drive the invaders back.

147. **cōnātū**: ablative of separation. Study carefully the arrangement of this sentence so as to understand how Latin develops a periodic structure. The principal fact, *Helvētiī dēstitērunt*, opens and closes the sentence. The modifiers of this idea are given in the order in which they occur in time: the Helvetians are disappointed in their hope for a peaceable arrangement; many build ferries; others cross the shoals; this is done repeatedly, both by day and by night; they try to rush the fortifications; the alarm is given; the reserves rush up and hurl their weapons; the enemy are beaten back; finally, they give up.

148. CHAPTER 9. **Relinquēbātur**: the emphatic position of the verb may be kept in English by using the adverb *there*.

ūna: *only*.

Sēquanīs: ablative absolute. See note on l. 138.

149. **angustiās**: the Pas de L'Écluse. See note on l. 96.

cum . . . possent: a causal clause (132).

150. **Dumnorīgem**: see note on l. 56.

151. **eō dēprecātōre**: ablative absolute, with *dēprecātōre* as predicate noun, denoting means; *through him as mediator*.

impetrārent: their wish.

152. **grātiā**: ablative of cause (83).

153. **Helvētiīs**: see 70.

154. **fīliam**: see l. 59.

in mātrimōnium dūxerat: see Vocabulary, *mātrimōnium*. For case see note on l. 59.

155. **rēgnī**: objective genitive with *cupiditāte*.

novīs rēbus: dative of indirect object with *studēre*. See Vocabulary, *rēs*.

156. **habēre obstrictās**: *habeō* with perfect passive participle shows that the effect of the action lasts after its completion. Translate *habeō* by *keep*.

157. **rem**: the mediation.

impetrat: the clause *ut . . . patiantur* is its object, while the clause *obsidēsque . . . dent* is the object of *perficit*.

158. **obsidēs**: object of *dent* but placed before the *-que* (anticipation).

159. **Sēquanī, Helvētiī**: supply *obsidēs dant*.

nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant: these clauses explain the

purpose of the exchange of hostages. Insert *pledging themselves* before *nē*.

161. CHAPTER 10. **renūntiātur**: force of prefix?

Helvētiīs, etc.: see note on l. 120.

per agrum: for this whole passage study the map of Gaul. The Santones lived on the right bank of the Garonne, near its mouth. The region is to-day called Saintonge.

163. **nōn longē**: really about 100 miles.

Tolōsātium: to-day Toulouse.

quae cīvitās: see note on *cuius lēgātiōnis*, l. 119.

164. **Id**: *i.e.* the Helvetian settlement.

sī fieret: subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing an original future indicative.

magnō, etc.: ablative of manner or attendant circumstance.

Page 49. 165. **prōvinciae**: objective genitive with *perīculō*.

futūrum: supply *esse; ut . . . habēret* is the subject of this infinitive.

ut . . . habēret: *prōvincia* (understood from *prōvinciae*) is the subject of the clause, *hominēs* its object, *fīnitimōs* predicate accusative.

166. **populī**: note the case and see note on *Helvētiīs*, l. 153. *Inimīcōs* is used as a noun.

locīs: dative with an adjective (70).

patentibus: not protected by natural boundaries.

maximēque frūmentāriīs: adjectives in *-ārius* can be compared only by *magis* and *maximē*.

167. **mūnītiōnī**: indirect object of *praeficit*.

168. **Labiēnum**: the most trusted and most prominent of Caesar's assistants. Later on, during the Civil War, he became Caesar's bitterest enemy.

lēgātum: a Roman governor was accompanied by one trusted assistant or more, appointed by the Senate on his recommendation. These assistants served at his pleasure, either with or without fixed command, and represented him in his absence. Distinguish the word in this meaning from *lēgātus* = *envoy*.

169. **Italiam**: Hither Gaul, which by this time began to be reckoned as part of Italy.

contendit: cp. with *mātūrat*, l. 112.

170. **Aquilēiam**: on the northern coast of the Adriatic, defending Italy against attacks from the northeast.

172. **per Alpēs**: these roads were used only by traders. Armies commonly followed the west coast of Italy along the sea.

173. **Ibi**: i.e. *in Alpibus*.

Graiocelī et Caturīgēs: "the victors of Ocelum" and "the chiefs of battle"; thus the names reveal the warlike character of these tribes.

175. **Complūribus**, etc.: arrange thus: *hīs pulsīs* (ablative absolute) *complūribus proeliīs* (ablative of means).

ab Ocelō: see 78, 1, *a*.

176. **prōvinciae**: possessive genitive; translate by *in*.

182. CHAPTER 11. **trādūxerant, pervēnerant**: contrast the tense with *populābantur*, l. 183, and express the difference in the translation.

183. **Aeduī**: for position see note on *Caesarī*, l. 111.

cum . . . possent: see note on l. 149.

184. **suaque**: the neuter plural of the adjective is used as a noun; *their belongings*.

185. **rogātum**: accusative of the supine used after a verb of motion to express purpose (170, *a*). *Auxilium* is its object.

Ita sē, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of speaking implied in *rogātum*.

omnī tempore: ablative of time when. *Tempus* here means *occasion, crisis*.

186. **meritōs esse**: *such had been their zeal for*.

ut . . . dēbuerint: result clause. Notice the sequence. In result clauses a perfect subjunctive is often substituted for an imperfect, to mark the result as final or decisive (122, *b*).

187. **vāstārī**: complementary to *dēbuerint*. Notice the tense. Since in English *ought, must* show no difference between past and present tense, past action must be expressed by the complementary infinitive: *he ought to come, he ought to have come*. In Latin these verbs have a complete conjugation and carry the burden of expressing the time. Hence the complementary infinitive is always in the present tense: *venīre dēbet, venīre dēbuit*.

188. **expugnārī**: distinguish between *pugnāre, oppugnāre, expugnāre*.

Ambarrī: "the settlers around the Arar."

189. **necessāriī**, etc.: hendiadys, *near kinsmen*.

190. **dēpopulātīs**: the perfect passive participle of deponents is often used with passive force.

nōn facile: adverb. Turn into a phrase with infinitive: *they had trouble in keeping.*

ab: contrast the use of the preposition here with that of *itinere* in l. 159.

192. **trāns**: on the north bank of the river. Caesar gives many reasons, because he really had overstepped the limits of his assignment by leaving his province.

fugā: ablative of means, though it impresses us as manner. Translate by *in*.

193. **sibi**: possessive dative (68).

194. **solum**: notice the quantity of the *o* and distinguish from *sōlus, -a, -um.*

reliquī: genitive of the whole with *nihil* (55).

195. **sibi**: supply *esse*. For case see 67.

dum: with subjunctive, *until* (127, *c*).

Page 50. 196. **Santonōs**: what is the nominative? See *Santonum*, l. 162. In using foreign proper names the Romans sometimes varied the declension.

198. CHAPTER 12. **est**: force of the position of the verb?

Arar: "the slow river," later called Saucona, whence the modern Saône.

199. **lēnitāte**: ablative of description.

200. **fluat**: subjunctive of indirect question. This clause is the subject of *iūdicārī*, complementary infinitive to the subjunctive of result, *possit*.

Id: object of *trānsībant*. Intransitives frequently become transitive by composition.

201. **ratibus**, etc.: see note on l. 143.

trānsībant: use progressive conjugation.

202. **explōrātōrēs**: regular troops used for reconnoitering, chiefly cavalry recruited from among the Gauls.

trēs partēs: three fourths.

partēs, flūmen: both objects of *trādūxisse*, of which *Helvētiōs* is the subject. For case see 73, 2.

203. **quārtam . . . partem**: one fourth.

204. **Ararim**: cp. with *Arar*, l. 198, and *Ararī*, l. 221. Also see note on l. 196.

dē tertiā vigiliā: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches.

205. **cum legiōnibus**: see note on l. 28.

207. **impedītōs**: translate by *while*.

208. **mandārunt** = *mandāvērunt*.

in . . . abdidērunt: *they (fled into and) hid in*, etc.

210. **Tigurīnus**: on Lake Murten.

211. **Hīc**, etc.: Caesar tries to justify his butchery by representing it as a providential revenge for the disgraceful defeat of the Romans in 107 B.C.

cum . . . exīsset: *cum* clause of circumstance.

212. **memoriā**: ablative of time when.

213. **cāsū**: ablative of cause.

214. **quae pars**: the noun, really belonging with *ea* (l. 215) as antecedent of *quae*, is attracted into the relative clause and this precedes the demonstrative antecedent. This is a very effective arrangement.

216. **prīnceps . . . persolvit**: *paid first = was the first to pay*. Remember that *poena = penalty*, which the culprit pays and the person wronged takes, and you will have no trouble in understanding the various idioms connected with *poena*. See Vocabulary.

217. **eius**: i.e. *Caesaris*.

218. **socerī**: L. Calpurnius Piso, consul of this year (see l. 110). The man killed was the great-grandfather of Caesar's fourth wife, so that Caesar's grievance would appear to be very far-fetched. But it is interesting to note the survival of the feeling of blood vengeance; cp. the feuds in our southern mountain districts.

220. CHAPTER 13. **reliquās**, etc.: for position see note on *Caesarī*, l. 111.

221. **cōnsequī**: distinguish from *sequī*, *persequī*.

pontem . . . cūrat: *he had a bridge built*. See 166, 2 *b*.

223. **commōtī**: cp. with *permōtī*, l. 43.

cum: causal, with *intellegerent* as predicate.

id quod: explained by the clause *ut . . . trānsīrent*. Translate by a phrase.

diēbus: ablative of time within which (97).

224. **illum**: contrast with *ipsī*, l. 223. Latin has at its command a large number of demonstratives representing the third person, while English has only *he, she, it*. In translating substitute names.

ūnō: but the Roman army numbered only about 42,000 men compared with approximately 240,000 of the enemy.

225. **cuius lēgātiōnis**: see note on l. 119.

226. **Divicō**: "devoted to the Lord."

bellō. Cassiānō: see note on l. 123. The adjective (*-ānus* = *belonging to*) represents a clause: *cuius bellī Cassius dux fuerat.*

Page 51. 227. **ēgit**: *agere cum* = *plead.*

Sī pācem, etc.: the following lines are the first example of continued indirect discourse and should be studied carefully in order to grasp the principles of this frequent construction. The direct form of the speech was as follows: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt* Helvētiī, ubi eōs Caesar *cōnstituerit* atque esse *voluerit*; sīn bellō *nōs* persequī *persevērābīs*, *reminīscere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum *adortus es*, cum iī quī flūmen *trānsierant*, suīs auxilium ferre nōn *poterant*, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere*. *Nōs* ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus*, ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut īnsidiīs *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī committere* ut is locus ubi *cōnstiterimus*, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs *tuī* nōmen *capiat*, aut memoriam *prōdat*.

The clearest possible understanding of Latin indirect discourse is always reached by such a recasting of the report into its original form, especially as far as the proper reference of the pronouns is concerned.

populus Rōmānus, Helvētiīs, etc.: the use of the names instead of pronouns not only contributes to the clearness of the expression, but also preserves the formal and legal character of the proposed contract.

229. **cōnstituisset**: from *con-* and *statuō* = *to set up, place.*

230. **persequī**: supply *Helvētiōs.*

231. **reminīscerētur**: for original imperative. This is an independent subjunctive.

incommodī: for case see 59. It is a mild word for *defeat*, in keeping with the peaceful character of the proposal. Later on, when Divico wishes to impress Caesar with the risk he is running (l. 239) he uses the strong words *calamitāte, interneciōne.*

232. **Quod**: *as to the fact that.* See 150, *a.*

233. **cum**: temporal, with original indicative.

234. **nē . . . tribueret, dēspiceret**: for a prohibition (154). Translate *he should not*, etc.

235. **magnopere**: here = *multum, nimium.*

236. **ā patribus**: properly an ablative of agent, because *discō, I learn*, = *doceor, I am taught.*

ut . . . contenderent: object clause of result with *didicisse*, explaining *ita*.

237. **dolō**: ablative of means with *nītor; to support one's self by* = *to rely on*.

238. **ut . . . caperet, prōderet** (l. 240): object clause of purpose with *committeret*.

cōnstitissent: for future perfect indicative. Divico refers to the place of the coming battle, not that of the present conference.

Page 52. 240. **nōmen caperet**: because many places have been named after some event happening there. Cp. *Dead Man's Gulch*.

memoriam: supply *calamitātis*.

241. CHAPTER 14. **Hīs**: supply *rēbus*.

Eō sibi, etc.: The original form of this speech was as follows: Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs, quās *vōs* lēgātī Helvētiī *commemorāvistis*, memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō*, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī *accidērunt:* quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre ; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intellēxit* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putāvit*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī *volō*, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod *mē* invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *possum?* Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam īnsolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūnē iniūriās intulisse *admīrāminī*, eōdem *pertinent*. *Cōnsuēvērunt* enim *dī immortālēs*, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi dabuntur*, utī ea, quae *pollicēminī*, factūrōs *intellegam*, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum *intulistis*, item sī Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *vōbīscum* pācem *faciam*.

Eō: ablative of degree of difference or of cause. See note on *hōc*, l. 30.

dubitātiōnis: genitive of the whole with *minus*. See note on *reliquī*, l. 194.

242. **commemorāssent**: carefully distinguish from *reminīscī*.

243. **eō . . . quō**: see note on l. 241.

244. **meritō**: does *merit* here fit the sense? What word does?

quī: i.e. *populus Rōmānus*.

245. **iniūriae**: genitive with an adjective (58).

sibi cōnscius: *knowing with one's self = conscious.*

fuisset: condition contrary to fact, using the subjunctive also in direct discourse (140, *a*).

fuisse: its subject is *cavēre*. Translate *it would have been.*

246. **eō**: ablative of means.

dēceptum: supply *esse populum Rōmānum.*

quod: *that.* The clause explains *eō.*

commissum: supply *esse.* The indirect question *quārē timēret* is its subject. Literally, *(it) why it should fear had not been done;* freely, *it did not see in the past any reason for fear.*

247. **timendum**: supply *esse.* With *putāret* this is the second predicate of *quod.* Literally, *it thought that to it fearing ought not to be;* freely, *it thought it ought not to be needlessly afraid.*

248. **Quod sī**: *but if.*

contumēliae: see 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius, l. 212, to which *victōriā*, l. 252, also refers.

vellet: supply *Caesar.*

249. **iniūriārum**: objective genitive with *memoriam.*

quod . . . vexāssent: these clauses explain *iniūriārum.* For the facts cp. Ch. 11.

250. **per vim** = *vī.*

251. **posse**: infinitive, because the question *num*, etc., is equivalent to a negative statement.

252. **Quod**: *as to the fact that.* These *quod* clauses are the subjects of *pertinēre.*

victōriā: ablative of cause. To whom do *suā* and *sē* refer?

tam īnsolenter: modifies *glōriārentur*, but *tam diū* modifies *intulisse.*

253. **impūnē**: force of *im-?* Compare with English, and with the *in-* in *intulisse.* How about *iniūria?*

254. **Cōnsuēsse**, etc.: translate in this order: *cōnsuēsse deōs immortālēs secundiōrēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem hīs concēdere quōs . . . velint, quō . . . doleant. Cōnsuēsse = cōnsuēvisse;* the perfect of inceptive verbs (in *-scō*) commonly has present meaning. *Concēdere* (l. 257) is complementary infinitive to it.

quō: see note on l. 138.

255. **ex**: source, but with causal force; *for, over.*

commūtātiōne: force of *com-?*

quōs: its antecedent is *hīs.*

257. **Cum . . . sint**: concessive, as *tamen* shows (135).

258. **utī . . . intellegat**: purpose.

ea quae polliceantur factūrōs: simplify to *keep their promise*. *Eōs* must be supplied as subject of *factūrōs*.

259. **Aeduīs**: indirect object of *satisfaciant*.

263. **utī . . . cōnsuērint**: result clause. For tense see note on *ut . . . dēbuerint*, l. 186.

reī: objective genitive with *testem*.

268. CHAPTER 15. **quem . . . habēbat**: Caesar's whole cavalry was recruited from among the Gauls and, later on, from the Germans also. For the force of *coāctum habēbat* see note on l. 156.

269. **quī videant**: relative clause of purpose. For number see note on *ut . . . exīrent*, l. 28.

quās . . . faciant: indirect question, object of *videant*.

270. **Quī**: see note on *quā dē causā*, l. 11. It refers to *equitātum*.

novissimum agmen: see Vocabulary, *agmen*. Distinguish *exercitus*, *agmen*, *aciēs*.

Page 53. 271. **aliēnō locō**: *belonging to another* = *inīquō*; opposite of *suō*. For omission of preposition see note on l. 101.

272. **et**: *and indeed*.

paucī: the others ran away. See l. 344, et seq.

dē nostrīs: for the use of a preposition instead of the genitive see 55, *a*.

273. **proeliō**: ablative of cause.

sublātī: from *tollō*.

quod . . . prōpulerant: gives the reason for *sublātī*. The indicative shows that this reason is an assumption of Caesar's; if it were that of the Helvetians, the subjunctive would have been used.

275. **agmine proeliō**: ablatives of means. With the rear guard they excited our men by means of a skirmish. Translate *proeliō lacessere* by *challenge to a fight*.

276. **ā proeliō**: for use of preposition see 79, *a*.

277. **satis habēbat**: *satis* is the predicate accusative of *habēbat*, which has the infinitive *prohibēre* for its direct object. *Thought keeping away sufficient* = *was satisfied to keep away*.

rapīnīs, etc.: ablatives of separation.

279. **hostium**: when a compound phrase is modified by a genitive or a prepositional phrase, the latter is commonly placed between the two parts of the compound phrase, similarly to the arrangement of prepositions discussed in the note on l. 11.

280. **prīmum**: supply *agmen*.

quīnīs: the distributive numeral, because the distance was kept each day.

281. **mīlibus**: ablative of comparison (84). The accusative of extent might have been used (84, 2).

interesset: subjunctive of result.

282. CHAPTER 16. **Aeduōs frūmentum**: some verbs of asking, especially *rogō*, *flāgitō*, are used with two accusatives (73, *b*); but most of these verbs express the "person asked" by a prepositional phrase.

283. **essent**: subjunctive of indirect discourse implied in *flāgitāre*.

pūblicē: not *publicly*.

flāgitāre: predicate of *Caesar*. An infinitive (historical) with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative (165).

frīgora: not *cold climate*, which would be *frīgus*, but *cold weather, cold season*. The clause *quod . . . posita est*, therefore, was not written by Caesar, but is a geographical comment of some reader.

284. **sub septentriōnibus**: under this constellation, viz., in the north.

285. **posita**: see note on *dīvīsa*, l. 1.

frūmenta: *crops*, while *threshed grain* is denoted by the singular (l. 287).

286. **nē pābulī quidem**: the words emphasized by *nē quidem* are regularly inclosed by them.

287. **flūmine, nāvibus**: ablatives of means, though we use expressions of place in translating; *up the river* (on account of the force of *SUBvexerat*) *in boats*.

288. **minus**: see note on *minimē*, l. 8.

iter . . . āverterant: *had turned their route away from = had turned aside from*; namely, to the west, to reach the valley of the Liger (Loire).

289. **ā quibus**: *and from them*.

Diem, etc.: supply *Caesarem* as object of *dūcere*. *Diem* is accusative of extent of time. *Dūcere*, *dīcere* are historical infinitives, while *cōnferrī*, *comportārī*, *adesse* are infinitives of indirect discourse after *dīcere*, with *frūmentum* understood.

291. **diūtius**: *too long* (106, 1).

frūmentum: object of *mētīrī*, which is subject of *oportēret*.

292. **eōrum**: i.e. *Aeduōrum*.

294. **Dīviciācō, Liscō**: ablatives, appositive to *prīncipibus*.

quī: i.e. *Liscus*.

295. **quem**: supply *magistrātum*. Notice the difference in meaning; here *official*, above *office*.

vergobretum: "chief judge."

creātur: legal term for electing.

annuus: predicate nominative. Translate *for a year*.

296. **in**: *over*.

297. **cum . . . possit**: concessive clause.

298. **possit**: supply *frūmentum*.

tempore, hostibus: ablatives absolute of circumstance; *at a time so critical, with the enemy so near*.

299. **sublevētur**: subjunctive of the indirect discourse implied in *accūsat*.

cum . . . suscēperit: causal *cum* clause referring to *multō gravius*.

magnā ex parte: *largely*.

301. **quod sit**: object of *queritur*, in the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse.

queritur: distinguish from *quaerō*.

Page 54. 302. CHAPTER 17. **Tum dēmum**: notice the skill with which Caesar, by his detailed and circumstantial description of the desperate situation, leads up to the sudden revelation of treachery among his own allies. The vividness is still more emphasized by the use of the present *prōpōnit* (l. 303) and the principal, instead of historical, sequence of tenses in the following report.

303. **quod . . . tacuerat**: object clause of *prōpōnit*. *Quod* itself is object of *tacuerat*.

Esse: indirect discourse after the idea of saying in *prōpōnit*. For position of *esse* see note on *erant*, l. 94.

304. **plūrimum valeat**: *valeō* = *I am strong, have value, am worth*. Compare *plūrimum posse*.

306. **nē . . . cōnferant**: translate *from collecting*. For construction after verbs of hindering see 147.

307. **quod**: relative.

Praestāre: subject, *perferre* (l. 309). The words *praestāre, ēreptūrī* (l. 311) are quoted by Liscus from the *sēditiōsa ōrātiō* of the rebels.

309. **dubitāre**: supply *sē*.

quīn: see 149.

Helvētiōs: the emphatic position shows that, in the opinion of the rebels, the Helvetians were the last bulwark of Gallic freedom.

superāverint: perfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative.

310. **ūnā**: adverb.

Aeduīs: see 66, *b*.

311. **sint ēreptūrī**: the periphrastic conjugation (122) brings out more clearly the future time, which otherwise would be expressed by present or imperfect subjunctive.

Ab īsdem: here the speech of Liscus himself is resumed.

quaeque = *et ea quae*: a relative clause in indirect discourse, not an indirect question.

312. **ā sē**: i.e. *Liscō*. But *hōs* refers to *īsdem*.

313. **quīn etiam**: *nay, more.*

quod: *as to the fact that.*

necessāriam: *critical.*

coāctus: *only upon compulsion*. This participle contains the main idea.

314. **id**: i.e. *quod ēnūntiārit.*

315. **fēcerit**: indirect question, object of *intellegere*.

potuerit: we might have had the pluperfect subjunctive after the perfect infinitive *tacuisse*, but the writer prefers to maintain the principal sequence of the chapter.

317. CHAPTER 18. **Dumnorīgem**: see l. 150, et seq.

318. **plūribus**: ablative absolute with *praesentibus*, participle of *praesum*. For force of comparative see 106, 1.

319. **iactārī**: *bandied about.*

concilium: distinguish from *cōnsilium*.

320. **ex sōlō**: *in private*. Supply *eō*.

322. **esse**: supply *ea*.

Ipsum: *the man referred to.*

323. **magnā**, etc.: study the word order to see how the Latin develops a composite idea.

325. **portōria**: customs duties, upon entry, transit, export; *vectīgālia*, other taxes. There was no national customs union in Gaul. Cp. the early history of duties in the United States.

326. **pretiō**: ablative of price (88).

redēmpta habēre: see note on l. 156. In antiquity, taxes were collected by the so-called "farming" system. An individual or a company paid to the state a lump sum in advance for the taxes of a year and then collected the taxes for his or its own benefit.

327. **licente**: *bidding* (at auction).

nēmō: notice the emphatic position.

328. **largiendum**: not necessarily bribes. Among the Gauls and Germans, the more lavish the gifts which he bestowed among his followers, the more highly a prince or great noble was esteemed by them. A goodly treasure, therefore, was always a political asset.

330. **sūmptū**: ablative of means. Translate by *at*.

neque = *et nōn*.

331. **domī**: see 99.

largiter: irregularly formed adverb from *largus* = *multum*.

332. **causā**: always placed after its modifying genitive. It looks forward to something not yet accomplished.

mātrem: Dumnorix as head of his household held power over all the female members of his family.

Biturīgibus: "kings of the world." For construction see note on *per Sēquanōs*, l. 95.

hominī: dative with the compound *collocāsse*. *Had placed with* = *had married her to*.

333. **illīc**: modifies *nōbilissimō*.

ex Helvētiīs = *Helvētiam*: she was the daughter of Orgetorix. See l. 59.

Page 55. 334. **sorōrem ex mātre**: *i.e.* they had the same mother but not the same father.

335. **nūptum**: for construction see note on *rogātum*, l. 185. The word can be used only of women.

cīvitātēs: contrast case with that of *in Biturīgibus* (l. 332). There the stress was upon *hominī collocāsse*, here it is upon the place to which the woman was sent. These were political marriages such as we see to-day among European royalty.

collocāsse = *collocāvisse*.

Favēre: supply *eum* as subject.

336. **Helvētiīs**: see 64.

affinitātem: distinguish this relationship by marriage from *propinquī* and *necessāriī*, blood relations.

ōdisse: for meaning of tense see Vocabulary.

337. **suō nōmine**: ablative of cause. *Nōmen* is a business term, the name of the debtor which appears on top of the ledger page, hence = *account; for private reasons*.

adventū: ablative either of cause or of time when. It is not always possible to decide definitely which of two or more possible ideas the writer has in mind.

338. **eius**: i.e. *Dumnorīgis*.

339. **Sī quid accidat**: the subjunctive represents an original future indicative.

quid: this older form of the indefinite pronoun is always used after *sī, nisi, nē, num*.

340. **in spem . . . venīre**: *came into hope = conceived hope*. Not quite equivalent to *spērāre*.

341. **imperiō**: ablative of time when. Translate by *under*.

342. **quam habeat**: *present*. The position marks the clause as equivalent to an adjective.

343. **Reperiēbat**: the imperfect (of repeated statement) shows that many of the chiefs said so.

quod: *as to the fact that*.

344. **paucīs ante diēbus**: the adverb *ante* has comparative force and is used with an ablative of degree of difference. It is generally placed between adjective and noun.

345. **factum**: supply *esse* with *initium* as subject.

346. **auxiliō**: dative of service (69).

Caesarī: dative of reference (69, *a*).

349. CHAPTER 19. **certissimae rēs**: explained by the appositive *quod* clauses which follow. These have the subjunctive instead of indicative because they are given as existing in Caesar's mind.

351. **dandōs cūrāsset**: see note on l. 221.

352. **iniussū**: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Together with *suō* and *cīvitātis*, it corresponds to the ablative absolute *inscientibus ipsīs*.

suō: i.e. *Caesaris;* a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun.

354. **accūsārētur**: notice the change of tense. The other acts were of the past, but the charge had just been made and was still pending.

satis: here a noun, subject of *esse*, with *causae* as genitive of the whole (55).

355. **quārē . . . iubēret**: indirect question, appositive to *satis causae*.

animadverteret: distinguish *animadvertere in* from *animadvertere* with the accusative.

356. **animadvertere**: for voice see note on *rescindī*, l. 117.

rēbus: indirect object of *repugnābat*.

357. **quod . . . cōgnōverat**: the clause is appositive to *ūnum*.

358. **sē**: i.e. *Caesarem*.

359. **cōgnōverat**: for force of tense see note on *cōnsuēsse*, l. 254.

nē . . . offenderet: for *nē* with verbs of fearing see 146.

361. **cōnārētur**: subjunctive, because this was Caesar's intention (128).

362. **cotīdiānīs**: those employed every day, *regular*. Caesar, of course, spoke no Celtic, and Diviciacus only imperfect Latin at best.

C. Valerium Troucillum: a Gaul to whom Roman citizenship had been given. He had, therefore, a Roman *praenōmen* and *nōmen gentīle*, but a Gallic *cōgnōmen*. For Roman names see 175. The phrase *per*, etc., modifies *colloquitur*, l. 365.

364. **cui**: dative of indirect object, because *fidem habēbat* = *cōnfīdēbat*.

omnium rērum: objective genitive with *fidem*. Translate the whole phrase: *in whom he placed the greatest trust in everything*.

Page 56. 365. **commonefacit**: stronger than *monet*. It has the indirect question *quae . . . sint* for its object.

ipsō: i.e. *Dīviciācō*.

366. **sint dicta, dīxerit**: subjunctives of indirect question (151).

367. **sē**: i.e. *Caesarem*.

368. **ut . . . iubeat**: object clauses of purpose after *petit, hortātur*.

eius: possessive genitive with *animī*.

animī: objective genitive with *offēnsiōne*.

ipse: i.e. *Caesar*; see l. 355.

370. CHAPTER 20. **Caesarem**: object of both *complexus* and *obsecrāre*.

371. **nē . . . statueret**: purpose clause after *obsecrāre*, representing a wish.

nē quid: since negative purpose clauses must be introduced by *nē*, the Romans always said *lest anything*, etc., instead of *that nothing*.

quid: see note on l. 339.

gravius: *too* (106, 1).

372. **Scīre**, etc.: indirect discourse after *obsecrāre*, which contains the idea of saying.

illa: the charges of Liscus and Caesar.

nec quemquam = *et nēminem: et* and a negative always combine into *nec* or *neque*.

eō: *his knowledge*, referring to *scīre*, which is neuter.

373. **dolōris**: with *plūs* (55).

ipse: i.e. *Dīviciācus*. For the sake of clearness the names should, where necessary, be substituted for the pronouns.

374. **plūrimum**: with *posset*.

domī: i.e. *apud Aeduōs*.

ille: i.e. *Dumnorīx*.

375. **sē**: i.e. *Dīviciācus*. But *Dumnorīx* is subject of *crēvisset*.

376. **ad . . . grātiam**: gerundive construction of purpose (169, 3).

377. **suam**: with both *grātiam* and *perniciem*, referring to the speaker.

ūterētur: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Translate *quibus*, however, by *yet these*.

378. **frāternō** = *frātris*: objective genitive.

vulgī: subjective genitive. Gender of *vulgus*?

Quod sī: *now, if*.

379. **ā Caesare**: ablative of source, almost equivalent to an ablative of agent because *accidisset* = *factum esset*.

accidisset: representing original future perfect.

cum: circumstantial, *while*.

eum locum amīcitiae: literally, *such a place of friendship* = *such high place in his friendship*.

381. **factum**: supply *esse*.

futūrum utī . . . āverterentur: this circumlocution is frequent in place of the future passive infinitive.

382. **cum**: is this preposition or conjunction? Look for the mood of the verb.

verbīs: ablative of means, but translate as manner.

384. **cōnsōlātus**: equivalent to a circumstantial *cum* clause.

faciat: subjunctive in indirect discourse, representing an original imperative. It might have been connected with *rogat* by *ut* and would then have been called an object clause of purpose.

tantī: see 57, *c*.

eius: i.e. *Dīviciācī*.

sē: i.e. *Caesarem*.

385. **utī . . . condōnet**: result clause. Literally, *that he presents as a gift to his prayers the wrong*; freely, *that he would overlook the wrong on account of . . .*

reī pūblicae: objective genitive.

387. **reprehendat, intellegat, querātur**: indirect questions, objects of *ostendit, prōpōnit*, l. 388.

389. **ut . . . vītet**: object clause of purpose with *monet*.

390. **praeterita**: participle used as noun, *past*. For construction see note on l. 385.

391. **Dumnorīgī**: dative of reference.

cūstōdēs pōnit: Caesar was not foolish enough to rely on Dumnorix's repentance. In the end, he put him to death for treason (V, 7).

agat, loquātur: indirect questions, objects of *scīre*.

392. **possit**: purpose.

393. CHAPTER 21. Caesar resumes the narrative broken off in Ch. 16. Recall the situation.

394. **sub**: be careful about translating this word.

mīlia: accusative of extent where one expects the ablative of measure.

Page 57. 395. **quālis . . . ascēnsus**: indirect questions, objects of *cōgnōscerent*.

in circuitū: *by a roundabout route*. Caesar planned to attack the Helvetians from the rear and front at the same time.

396. **quī cōgnōscerent**: relative clause of purpose. Its (omitted) antecedent is the object of *mīsit*.

Renūntiātum est: with *facilem* (*ascēnsum*) *esse* as subject.

397. **Dē tertiā vigiliā**: at what hour?

prō praetōre: *praetor* was the old title of the commanding general. A *lēgātus prō praetōre* was a deputy, with the rank of commander in case of the absence of the actual general.

398. **iīs**: with *cum*, while *ducibus* is appositive to it.

cōgnōverant: here actual pluperfect of *cōgnōscō*; *had learned, had reconnoitered*.

399. **cōnsiliī**: predicate possessive genitive (52, *a*).

400. **dē quārtā vigiliā**: how much later? As the Roman army marched about three miles an hour, the *circuitus* (l. 395) was about nine miles longer than the straight road.

402. **reī mīlitāris**: genitive with an adjective (58).

403. **habēbātur**: see note on *dūxērunt*, l. 49.

L. Sullae: in the Mithradatic War, 88–84 B.C.

M. Crassī: in the Slave War, 73–71 B.C. Considius was thus an officer of very large experience and seemed the most reliable person to Caesar, who so far had had little experience as general on a large scale.

405. CHAPTER 22. **cum . . . tenērētur**: the subjunctive proves this clause to be circumstantial. How far does it extend?

summus mōns: see *summum iugum montis*, l. 399. For meaning see 105.

407. **passibus**: ablative of comparison (84).

neque . . . aut . . . aut: *and . . . neither . . . nor*. See note on *nec quemquam*, l. 372.

408. **comperit**: perfect.

409. **equō admissō**: ablative absolute denoting manner; *the horse being urged = at full gallop*.

accurrit, dīcit: historical presents. And so *subdūcit, īnstruit* in ll. 412, 413. Notice the lack of connectives (asyndeton) which strengthens the impression of hurry produced by the present tenses.

412. **collem**: the Romans, wherever possible, chose for a battlefield the slope of a hill. The position on higher ground increased the weight of the attack and facilitated the defense.

subdūcit: *sub = close to*.

aciem: for arrangement of a Roman battle line see Introduction, 41.

413. **ut . . . praeceptum**: the intransitive verb *praecipere* cannot form a personal passive (64, *a*).

nē . . . committeret: dependent on *praeceptum erat*, and representing a prohibition.

414. **ipsīus**: i.e. *Caesaris*.

415. **vīsae essent**: indirect discourse, representing original future perfect indicative.

ut . . . fieret: explains the purpose of this plan.

416. **monte occupātō**: translate as if *montem occupāverat et*.

exspectābat, abstinēbat: notice the tense of continued action. Use the progressive form in English.

417. **Multō . . . diē**: ablative absolute denoting time; *when the day was much = late in the day*.

419. **timōre perterritum**: *thoroughly (per) frightened by fear = panic-stricken*.

quod nōn vīdisset: relative clause, object of *renūntiāvisse*.

420. **vīsō** = *eō quod vīdisset*.

421. **intervāllō**: antecedent of *quō*. Attracted into the relative clause it is equivalent to *eō intervāllō* (ablative of measure) *quō cōnsuēverat sequī*.

mīlia: see note on l. 394.

423. CHAPTER 23. **Postrīdiē**: though an adverb, this word retains enough of its original force (ablative of time) to be used with a genitive.

424. **cum . . . oportēret**: really *when*, but with subjunctive because it gives this as a thought of Caesar's. Translate *until*, etc.

mētīrī: see note on l. 291.

425. **Bibracte**: "Beavertown," to-day Beuvray. Note the ablative in *-e*, though an *i*-stem. For use of preposition see 78, *a*.

longē: see note on l. 25.

Page 58. 426. **mīlibus**: see note on l. 281.

reī frūmentāriae: dative of indirect object with *prōspiciendum* (*sibi esse*).

428. **Bibracte**: see 75, 1.

429. **decuriōnis**: the cavalry was divided into *decuriae*, corresponding to the *centuriae* of the infantry. The legion originally had a cavalry complement of ten per cent.

Gallōrum: see note on l. 267.

430. **Helvētiī**, etc.: this somewhat complicated sentence should be carefully studied as to its order of clauses. In translating, it should be broken up into a number of smaller, independent clauses, somewhat like this: *Helvētiī Rōmānōs . . . exīstimābant; eō magis . . . commīsissent; (aut) eō . . . cōnfīdēbant; commūtāvērunt cōnsilium atque iter convertērunt.* (*Sīc*) *. . . coepērunt.*

timōre: see note on l. 419.

431. **exīstimārent, cōnfīderent** (l. 434): subjunctive, because the reason is not a fact, but a guess of Caesar's.

eō: ablative of degree of difference or of cause.

432. **superiōribus**, etc.: ablative absolute, concessive.

commīsissent: subjunctive, because this is assumed to be the belief of the Helvetians; so-called implied indirect discourse.

433. **rē frūmentāriā**: ablative of separation.

interclūdī posse: supply *Rōmānōs*.

434. **conversō**: *turned around completely*. Notice the force of *con-*.

435. **ā novissimō agmine**: ablative of point of view (80); *in the rear*.

438. CHAPTER 24. **mediō**: *half way up the hill*. See 105.

439. **triplicem**: see Introduction, 41.

veterānārum: this was Caesar's regular habit. The untried recruits were kept from panic by being employed in sappers' work. The four legions were VII–X, the others XI, XII.

442. **complēret**: result.

impedīmenta sarcināsque: the baggage train and the burdens of the individual soldiers. See Introduction, 27, 28.

443. **ab īīs**: the two legions.

444. **cōnstiterant**: from *cōnsistō*.

446. **aciē**: ablative of manner.

448. **successērunt**: notice carefully the meaning of the compounds of *cēdere*, which originally meant *go*.

449. CHAPTER 25. **suō . . . omnium**: see note on *iniussū*, l. 352. Supply *equō* with *suō*.

omnium: the staff officers.

450. **equīs**: he wanted to show his soldiers that he and his officers were willing to share the common fate. This was Caesar's first pitched battle, and the confidence of his troops would largely depend on his behavior.

ut . . . tolleret: purpose.

451. **cohortātus**: the address of encouragement was regularly given before commencing battle.

ē locō: with *missīs*. The elevation increased the effect of the throw.

453. **gladiīs**: ablative of means.

454. **Gallīs**: dative of reference, regularly with a dative of service (*impedīmentō*). See 69, *a*.

ad pugnam: purpose.

455. **quod . . . poterant** (l. 458): substantive clause of cause, subject of *erat impedīmentō*. The phrase *poterant pugnāre* finds its explanation in the circumstantial *cum* clause, *cum . . . īnflexisset*, which in its turn is explained by the ablatives absolute.

plūribus = *complūribus*: the iron part of the *pīlum* was very long. See Introduction, 26.

456. **īnflexisset**: only the point of the *pīlum* was steel, the shank being soft iron.

Page 59. 457. **sinistrā**: ablative absolute, causal.

458. **multī ut** = *ut multī*: result clause, *praeoptārent*.

iactātō: *wrenched*, ablative absolute, circumstantial.

459. **manū**: ablative of separation.

nūdō: *unprotected*. Either ablative of manner, or ablative absolute denoting manner.

460. **pedem referre**: distinguish the expressions of defeat: *pedem referre* = *put back foot after foot, yield slowly*, with face to the enemy; *sē recipere* = *retreat in formation*; *terga vertere* = *turn one's back, flee*; *fugae sē mandāre* = *run wild, be in a disorderly rout*.

mōns: a hill to the west.

461. **spatiō**: ablative of measure.

462. **Captō**, etc.: ablatives absolute denoting circumstance. Notice

the distinction of tense: *captō*, the Helvetians had reached the hill; *succēdentibus*, the Romans were following up.

464. **mīlibus**: ablative of means.

465. **novissimīs praesidiō**: see note on l. 454.

466. **ex itinere**: that is, without forming in battle line.

ab latere apertō: the unprotected right side.

467. **circumvenīre**: with *coepērunt*, l. 470.

471. **conversa sīgna . . . intulērunt**: briefly for *sīgna convertērunt et sīgna intulērunt*. These are the military terms for *face about, charge.*

bipertītō: ablative of manner. They formed two fronts by making the rear line face about toward the Boii.

473. **ut . . . resisteret**: purpose.

victīs ac submōtīs: participles used as nouns, in dative of indirect object. They emphasize the bravery of the Helvetians who, even after defeat, attacked again.

474. **venientēs**: i.e. *Bōiōs*.

475. CHAPTER 26. **proeliō**: ablative absolute.

476. **pugnātum est**: an impersonal passive is used in Latin to express the doer of an action by an indefinite subject, like *one, you, people, they*. Translate by the active voice with such a subject.

478. **alterī . . . alterī**: for translation see 113. The words here refer to the two parts of the Helvetian army.

481. **proeliō**: ablative of time during which, where we would use an expression of extent. See below, l. 493.

482. **cum . . . sit**: concessive.

ab hōrā: both night and day were divided into twelve hours, from sunset to sunrise and from dawn to sunset. Thus the hours would vary in length according to the season. For convenience's sake, however, we reckon from 6 to 6. The seventh hour began at noon. Late in June, therefore, in the latitude of northern France, the battle lasted till about 9 P.M.

483. **āversum**: *turned away*, i.e. *the back of an enemy*.

484. **multam noctem**: see note on *multō diē*, l. 417.

487. **ē locō**: from the top of the carts.

488. **venientēs**: circumstantial, *while coming up*.

coniciēbant: contrast this form and the following imperfects with *obiēcerant*.

489. **raedās**: a Gallic word, "traveler." And so *matarās*, "thrower," a kind of tomahawk; *trāgulās*, "rope spear," a javelin with a thong

for recovery fastened to it. The phrase *inter . . . raedāsque* belongs to *nōnnūllī*.

subiciēbant: notice force of *sub-, from below*.

Page 60. 492. **ē fīliīs**: see 55, *a*.

captus est: agreeing with the nearer of the two subjects (114, 2).

493. **CXXX**: 368,000 people started (Ch. 29) and about 66,000 had perished in the battle of the Arar (Ch. 12). This would make the number lost about 175,000. It is likely, however, that many thousands, especially of the noncombatants, had succumbed to the hardships of the last two months.

tōtā nocte: ablative of time, where we should expect the accusative of extent (97, 1).

494. **partem**: accusative of extent. Evidently it refers only to the first night.

495. **Lingonum**: "fast horsemen." The name survives in *Langres*.

quārtō: that is, on the third day, since the Romans counted both the starting point and the day of arrival.

496. **propter**, etc.: the two prepositional phrases modify *morātī*.

498. **litterās nūntiōsque**: hendiadys, *messengers with written instructions*.

nē . . . iuvārent: an original prohibition (*nē iūverītis*), quoted from the letters.

499. **nēve**: a negative purpose clause is regularly continued with *nēve* instead of *et nē*.

iūvissent: subjunctive of indirect discourse for original future perfect indicative.

500. **locō**: the phrase is taken from the use of the *abacus*, on which the Romans did their calculating. It is still used by Chinamen and as a child's toy. *Consider them of the same line = treat them like.*

Helvētiōs: supply *habēret*.

intermissō: compare the meaning here with that of the same word in l. 495.

503. CHAPTER 27. **Quī cum** = *et cum hī*: in translating this sentence it is best to turn all parts of the compound *cum* clause (to *iussisset*) into independent sentences. Otherwise the sentence will appear top-heavy, the main clause being the one verb *pāruērunt*.

505. **eōs**: i.e. *Helvētiōs*.

quō = *in quō*.

506. **pāruērunt**: distinguish carefully from *parāre*.

507. **pervēnit**: for tense see 126.

508. **perfūgissent**: subjunctive, because quoted as part of Caesar's demand.

ea: neuter, because referring to nouns of different genders.

conquīruntur: for tense see 127, *a*.

509. **circiter**: with *mīlia sex*.

510. **perterritī**: so-called "construction according to sense," since *mīlia hominum = hominēs*.

nē . . . afficerentur: clause depending on *timōre perterritī* which is equivalent to *timentēs* (146).

511. **suppliciō**, etc.: *supplicium* means *capital punishment*, and hence with *afficiō* the meaning is *put to death*.

513. **exīstimārent**: subjunctive, because the reason is given as a guess of the author (130).

prīmā nocte: see 105.

516. CHAPTER 28. **Quod ubi** = *id autem ubi*.

quōrum: the antecedent, *hīs* (l. 517), should be translated before *quōrum*.

517. **utī . . . redūcerent**: object clause after *imperāvit*.

sibi: i.e. *Caesarī;* dative of reference.

518. **vellent**: subjunctive for original future indicative.

reductōs: used as noun.

in . . . habuit = *in . . . locō:* see note on l. 500. It is a veiled allusion (euphemism) to the fact that he massacred them.

Page 61. 522. **frūgibus āmissīs**: see l. 84, etc.

quō: ablative of means.

523. **tolerārent**; relative clauses with negative antecedents take the subjunctive (125, *a*).

cōpiam facerent: *make a supply = furnish*.

524. **ipsōs**: i.e. *Helvētiōs*, contrasted with *Allobrogibus*.

quōs: agrees with the nearer antecedent.

restituere: contrast this construction with the *ut* clause after *imperāvit*.

526. **nē . . . essent** (l. 529): a purpose clause, but probably caused by the idea of fear, understood.

529. **Galliae**: see 70.

Bōiōs: direct object of *concessit*. This verb also has the clause *ut . . . collocārent* (purpose) as object, and *petentibus Aeduīs* as indirect object. Translate, however, as if *Bōiōs* were the object of *collocārent*.

530. **erant cōgnitī**: indicative, because it is Caesar's reason. The subject is *Bōiī*, understood.

533. **atque**: expressions of identity and equality are regularly connected by *atque*. Translate *as*.

534. CHAPTER 29. **tabulae**: the Romans wrote on wooden tablets covered with a thin layer of wax into which the letters were scratched with a metal pencil (*stīlus*).

535. **Graecīs**: the Greek alphabet, which they had taken over from Massilia.

relātae: supply *sunt*.

536. **ratiō**: *account*.

537. **exīsset . . . possent**: subjunctive, because this was part of the contents of the tablets.

538. **capitum**: cp. the use of *souls* in our language.

Page 62. 542. **fuērunt**: agreeing with *mīlia*, not with the subject *summa*.

544. **C et X**: 130,000 survived the battle (Ch. 26), so that besides the 6000 people of the Verbigenus canton, another 14,000 must have perished before they had finally settled again. The calm with which Caesar speaks of the terrible havoc among this brave people shows the innate cruelty of the man which, in spite of many contrary instances, broke out again and again during the Gallic War.

CHAPTERS 30–54. — THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

The danger to the Province from the Helvetian emigration was now past. But another and greater danger was looming up. Fifty years before Caesar's governorship two German tribes, the Cimbers and the Teutons, had suddenly emerged from the dense forests across the Rhine. In a few years they had traversed Gaul and part of Spain, had annihilated several Roman armies in Gaul, and were threatening Italy. Only the skill, energy, and daring of the great general Marius, Caesar's uncle by marriage, had destroyed, first the Cimbers at Aquae Sextiae in the Province, and then the Teutons at Vercellae in Italy. But the fear of a repetition of this bold attack was ever present in the Roman mind. A few years before Caesar's arrival in Gaul, a German leader, Ariovistus, had, by invitation of a Gallic tribe, crossed the Rhine to aid one of the ever-warring Gallic factions. Instead of returning to his native country, he had settled in Gaul, had forcibly taken one third of

the Arvernian soil, and was now preparing to settle another horde of his Germans on the second third. All this had happened in free Gaul, beyond the limits of Caesar's province. But wise statesmen could not close their eyes to the danger of Germans seizing a country uncomfortably near the Roman province. Caesar's victory over the Helvetians had enhanced his prestige among the Gauls. Their chiefs turned to the Roman commander for aid against the German raider. And Caesar, though Ariovistus was officially, through Caesar's own assistance, on terms of alliance with Rome, welcomed the opportunity to strike a blow, not only for reasons of foreign policy, but also in order to establish himself in the eyes of the Roman populace as the true and legitimate successor of his great uncle.

545. CHAPTER 30. **Galliae**: in the narrower sense of l. 3.

546. **grātulātum**: see 170, *a*.

547. **Intellegere**: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of saying in *grātulātum*.

prō: *in return for*.

Helvētiōrum, populī: subjective and objective genitive, respectively, with *iniūriīs*.

548. **poenās . . . repetīsset**: see note on l. 216 and Vocabulary.

549. **ex ūsū**: ablative of accordance, *to the advantage*.

550. **accidisse**: depends on *intellegere*, l. 547.

cōnsiliō: ablative of cause, explained by the appositive *ut* clause of purpose, *utī* (l. 552) . . . *habērent* (l. 555).

551. **flōrentissimīs rēbus**: ablative absolute of circumstance with concessive force; *in spite of*, etc.

553. **domiciliō**: dative of service.

cōpiā: supply *locōrum*.

ex omnī Galliā: equivalent to a genitive of the whole.

554. **iūdicāssent**: distinguish from the use of the same tense in *relīquissent*. *Iūdicāssent* represents an original future perfect indicative, *relīquissent* an original perfect indicative.

555. **stīpendiāriās**: predicate accusative.

556. **utī . . . licēret**: purpose clause, object of *petiērunt*. For translation see note on l. 122. *Licēret* is modified by *sibi*.

558. **habēre**: indirect discourse, because *petiērunt* implies speaking.

cōnsēnsū: ablative of accordance, but translate *after obtaining*.

559. **conciliō**: see note on *domiciliō*, l. 553.

560. **nē quis ēnūntiāret**: object of *sānxērunt*, representing an original prohibition. Literally, *made holy by oath that nobody should*; freely, *bound each other by oath not to make known* (*their meeting*).

quibus: supply *eī* as antecedent.

561. **mandātum esset**: see note on *ut . . . praeceptum*, l. 413.

562. CHAPTER 31. **īdem** = *eīdem*.

563. **ante**: adverb. Supply *apud Caesarem*.

utī . . . licēret: see note on l. 556.

565. **Caesarī**: see 66, *a*. Translate by a genitive.

566. **Nōn minus**, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying contained in the suppliant attitude.

id: cognate accusative with *contendere* and *labōrāre* (72). Insert *for*.

567. **nē . . . ēnūntiārentur, utī . . . impetrārent**: purpose clauses, appositive to *id*.

ea quae dīxissent: literally, *that which they should have said* (original future perfect); freely, *their words*.

ea quae vellent: literally, *that which they wanted*; freely, *their request*.

568. **ēnūntiātum esset**: for original future perfect. Supply *sē dīxisse* as subject.

Page 63. 570. **Galliae**: in the narrow sense. The case is possessive; translate *in*.

571. **hārum**: partitive genitive with *alterius*, which is objective genitive with *prīncipātum*, the object of *tenēre*.

573. **contenderent**: the Romans used tenses of continuing action (present, imperfect) to denote that something begun in the past still continues. Translate by pluperfect, and *cum* by *after*.

factum esse utī . . . arcesserentur: a roundabout expression for *arcessītōs esse*. The *ut* clause is one of result. *Factum* is from *fīō*.

574. **mercēde**: ablative of means; translate by *for*.

575. **Hōrum**: i.e. *Germānōrum*.

577. **trāductōs**: supply *esse*.

578. **mīlium**: genitive of measure (57, *a*).

579. **clientēs**: free states, but under the suzerainty of the larger state.

semel atque iterum: not *twice*, but like our *once and again*, *repeatedly*.

580. **pulsōs**: participle, explaining *calamitātem*; *by a defeat.* With *Aeduōs*, etc., it forms the subject of *accēpisse* and *āmīsisse.*

582. **proeliīs**: ablative of means with *frāctōs*, which is a participle showing the reason for *coāctōs esse*, l. 584.

frāctōs: modifying *eōs* understood, subject of *coāctōs esse* and antecedent of *quī.*

583. **virtūte**: ablative of means with *potuissent*, or of specification.

hospitiō: this was an official relation, corresponding to our treaties of amity. Translate *hospitiō* and *amīcitiā* together: *by close relations of friendship.*

584. **ante**: adverb.

obsidēs: appositive to *nōbilissimōs.* Translate by *as.*

586. **sēsē . . . essent** (l. 588): indirect discourse depending upon *iūre iūrandō . . . obstringere* = *promise.*

587. **recūsātūrōs quōminus . . . essent**: after verbs of refusing, object clauses introduced by *quōminus* or *nē* are used. Translate by an infinitive: *to be.*

588. **illōrum**: i.e. *Sēquanōrum.*

589. **Ūnum**: with *esse*, of which *sē* is subject. Notice the emphatic position.

590. **potuerit**: irregular primary sequence instead of the pluperfect, caused by the present idea in these words.

ut . . . daret: purpose clause after *addūcī*, in secondary sequence after the perfect subjunctive *potuerit.*

591. **Rōmam**: see 75, 1.

592. **postulātum**: see 170, *a.*

sōlus: adjective used as a noun and referring to the subject of *tenērētur.*

593. **peius**: adjective used as noun, *a worse fate.*

victōribus: noun used as an adjective.

598. **mēnsibus**: ablative of degree of difference with the (comparative) adverb *ante.*

600. **locus ac sēdēs**: hendiadys, *room for homesteads.*

Futūrum esse, etc.: for this circumlocution see note on l. 381.

601. **annīs**: ablative of time within which.

Page 64. 602. **cōnferendum, comparandam** (l. 604): *was to be* = *could be.*

603. **Gallicum**: supply *agrum.* To bring out the proper meaning in English invert the sentence, and translate as if it were *Ger-*

mānōrum agrum cum Gallicō, and *Germānōrum cōnsuētūdinem cum hāc*.

604. **vīctūs**: observe carefully the *-ī*, and distinguish from *victus* (*vincō*).

605. **ut semel** = *ut prīmum*.

vīcerit: notice the irregular sequence which is maintained to the end of the chapter.

606. **quod proelium**: for position see note on *lēgātiōnis*, l. 119.

Admagetobrigae: "Admagetos' Castle," of unknown location.

superbē et crūdēliter imperāre: *gave haughty and cruel orders*. It is often advisable to turn a Latin verb into a whole phrase and translate its modifiers accordingly.

607. **obsidēs**: appositive with *līberōs*.

nōbilissimī cuiusque: see 112, 6.

608. **exempla . . . ēdere**: *put forth examples and torments* = *practiced all kinds of torments*.

609. **qua**: from *quis* or *quī*, indefinite. Notice quantity, and distinguish from *quā*.

ad: *in correspondence with, according to*.

610. **Hominem**: contemptuous, *the fellow*.

611. **quid**: with *auxilī*, l. 612. Translate freely, *unless some aid might be had from*.

612. **Gallis**: see 67.

idem: explained by *ut . . . ēmigrent*, etc.

616. **sint**: for original *erunt*.

dubitāre: supply *sē*, i.e. *Dīviciācum*, as subject.

617. **supplicium sūmat**: *supplicium sūmere dē, take punishment from* = *inflict punishment upon*. Compare *poenās repetere*.

618. **Caesarem**: subject of *posse* (ll. 620, 621).

auctōritāte, etc.: ablatives of means.

620. **nē . . . trādūcātur**: negative purpose clause after a verb of hindering.

Rhēnum: for case see 73, *a*, 2.

621. **ab . . . iniūriā**: see note on l. 190.

625. CHAPTER 32. **Animadvertit**: the position of the verb makes it emphatic.

ūnōs: adjective used as a noun and appositive to *Sēquanōs*; *alone*.

626. **trīstēs**: translate as if an adverb.

628. **respondēre**: what shows that this is not an infinitive of indirect discourse? See note on *flāgitāre*, l. 283.

629. **saepius**: *repeatedly*.

630. **neque ūllam** = *et nūllam*.

631. **Hōc**: ablative of degree of difference or of cause, explained by the *quod* clause, l. 633.

633. **sōlī**: used as noun and appositive to the subject of *audērent* and *horrērent*.

nē . . . quidem: see note on l. 286.

634. **absentis**: emphatic and with concessive force; *though absent*.

Page 65. 635. **adesset**: see 142.

636. **tamen**: *at least*.

Sēquanīs: dative of agent with *perferendī*, l. 639.

quī . . . essent (l. 638): these relative clauses have causal force (133). Translate *since they, since their*.

638. **essent perferendī**: with *proptereā quod*, l. 635.

640. CHAPTER 33. **verbīs**: (connected) words, *a speech*.

641. **sibi, cūrae**: datives of reference and service, respectively. Translate the phrase: *he would look after this matter*.

642. **beneficiō suō**: the title *rēx atque amīcus populī Rōmānī* had been given to Ariovistus during Caesar's consulship.

643. **factūrum**: future indicative in indirect discourse after *spem habēre* = *spērāre* (157, 1).

645. **hortābantur**: here followed by an indirect question (*quārē putāret*) instead of the usual purpose clause. Translate *quārē*, etc., *to think*.

646. **in prīmīs**: supply *rēbus*. This is an adverbial phrase; translate *chiefly*.

quod . . . vidēbat (l. 648), **intellegēbat** (l. 650): explains the words *multae rēs*.

frātrēs, etc.: another of those honorable titles bestowed by the Senate on foreign tribes as an outward mark of an alliance. For case see 76.

647. **numerō**: ablative of specification; omit in translation.

appellātōs: modifies *Aeduōs*.

648. **vidēbat**: notice the peculiar order which emphasizes *vidēbat*. Translate *he saw with his own eyes*.

649. **eōrumque**: i.e. *Aeduōrum*.

650. **quod**: relative. Its antecedent is contained in the infinitives *tenērī* and *esse*.

in tantō imperiō = *cum imperium tantum esset:* translate *in view of the greatness of the empire.*

turpissimum: adjective used as noun, *a great disgrace.* For degree see 106, 2.

652. **Germānōs cōnsuēscere . . . multitūdinem venīre** (l. 653): infinitives, subjects of *perīculōsum (esse)*, the object of *vidēbat. Perīculōsum* is singular because the two infinitives form one idea. Translate *for the Germans*, etc.

654. **sibi**: dative, indirect object of *temperātūrōs*, referring to *hominēs*. Translate *would refrain*, etc.

655. **quīn**: *sibi temperāre* = *abstinēre*, a verb of hindering. Negative verbs of hindering are followed by *quīn* (147).

cum . . . occupāvissent: a temporal clause originally indicative.

656. **Cimbrī**, etc.: this occurred 107–101 B.C.

fēcissent: the subjunctive is due to indirect discourse. Translate *as . . . had done.* In translating the sentence *Paulātim . . . contenderent* (ll. 651–657), simplify by using the English verbal noun in *-ing* (gerund): *he thought that after seizing, as . . . had done, they would not refrain from emigrating*, etc.

658. **praesertim**: always stamps the *cum* as causal.

Rhodanus: emphatic position; *only the Rhone.*

659. **quibus rēbus**: indirect object with *occurrendum.* The dative of agent (*sibi*) is omitted because Caesar wishes to make the thought indefinite. Translate *and against these events protective measures must be taken.*

mātūrrimē: notice the irregular form.

660. **sibi . . . sūmpserat**: *had taken for himself* = *acquired.*

661. **ut . . . vidērētur**: result clause. Any *so* or *such* expression before an *ut* clause points to a result.

ferendus nōn: *unbearable.*

662. CHAPTER 34. **placuit**: impersonal, with dative. The clause *ut . . . mitteret* is the subject. Translate as if *cōnstituit.*

663. **quī . . . postulārent**: relative clause of purpose with *mitteret.* The clause *utī . . . dēligeret* in its turn is object of *postulārent.*

medium utrīusque: *between them.*

Page 66. 664. **Velle**, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying in *postulārent* and giving the reason for the demand.

rē pūblicā: not *state* but *a public matter* = *matters of state.*

665. **summīs . . . rēbus**: *the greatest affairs of both = topics of the greatest importance to both.*

666. **Sī . . . fuisse**: condition contrary to fact in indirect discourse (157, 2). The original form was *sī . . . mihi . . . esset, ego . . . vēnissem.*

opus esset: an impersonal phrase, *there was need.* The person feeling the need is put in the dative, the thing needed is either the subject of the phrase or put in the ablative (87). Translate freely, *if he wanted anything of Caesar.*

667. **sī quid ille sē velit**: *sē* is direct object, *quid* is cognate accusative with *velit* (72). The irregular present subjunctive is used to distinguish this condition (originally *vult*) from the contrary to fact condition *esset.* Translate *if he should want anything from him.*

670. **exercitum**: object of *contrahere.*

672. **mīrum vidērī**: infinitive in indirect discourse with the question *quid . . . esset* as subject.

suā: emphatic position, *his own part of.*

673. **Caesarī**: possessive dative with *esset* (68).

negōtiī: partitive genitive with *quid.*

675. CHAPTER 35. **respōnsīs**: participle used as noun, ablative absolute with *relātīs.*

676. **mandātīs**: notice the change of relations indicated by this word. Caesar was now sending an ultimatum.

Quoniam . . . esse (l. 681): indirect discourse depending upon the idea of saying in *mandātīs.* Study carefully the structure of this sentence before translating. Its skeleton is: *quoniam . . . referret, ut . . . putāret, haec esse.*

677. **suō populīque Rōmānī**: see note on *suō*, l. 352.

affectus: *after being treated,* referring to Ariovistus.

cum . . . appellātus esset: gives the reason for *beneficiō.* Translate *by having been called.*

678. **suō**: i.e. *Caesaris.* See Introduction to Ch. 30, et seq., p. 138.

hanc . . . grātiam: explained by the appositive clauses *ut . . . putāret* (result). Distinguish *grātiam referre = to bring back thanks, show gratitude; grātiam habēre = to have thanks, feel grateful; grātiās agere = to plead thanks, express gratitude* (by words).

680. **invītātus**: *after being asked.* The infinitive *venīre* depends on *gravārētur.*

commūnī rē: *matters of common interest.*

681. **sibi**: dative of agent. In translating, make *sibi* the subject of an active expression.

haec esse: the clause *quae . . . postulāret* is subject of this infinitive. The *haec* is explained by *prīmum . . . īnferret* (ll. 682–687).

quae . . . postulāret: simplify by turning into a noun.

682. **nē . . . trādūceret, redderet, permitteret, nēve . . . lacesseret, nēve . . . īnferret** (l. 687): prohibitions and commands reported in indirect discourse.

683. **amplius**: *in the future.*

685. **voluntāte . . . licēret**: see note on l. 122.

686. **illīs**: i.e. *Aeduīs.*

nēve: continuing the *nē* of l. 682. See note on l. 499.

iniūriā: ablative of means, translate *wrongly.*

687. **fēcisset**: for the future perfect.

sibi, eō (l. 689): i.e. *Caesarī, Ariovistō.* Freely, *there would be . . . between him on the one hand and Ariovistus on the other hand.*

689. **impetrāret**: this represents the future indicative; supply *Caesar* as subject.

sē: subject of *neglēctūrum*, l. 694.

M. Messālā: 61 B.C.

690. **cēnsuisset**: the regular word for a vote of the Senate.

691. **quīcumque . . . obtinēret**: simplify, *any governor of . . . Obtinēret* represents a future indicative.

quod: *so far as.*

commodō: ablative, *with due regard for.* What is the case of *rei pūblicae?*

693. **dēfenderet**: with *utī* (l. 690), representing imperative. Translate by *should.*

sē: repeats the *sē* from l. 689, on account of the length of the sentence.

695. CHAPTER 36. **Iūs esse**: infinitive predicate of the clause *ut . . . imperārent*; use *it* as grammatical subject.

696. **quī vīcissent, quōs vīcissent**: simplify, *the conquerors, the conquered.*

quem ad modum: *according to which manner*, i.e. *as* (relative).

Page 67. 697. **ad**: *according to.*

698. **alterius**: used here instead of *alius.*

699. **cōnsuēsse**: for force of tense see note on l. 254.

praescrīberet: for present indicative.

700. **quem ad modum**: here interrogative (*how*), introducing an indirect question, object of *praescrīberet*.

701. **sibi**: i.e. *Ariovistō*. Translate by a possessive.

702. **armīs**: ablative of means, translate by *in*.

703. **Magnam**: emphatic position; *great was the wrong which*, etc.

704. **suō, sibi**: i.e. *Caesaris, Ariovistō*. The Latin dative of reference is often equivalent to the English possessive. The relative clause is causal.

705. **nōn**: emphatic position, *certainly not*.

706. **neque**: *nor, on the other hand*.

iniūriā: see note on l. 686.

707. **manērent**: for future indicative. Literally, *if they should remain in that which had been agreed upon* (*convēnit*, impersonal verb = *it is agreed*, cp. *conventional*); freely, *if they should keep the agreement*.

stīpendiumque: the *-que* here adds an explanation to *quod convēnisset*. Translate by *namely*.

708. **nōn fēcissent**: for future perfect indicative. The *nōn* belongs to the verb alone, which makes the meaning *omit*.

iīs: dative of reference.

frāternum: adjective used instead of a genitive. The whole phrase means literally, *the brotherly name of the Roman people will be far away in reference to them;* that is, *the name "brothers of the Roman nation" would not help them at all*.

709. **Quod**: *as to the fact that*.

sibi, sē (l. 710): i.e. *Arioviстō, Caesarem*.

711. **sēcum**: i.e. *cum Arioviстō, suā* referring to *nēminem*.

Cum: general time, *whenever*. The original form of the verb was future indicative.

712. **congrederētur**: for imperative.

intellēctūrum: supply *Caesarem* as subject. The infinitive has the indirect question *quid . . . possent* for its object.

713. **exercitātissimi**: force of superlative?

715. CHAPTER 37. **Haec**: with *mandāta*, but in emphatic position. For the force of *mandāta* see note on l. 676.

716. **et**: the coördinating conjunction is meant to bring home forcefully the coincidence in time with the preceding clause. Translate *as*.

Trēverīs: in the valley of the Moselle, around the modern Trèves.

Aeduī: supply *veniēbant*.

717. **questum**: supine of purpose with *veniēbant* (170, *a*).

717. **nūper**: see l. 598.

718. **essent, populārentur**: subjunctives of the indirect discourse implied in *questum*.

719. **Ariovistī**: possessive genitive with *pācem*, but translate by *from*.

720. **Trēverī autem**: supply *questum veniēbant*. Notice the two constructions possible with words of feeling; (*a*) a *quod* clause (l. 717); (*b*) indirect discourse (l. 720).

rīpās: the easterly (right) bank. The plural, because several places on the bank are meant.

721. **cōnārentur**: progressive.

723. **sibi**: dative of agent with *mātūrandum* (*esse*).

nē . . . posset: this purpose clause is influenced by the idea of fear suggested by *vehementer commōtus*. What was the reason for this feeling? See Introduction to this campaign, p. 138.

724. **sī . . . coniūnxisset**: for future perfect indicative.

725. **resistī**: supply *ītis*. The passive infinitive is impersonal. Translate *lest resistance would be impossible*.

rē frūmentāriā: Caesar always gave the greatest consideration to the question of his supplies, because his greatest weakness would lie in their lack when he was in the country of the enemy and supported by allies who were unreliable.

726. **quam . . . potuit**: see 106, 2.

727. **Ariovistum**: Caesar was in the territory of the Lingones (Ch. 27) while the German king seems to have been at the confluence (*Coblenz*) of the Moselle and the Rhine, expecting the Suebian reënforcements. The direction of the Roman march, therefore, was almost due north.

Page 68. 728. CHAPTER 38. **trīduī**: genitive of measure (57, *a*).

viam: cognate accusative.

730. **Vesontiōnem**: "Bisontown," to-day Besançon, an important French fortress. Notice the gender.

quod: a pronoun subject followed by a predicate noun is made to agree with this noun rather than with its antecedent.

731. **Id**: the taking of Vesontio. The *nē* clause is subject of *praecavendum*.

733. **ūsuī**: dative of service, translate *useful*.

735. **idemque**: supply *oppidum*.

nātūrā locī: for the following description compare the sketch.

736. **dūcendum**: for meaning cp. l. 291.

737. **facultātem**: distinguish its meaning from that of *facultās*, l. 735.

738. **Dūbis**: "Black River," to-day Doubs.

ut: *as if.*

740. **spatium**: carefully read the sentence to determine the case of this word.

741. **pedum**: genitive of measure. For the use of cases after *amplius* see 84, 2.

742. **intermittit**: literally, *the river leaves off*; freely, *where the river affords no protection.*

743. **rādicēs**: object of *contingant*, of which *rīpae* is subject.

744. **Hunc**: object of *efficit*, which has *arcem* as predicate accusative (73, *c*).

746. **nocturnīs diurnīsque**: adjectives instead of the adverbial expressions *by night and by day.*

748. CHAPTER 39. **Dum . . . morātur**: for tense and meaning see 127, *a.*

749. **ex**: source, but translate *in consequence of.*

750. **quī . . . praedicābant**: upon this the words *ingentī . . . esse* depend, while *saepe . . . potuisse* depend upon *dīcēbant* (l. 754).

751. **magnitūdine**: ablative of description, predicate with *esse.*

752. **saepe**, etc.: before attempting to translate the parenthesis, be sure to master the rest of the sentence.

753. **congressōs**: here of a peaceful meeting.

vultum: *facial expression.*

aciem: *fierceness.*

755. **nōn mediocriter**: *not a little = very much.* An example of litotes, the stating of a thing by denying its opposite.

756. **Hīc**: supply *timor.*

757. **tribūnīs . . . reliquīsque**: young Romans of good families used to accompany the general in the field, partly to acquire some knowledge of warfare, partly also for the sake of gaining money through lawful and unlawful methods, or simply for the sake of traveling. Caesar veils the truth of the situation by *amīcitiae causā*, for the appointments were largely due to political influence.

758. **nōn magnum** = *minimum.*

Page 69. 759. **ūsum**: *experience.*

alius aliā: see 113.

quam . . . dīceret: literally, *which he said to be necessary for himself*

for departing; freely, *which, as he said, made it imperative for him to depart.*

761. **ut . . . licēret**: see note on l. 122.

762. **ut . . . vītārent**: is this result or purpose?

763. **vultum fingere**: *mold their face = control their features.*

765. **tenēre** = *retinēre.*

770. **tōtīs castrīs**: with *tōtus, ūnus, cūnctus* the preposition is commonly omitted (98, 2).

771. **obsignābantur**: the seal was necessary to make the instrument valid in law. They made their wills, and thereby showed they were sure they would be slaughtered.

772. **vōcibus ac timōre**: hendiadys, *expressions of fear.*

776. **quīque . . . praeerant**: the *praefectī equitum*, experienced soldiers, not to be confused with the *praefectī* of l. 757.

778. **Quī . . . ex hīs** = (*Iī*) *ex hīs* (instead of partitive genitive) *quī. Iī* (understood) is subject of *dīcēbant*, l. 783.

779. **nōn**: with *verērī.*

780. **angustiās, magnitūdinem**: with *timēre*, l. 783.

782. **rem frūmentāriam**: by anticipation it has become the object of *timēre.* Translate as if subject of *posset.*

ut: with *timēre* (146).

784. **castra movērī ac sīgna ferrī**: the two steps in continuing a march; strike tents and pack up, pull up the standards and carry them. Compare Introduction, 49.

fore: *futūros esse.*

dictō: dative with *audientēs* = *oboedientēs, obedient.*

785. **neque**: *and . . . not.*

786. CHAPTER 40. **cōnsiliō**: meaning in this passage?

787. **omniumque ōrdinum**: for the ranking of the centurions see Introduction, 30. The council of war regularly consisted of the *imperātor*, the *lēgātī* and *tribūnī*, and occasionally the *centuriōnēs prīmōrum ōrdinum, i.e.* the centurions of the first cohort of each legion. The extraordinary step here shows how serious Caesar judged the situation to be.

788. **quod . . . putārent**: the subjunctive is due to the idea of saying in *incūsāvit.*

Page 70. 789. **sibi . . . cōgitandum**: supply *esse.* This is the object of *putārent*, having for its subject the indirect question *quam . . . dūcerentur.*

790. **cōnsule**: see Introduction to this campaign, p. 138.

791. **cūr . . . iūdicāret**: a question reported in indirect discourse is put in the subjunctive. Here the direct form also used the subjunctive.

792. **temerē**: with *discessūrum*.

officiō: *allegiance*.

Sibi . . . persuādērī: for construction see 64, *a*. Distinguish *persuādeō* = *persuade, make plausible*, with *ut* clause, from *persuādeō* = *convince*, with accusative and infinitive.

793. **cōgnitīs . . . perspectā**: ablatives absolute, equivalent to temporal clauses.

796. **intulisset**: for the future perfect.

verērentur: see note on l. 791.

797. **suā, ipsīus**: i.e. *mīlitum, Caesaris*.

798. **perīculum**: formed from *(ex)perior*. The word originally meant *trial*.

patrum . . . memoriā: see Introduction to this campaign, p. 138; also note on l. 656.

799. **cum . . . . vidēbātur**: the subjunctive should have been used. But the indicative emphasizes the *fact* and thus stimulates the soldiers to do as well.

Cimbrīs . . . pulsīs: ablative absolute.

801. **meritus**: supply *esse*.

vidēbātur: here used as actual passive of *videō*.

factum: supply *esse perīculum*.

nūper: 73–71 B.C. The ablative *tumultū* is one of time. The slaves in this rising were largely recruited from among the Germans captured by Marius.

802. **quōs**: *servīlī* is equivalent to *servōrum*, hence the plural form of the pronoun.

aliquid: *to a certain extent*.

803. **quam**: agreeing with the second antecedent alone.

iūdicārī: impersonal passive (115). The indirect question *quantum*, etc., is its subject.

804. **habēret**: the tense follows the regular sequence, but the meaning is general. Use present tense in translating.

sē: refers to *cōnstantia*.

bonī: genitive of the whole with *quantum*.

805. **quōs**: refers to *hōs* (l. 806), which should be translated first.

805. **inermēs**: appositive to *quōs*, just as *armātōs ac victōrēs* is appositive to *hōs*.

807. **quibuscum**: the relative pronoun is to be repeated, in the accusative, before *nōn*, with *et* supplied.

809. **superārint, potuerint**: irregular sequence.

quī: i.e. *Helvētiī*.

810. **exercituī**: dative with an adjective (70).

proelium: of Admagetobriga, l. 606.

811. **quaererent**: for the future.

reperīre: has for its object *Ariovistum . . . vīcisse*, ll. 812–816.

812. **diūturnitāte**: ablative of cause with *dēfatīgātīs*, which with *Gallīs* forms an ablative absolute.

813. **cum . . . fēcisset**: simplify by translating *after keeping*, etc.

castrīs, etc.: ablative of means, *within*, etc.

ac: explanatory; *namely*.

neque: *without*.

814. **suī**: objective genitive with *potestātem*; *a chance at him*.

dēspērantēs: with *Gallōs*, understood, object of *adortum*. Translate *while despairing*.

815. **adortum**: translate by an independent verb.

ratiōne et cōnsiliō: *trickery and stratagems*.

816. **ratiōnī**: anticipated from *hāc* (*ratiōne*), l. 817. Translate *for what trickery*.

817. **ipsum**: i.e. *Ariovistum*.

818. **Quī**: supply *eōs*. Literally, *those who placed their fear into the difficulty of the grain supply and into the narrowness of the road*; freely, *those who laid the blame for their fear upon a pretended lack of grain supplies and upon the narrowness of the road*.

820. **facere**: *acted*.

cum . . . vidērentur: see note on l. 14. Translate *in seeming*.

821. **dē . . . praescrībere**: *to despair of the general's doing his duty or to dare to dictate his duty to him*.

Page 71. 822. **sibi esse cūrae**: see note on l. 641.

823. **iamque**: *and furthermore, by now*.

824. **frūmenta**: see Vocabulary.

825. **Quod**: *as to the fact that*.

826. **dīcantur**: translate *it was said that they*.

nihil: *not . . . at all*.

scīre: supply *sē*.

827. **quibuscumque**: translate by a possessive, *whose army*.

828. **aut**: before this word supply *hīs* as dative with *dēfuisse* and *convictam* (reference). Translate: *those, whose army had been mutinous, had either been deserted by good luck for managing poorly or had been found guilty of avarice by having some misdeed found out.*

829. **suam**: i.e. *Caesaris*.

innocentiam: *uprightness*. Notice that the conclusion gives the facts in the opposite order from the premise; *innocentiam* corresponds to *avāritiam, fēlīcitātem* to *fortūnam*.

831. **quod . . . fuisset**: object of *repraesentātūrum; what he had intended to postpone.*

834. **utrum . . . an**: for this form of question see 151, 1. It is the object of *intellegere*.

pudor atque officium: (*sense of*) *shame and duty.*

835. **praetereā nēmō**: *nobody else.*

sequātur: for future indicative. Irregular sequence.

836. **sōlā**: *alone.*

nōn dubitet: absolute; *had no doubts.*

837. **praetōriam cohortem**: the body of troops encamped next to the tent of the general (*praetōrium*), hence his bodyguard.

840. CHAPTER 41. **mīrum in modum** = *mīrum ad modum*: cp. *quem ad modum.*

conversae: note the force of *con-, completely.*

842. **illāta est**: supply *mīlitibus*. The singular is used because the two nouns *alacritās* and *cupiditās* form one idea.

prīncepsque = *prīmaque*. For translation, see note on l. 216.

843. **grātiās ēgit**: see note on l. 678.

844. **fēcisset**: subjunctive, because it is a quotation.

846. **prīmōrum**: *i.e.* of the first cohorts. See note on l. 787.

847. **utī . . . satisfacerent**: purpose, instead of the original imperative.

Sē, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying in *satisfacerent*. *Neque umquam* = *et numquam.*

848. **dubitāsse**: see note on l. 836.

summā bellī: *conduct of the war.*

suum: predicate adjective with *esse*, having *iūdicium* for its subject. And so *imperātōris*, predicate possessive genitive: *the judgment was not theirs, but the general's.*

850. **itinere**: only now when Caesar was certain of the loyalty of his army does he seem to have taken measures to ascertain a more

comfortable route. Compare this statement with his bold assertion in l. 823.

851. **eī**: because *fidem habēbat = cōnfīdēbat.*

ut . . . dūceret: purpose.

mīlium: genitive of measure.

852. **quīnquāgintā**: for omission of *quam* see 84, 2.

locīs: ablative of way by which, without prepositīon.

854. **cum . . . intermitteret**: causal *cum* clause, to explain how he came so near the enemy in so short a time. Bring this out by inserting *already* before *septimō*.

Page 72. 858. CHAPTER 42. **Quod . . . existimāret**: indirect discourse, because *lēgātōs . . . mittit* implies speaking.

Quod: is this pronoun or conjunction? How do you decide? In translating, turn the clause into a noun phrase: *as to his former request for . . .*

per sē: *as far as he* (Ariovistus) *was concerned.*

862. **cum . . . pollicērētur**: causal clause.

petentī: equivalent to a clause.

863. **in spem veniēbat**: *was coming into hope = was commencing to hope.*

865. **fore utī**: this circumlocution makes up for the missing future participle of *dēsistere*.

866. **quīntus**: what other gender might have been used? Why?

saepe cum: for *cum saepe*. Latin likes to group words of similar meaning or etymology together; so here the two expressions of time.

ultrō: here of place. See Vocabulary.

867. **nē . . . addūceret**: representing original prohibition. For use of *quem* see 112, 2.

869. **uterque**: notice the number. The English must use the plural.

870. **venīret**: for original imperative.

aliā ratiōne: ablative of manner, *on other terms.*

871. **interpositā causā**: ablative of means, *by a reason put in between = by some flimsy pretext.*

872. **Gallōrum**: he had learned their unreliability in the Helvetian War. See l. 270 and l. 343.

873. **commodissimum esse**: object of *statuit*. The infinitive has for its subject the infinitive *impōnere*, l. 875. Insert *it*.

874. **equīs**: ablative absolute with *dētractīs*. But *equitibus* is dative of reference with the same participle.

eō = *in eōs: thereon.*

legiōnāriōs: *regular*. The legion contained other troops besides the infantry.

876. **sī . . . esset**: for the future.

quid opus factō: see note on l. 666. *Quid* is accusative of respect. Literally, *if there was need of a deed in any way;* freely, *if there should be need for* (*any*) *action.*

877. **nōn irrīdiculē**: an example of litotes. See 171, 3.

878. **ex mīlitibus**: for use of preposition see 55, *a*.

879. **pollicitum**: supply *eum esse*.

880. **ad equum**: the joke is untranslatable. *Ad equum rescrībere* is (1) to enroll among the horse, (2) to enroll (during the census) among the men entitled to serve on horseback, the knights. Bear in mind that the *equites* were the moneyed class in Rome.

882. CHAPTER 43. **erat**: *there was.*

tumulus terrēnus: an earth mound, without rocks.

883. **castrīs**: here with plural meaning.

Page 73. 885. **dēvexerat**: down into the plain.

passibus: ablative of means, as is *intervāllō*, l. 887.

887. **ex equīs**: because the voice comes from the direction of the beasts; *on horseback*. See note on *ex vinculīs*, l. 69.

888. **ut . . . addūcerent**: object of *postulāvit*.

dēnōs: see 24.

889. **initiō**: ablative of means; translate by *in*.

891. **quod . . . missa**; these three clauses are appositive to *beneficia*.

892. **amplissimē**; *on a lavish scale*. Notice the adverb.

quam rem, etc.: referring to the *quod* clauses. The words *quam . . . cōnsuēsse* form the object of *docēbat*, l. 893.

893. **prō**: *in payment for*.

cōnsuēsse tribuī: *was accustomed to be given* = *was usually given*.

894. **illum**: subject of *cōnsecūtum*, l. 896.

cum: concessive.

aditum: *i.e.* to the senate. Compare our phrase *have the entrée.*

iūstam: with both *aditum* and *causam*.

895. **suā**: i.e. *Caesaris*.

896. **Docēbat**: the indirect questions *quam . . . tenuissent* (l. 900) are the object of this verb.

896. **quam**: *how.*

897. **ipsīs cum**: *between them and.* The whole passage reads, literally, *how old and how just reasons for relationship came between for them with the Aeduans.* Translate freely, *how old and how strong were the reasons for friendship between the Romans and the Aeduans.*

898. **quae, quotiēns, quamque**: it is impossible in English to embody more than one interrogative in a sentence. Translate: *what decrees had been passed, how often this had been done, how honorable they were.*

senātūs cōnsulta: legal term for resolutions of the Senate.

899. **ut**: interrogative.

902. **ut . . . vellet** (l. 903): result clause, explanatory of *hanc cōnsuētūdinem.*

suī: genitive of *suum*, used as a noun; *their possessions.*

903. **grātiā**, etc.: ablatives of specification.

auctiōrēs: participle used as an adjective, therefore comparable.

904. **quod**: relative or conjunction? Why?

905. **id . . . ēripī**: object of *patī.*

iīs: dative of reference with *ēripī.*

posset: for mood see note on l. 791.

Postulāvit . . . eadem: *he made the same demands.*

906. **Nē**, etc.: cp. l. 682, et seq.

908. **posset**: for present indicative.

910. CHAPTER 44. **ad**: *with reference to.*

pauca, multa (l. 911): cognate accusatives (72). Translate by adverbs. The omission of a connective between the two sentences brings out the contrast all the more sharply. Insert *but* or *while.*

912. **et**: strengthening, *nay.*

913. **magnā . . . praemiīs**: hendiadys; translate *hope of rewards.*

914. **sēdēs, obsidēs** (l. 915): objects of (*sē*) *habēre*, made emphatic by position.

916. **quod**: refers to *stīpendium; such as.*

cōnsuērint: notice the irregular sequence here and in the following lines.

Page 74. 918. **ad . . . oppugnandum**: purpose.

920. **pulsās ac superātās**: hendiadys; translate *thoroughly routed.*

921. **parātum**: adjective.

922. **inīquum esse**: *recūsāre* is the subject. Insert *it.*

dē stīpendiō: translate as if direct object of *recūsāre.*

suā: i.e. *Gallōrum.*

923. **pependerint**: from *pendō*.

924. **sibi ōrnāmentō**: datives of reference and service, respectively

925. **petīsse**: supply *eam*.

926. **remittātur, subtrahantur**: for the future.

927. **recūsātūrum**; *renounce, give up*. Compare the construction here with that in l. 922.

928. **Quod**: *as to the fact that*.

929. **suī mūniendī . . . causā**: see 168, 1. *Suī*, genitive of reflexive pronoun, for the original object (*sē*) of *mūniendī*; so *Galliae oppugnandae* for *Galliam oppugnandī* (169, 2).

930. **testimōnium esse**: the clause *quod . . . dēfenderit* is the subject of the infinitive.

931. **bellum**: object of both *intulerit* and *dēfenderit*; *had waged a war not offensive, but defensive*.

932. **prius**: adverb. The statement is true only if limited to the immediate past, for the Romans had warred on the Allobroges as early as 121 B.C.

935. **Quid sibi vellet**: indirect discourse for *quid tibi vīs*. *Mihi volō* means *I wish for myself, I claim, I intend*. Notice the secondary (regular) sequence from here on.

suās: i.e. *Ariovistī*.

936. **hanc**: the part of Gaul where the armies now are.

937. **illam**: *i.e.* the Province.

Ut: *as*.

ipsī concēdī: see 64, *a*. *Ā nōbīs*, as expression of agency, is to be supplied.

938. **faceret**: for original present indicative.

939. **Quod**: *as to the fact that*.

941. **rērum**: see 58.

ut . . . scīret: result clause. Translate *as not to know*.

942. **bellō**: ablative of time; 62 B.C.

943. **ipsōs**: i.e. *Aeduōs*.

hīs: *these latter*.

944. **sēcum**: i.e. *cum Ariovistō*.

945. **Dēbēre**: *he ought to*, i.e. *he must, he had reason to*.

simulātā . . . amīcitiā: ablative absolute. Translate by independent clause: *C. was pretending friendship, but*. Notice the emphasis laid on *simulātā*.

946. **quem exercitum**: attracted antecedent, equivalent to *exercitum quem.*

suī opprimendī: see note on l. 929.

947. **Quī nisi** = *itaque nisi ille.*

dēcēdat, etc.: for future indicative.

948. **prō amīcō, prō hoste**: compare *in hostium locō habēre*, l. 518.

949. **Quod sī**: *now, if*, with perfect subjunctive representing future perfect.

nōbilibus, etc.: the office-holding or conservative party in Rome. They were afraid of Caesar as leader of the democracy. Undoubtedly there was a grain of truth in the assertion of Ariovistus, but the details are not known.

Page 75. 950. **grātum**: *a pleasing thing, a favor.*

951. **compertum habēre**: see note on l. 156. *Compertum habēre* = *scīre.*

952. **quōrum**: refers to *nōbilibus.*

953. **Quod sī**: *but if. Dēcessisset* represents the future perfect for which the perfect subjunctive had been used in l. 949. Notice how little attention Caesar pays to the so-called "sequence."

līberam: predicate adjective with *trādidisset; undisturbed.*

954. **magnō**: by being separated from its noun (*praemiō*) the word becomes emphatic.

956. **eius**: subjective genitive with *labōre* and *perīculō; on Caesar's part.*

957. CHAPTER 45. **in eam sententiam**: *to this purpose, in this tenor.*

958. **quārē . . . posset**: indirect question, explanatory of *sententiam.*

959. **ut . . . dēsereret**: object of *patī.*

961. **Ariovistī**, etc.: predicate possessive genitive.

Bellō, etc.: the proofs for the statement *Galliam*, etc.; 121 B.C.

962. **quibus**: antecedent *Arvernōs;* indirect object of *īgnōvisset.* The relative clause is in contrast to the infinitive statement. Translate *but these.*

963. **neque . . . neque**: supply *eōs, eīs.*

964. **sī . . . oportēret**: for *oportet.*

antīquissimum quodque tempus: literally, *each oldest time;* freely, *the question of priority.*

966. **iūstissimum**: *thoroughly justified*, not *just.*

iūdicium: *sentiment.*

967. **quam . . . voluisset**: causal relative clause (133), *since they had wanted it* (Gaul).

968. **victam**: equivalent to a concessive clause.

suīs: i.e. *Galliae.*

969. CHAPTER 46. **geruntur**: why present?

970. **tumulum**: see 70, *a.*

973. **nē . . . rēicerent**: object of *imperāvit. Quod* is the adjective form of the indefinite, *quid* the substantive form.

974. **legiōnis**: either objective genitive with *perīculō*, or subjective genitive with *proelium.* The latter is preferable.

975. **proelium fore**: object of *vidēbat.*

committendum . . . ut . . . posset: the *ut* clause is the subject of *committendum* (*esse*). Literally, *he thought that it must not be brought about that it could be said*; freely, *he thought he ought not to allow it to be said.*

976. **pulsīs hostibus**: temporal ablative absolute.

per fidem: *through* (and beyond) *the pledge = through treachery.*

977. **vulgus**: note gender and declension.

978. **ēlātum est**: the indirect questions *quā . . . dīrēnisset* (l. 981) are the subject.

quā arrogantiā: with *ūsus, employing what arrogance = with what arrogance.*

979. **Galliā**: ablative of separation with *interdīxisset*, of which *Rōmānīs* is the indirect object.

980. **ut**: interrogative.

eaque rēs: supply *ut.*

Page 76. 983. CHAPTER 47. **Bīduō**: ablative of degree of difference with the adverb *post.* The statement conflicts with *prīdiē*, l. 988, but a further engagement may have occurred in the meantime.

984. **Velle**, etc.: indirect discourse after the idea of speaking in *lēgātōs mīsit.*

coeptae, etc.: when a passive infinitive is joined to *coepisse*, this verb is itself made passive. *Neque = but not.*

985. **utī . . . cōnstitueret . . . mitteret**: subjunctive clause for original imperative.

986. **minus**: see note on *minimē*, l. 8.

vellet: original present indicative.

987. **causa**: supply *esse.*

988. **eō magis**: *all the more.*

989. **quīn**: negative verbs of hindering are followed by a *quīn* clause. Translate *from throwing.*

990. **Lēgātum**: object of *missūrum, obiectūrum.*

magnō, etc.: emphatic; insert *only.*

991. **Commodissimum**: *esse* understood, with *mittere* (l. 998) as subject. The infinitive has *Valerium* and *Mētium* (l. 998) for its objects.

992. **Procillum, Cabūrī**: for the names see note on l. 362. Notice that the Roman part of the name is borrowed from the man (governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.) who had bestowed the citizenship. This was the regular custom.

995. **quā multā**: *multā* is predicate adjective to *quā* (*linguā*). Translate by an adverb.

996. **cōnsuētūdine**: ablative of cause.

997. **in eō**: *in his case.*

esset: subjunctive, because this is Caesar's belief.

998. **hospitiō**, etc.: *enjoyed the hospitality of = was on terms of hospitality with.* For this official, not personal, relation see note on l. 583.

999. **quae dīceret**: indirect question, object of *cōgnōscerent* and *referrent.* These *ut* clauses, in turn, are the object of *mandāvit.*

1002. **Quid**: *in regard to what = why.*

venīrent: question reported in indirect discourse (155).

an: the second part of a double question is often used by itself, usually to express indignation; (*was it for some other purpose*) *or for.* The underlying idea is *surely only for.*

1003. **Cōnantēs**: object of *prohibuit,* and equivalent to a temporal clause.

1004. CHAPTER 48. **mīlibus**: ablative of measure.

1006. **trādūxit**: Caesar has often been blamed for not stopping this maneuver which was intended to, and did for a time, cut his line of communication. But Caesar had not yet tried out his soldiers after their panic and could not risk a decisive engagement. Then, too, the configuration of the territory does not seem to have been favorable for a flank attack, which was rare in ancient warfare. Study the map.

1008. **supportārētur**: subjunctive by attraction (160).

1011. **habuit**: see note on l. 156.

ut . . . deesset: purpose clause. The negative *nōn* instead of *nē* is used because *nōn deesset* forms one idea = *adesset.*

vellet: originally present indicative, but the subjunctive is used because the condition forms an integral part of Caesar's purpose (160). Caesar keenly felt the difficulty of his position, but found his match, it seems, in the cunning and generalship of Ariovistus.

Page 77. 1013. **diēbus**: ablative of time within which.

castrīs: see note on l. 813.

equestrī: for the lack of a connective and the necessary translation see note on l. 910.

1014. **hoc**: *the following*. It is the subject, while *genus* is predicate noun.

1016. **numerō**: ablative of specification.

1017. **cōpiā**: *supply, number*.

singulī: supply *equitēs*; *they had chosen, each his own companion*.

1018. **hīs**: refers to *peditēs* (l. 1016), and so do *eōs* (l. 1018) and *hī* (l. 1019).

versābantur: imperfect of habitual action (117, 1); insert *used to*.

1019. **sī quid erat dūrius**: *if anything was too hard = if there was serious trouble*.

quī: i.e. *eques*. Notice the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

1020. **graviōre**: see 106, 1.

1021. **sī . . . prōdeundum**: *if there was need of advancing*.

quō: indefinite adverb of place.

1022. **hōrum**: i.e. *peditum*.

1023. **equōrum**: with both *iubīs* and *cursum*, a case of double dependence. See note on l. 66.

1024. CHAPTER 49. **eum**: i.e. *Ariovistum*, subject of *tenēre*.

nē . . . prohibērētur: purpose clause with *dēlēgit* (l. 1027) and *vēnit* (l. 1028).

1025. **quō in locō**: see note on l. 94.

1027. **castrīs**: dative with an adjective (70). This was a bold stroke, in the execution of which Caesar took a grave risk, but the success of which turned the tables on his opponent.

1031. **Eō**: adverb; namely, to the site of the new camp.

expedīta: agreeing in form with *mīlia*, in sense with *hominum*. They left their baggage behind, to be ready for fighting. Translate *in light order*.

1033. **mūnītiōne**: the work of fortifying, not the fortification.

Nihilō: ablative of degree of difference.

1038. CHAPTER 50. . **Institūtō**: ablative of accordance (93).

utrīsque: this word, regularly singular, must be plural here, because *castra* has no singular.

1039. **paulum**: in its original force as accusative of extent.

Page 78. 1045. **pugnātum est**: see note on l. 476.

1046. **multīs . . . vulneribus**: literally, *many wounds having been inflicted and received as well*; freely, *with great loss on both sides.*

1049. **quod . . . esset**: explains *hanc . . . causam.*

ut . . . dēclārārent: result clause, explaining *ea cōnsuētūdō.*

1050. **sortibus**, etc.: lots were often employed to forecast the future. The Germans are said to have used marked twigs, scattered on a white cloth. The *vāticinātiōnēs* were prophecies uttered by persons believed to be inspired.

1051. **utrum . . . necne**: double indirect question, object of *dēclārārent.* Notice that double indirect questions must be introduced by *utrum* (151, 1).

ex ūsū: see note on l. 549. *Proelium committī* is the subject.

necne: the second part of a double question may be abridged (*or not*). Direct questions use *annōn*, indirect *necne* (151, 1).

eās ita dīcere: indirect discourse, the answer of the captives. The *eās* refers to *mātrēs*, l. 1050.

1052. **Nōn esse**: indirect discourse after *dīcere.*

esse fās: has *Germānōs superāre* for its subject.

1053. **contendissent**: for the future perfect. Thus a superstition decided the fate of a great war.

1055. CHAPTER 51. **quod . . . est**: object of *relīquit.*

ālāriōs: derived from *āla, wing*, probably so called because in the regular Roman battle line they were placed at the wings.

1056. **prō**: *in front of.*

1057. **minus . . . valēbat**: see note on *plūrimum valeat*, l. 304.

prō: *in proportion to.*

1062. **Harūdēs**, etc.: appositive to *copiās.* Before this Caesar had mentioned only two German tribes, the *Suēbī* and the *Harūdēs.* He now mentions five others, several of which can be identified: *Marcomannī* (the "borderers"), later in modern Bohemia, *Tribocī* in the Alsace, *Vangionēs* in the Palatinate, *Nemetēs* in the same district, *Sedusiī* between the Neckar and the Main.

1064. **Eō**: i.e. *in raedās.*

1065. **proficīscentēs**: with *mīlitēs.*

1066. **passīs**: from *pandō*.

sē: the women.

1068. CHAPTER 52. **singulīs . . . singulōs**: *one over each.*

1069. **quaestōrem**: he had only one quaestor. See Introduction, 36.

testēs: predicate accusative.

suae quisque: a reflexive and *quisque* occurring in the same clause are regularly placed next to each other.

1070. **ā dextrō cornū**: ablative of point of view (80).

eam partem: that is, the left wing of the Germans. Compare l. 1079.

1072. **Ita**: with *ācriter*. Similarly in l. 1073 *itaque* = *et ita*, with *repente* and *celeriter*.

sīgnō datō: this was a trumpet blast.

Page 79. 1074. **pīla . . . coniciendī**: *pīla* is object of *coniciendī*. What other construction would have been more usual ?

Rēiectīs: *thrown behind*, not *back*. Turn into a coördinate clause.

1076. **impetūs**: plural, since the sword charge consisted of a series of duels.

1077. **Repertī sunt**: emphatic position, to contrast with the threatening attitude of the Germans. Insert *yet*.

complūrēs nostrī: literally, *ours in numbers* = *a number of our men.*

1078. **īnsilīrent, revellerent, vulnerārent**: so-called characteristic subjunctives. A relative clause after certain antecedents has the subjunctive (125). They jumped on the shield roof which protected the square from above.

1079. **Cum**: concessive.

ā sinistrō cornū: see note on l. 1070. This time the words refer to the Germans.

1082. **adulēscēns**: to distinguish him from his father, the Triumvir.

1083. **quod . . . erat**: gives the reason for *animadvertisset*. The cavalry was not employed during the battle. The quick decision of the young man saved the day for the Romans.

1084. **tertiam**: this had been kept in reserve.

1086. CHAPTER 53. **atque**: *and finally.*

omnēs: emphatic; not only the left wing but the whole army.

1087. **terga vertērunt**: see note on l. 460.

prius: join with *quam*.

1088. **quīnque**: the distance is doubtful. From the battlefield to the Rhine it would be about 15 miles. Perhaps Caesar mistook the Ill, a tributary of the Rhine, for the great river.

1089. **vīribus**: ablative. *Cōnfīdō* takes the ablative of the thing and the dative of the person.

1094. **ūna**: one would expect *altera*, to correspond with *altera* in l. 1095.

1095. **Nōrica**: cp. l. 92.

dūxerat: supply *in mātrimōnium*. Contrast with the meaning of *dūxerat* in l. 1094.

1098. **cum . . . traherētur**: circumstantial; *while being dragged.*

trīnīs: nouns which have no singular regularly take distributives instead of cardinals.

1099. **equitātū**: see 85.

1100. **Quae . . . rēs**: a humane trait, showing one of Caesar's most lovable qualities, his warm regard for personal friends. The feeling, here, was doubtlessly enhanced by political considerations. He could ill afford to have it said that he had sacrificed the life of a noble Gaul when he had been unwilling to risk one of the Roman officers (l. 990).

1102. **hominem . . . restitūtum**: object of *vidēbat*, l. 1104.

honestissimum: not *honest*.

familiārem: emphasizes the personal relation, as *hospitem* emphasizes the official relation.

1104. **neque . . . quicquam** = *et nihil.*

1106. **cōnsultum**: supply *esse;* impersonal passive.

utrum . . . an: double indirect question, subject of *cōnsultum.*

Page 80. 1107. **ignī**: see note on l. 70.

1110. CHAPTER 54. **quī . . . vēnerant**: cp. l. 720.

1112. **quī**: supply *iī* as antecedent.

Rhēnum: see 70, *a*.

1114. **maximīs**: the wars were great, both on account of the large number of the enemy, and on account of their bravery. Also they were of great political importance, in so far as they secured Gaul and Italy for a long time to come against any attempts of invasion.

mātūrius: about September 25.

1115. **hīberna**: supply *castra*.

1117. **conventūs**: the governor was not only military commander, but also chief justice. He traveled circuit for this purpose.

BOOK II

CHAPTERS 1–35. — THE WAR AGAINST THE BELGIANS

Page 81. LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. **Cum esset**: see 129, *a*.

citeriōre Galliā: between the Alps and the Apennines = northern Italy. This and Illyricum, on the east of the Adriatic, formed part of Caesar's province.

suprā: see Bk. I, l. 1117.

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: the editorial "we." Caesar never uses the first person singular in speaking of himself, but either the third singular, when he appears as commander, or the first plural, when he speaks as the author.

crēbrī: not *many*, but *repeated*.

afferēbantur: imperfect, to show repeated action.

3. **litterīsque**: ablative of means (85) with *certior fīēbat*. Notice that *litterae* means *a letter* and also *letters*.

Labiēnī: the most trusted and most capable of his *lēgātī* or assistants, who had been left in command of the troops while in winter quarters in Transalpine Gaul.

certior fīēbat: the subject is *Caesar*, with which *certior* agrees.

omnēs, etc.: construction of indirect discourse (153) after the idea of telling in *certior fīēbat*.

Belgās: between the Seine and the North Sea. See Bk. I, l. 5.

4. **quam**: the real antecedent is *Belgās*; but when a pronoun subject is followed by a noun predicate, it agrees with the gender and number of this noun.

dīxerāmus: see Bk. I, l. 1.

5. **coniūrāre**: the Belgians were a free nation and could not properly be said to conspire. But this is the Roman point of view, that Rome is the destined mistress of the world.

inter sē dare: *inter* with the reflexive pronoun is regularly used to express the idea of *one another*. *Give to one another* = *exchange*.

6. **Coniūrandī**: gerund (169, *a*) in objective genitive (54) construction, dependent on *causās*. Objective and subjective genitives may be tested by changing the governing noun into an active verb of which the genitive will become either subject or object.

hās: predicate of *esse*; *causās* is the subject.

6. **verērentur**: subjunctive, because dependent clauses in indirect discourse are always in this mood (156).

7. **nē . . . addūcerētur**: verbs of fearing are used with a subjunctive clause, introduced by *nē* affirmative and *ut* negative (146).

omnī . . . Galliā: ablative absolute expressing circumstance. An ablative absolute should be translated by either a clause or a phrase, rarely by the English nominative absolute.

pācātā: a mild expression, veiling the fact of conquest.

Galliā: the central part of Transalpine Gaul, between the Rhone and the Seine. See Bk. I, l. 4.

eōs: the Belgians; *sē* would have been ambiguous.

noster: i.e. *Rōmānus*.

8. **nōnnūllīs**: *not none = some* (litotes, 171, 3).

9. **partim quī . . . partim quī** (l. 11): the antecedent of these relatives (*ab īīs*, to be supplied) is appositive to *Gallīs*.

ut . . . nōluerant: *ut* with the indicative means (1) *as*, (2) *when*, (3) *because*. This verb and those following are in the indicative because they are an explanation added by Caesar and not part of the letters.

Germānōs: subject of *versārī*, which is complementary (object) infinitive with *nōluerant*. The Germans, under Ariovistus, had gained control of a large part of free Gaul before Caesar's appearance. They had just been driven out by the Romans. See Bk. I, Ch. 30–53.

10. **atque**: introducing a stronger fact; *and even*.

11. **molestē ferēbant**: see Vocabulary under *ferō*.

12. **mōbilitāte**: ablative of cause (83) with *studēbant*, of which *novīs imperīīs* is the indirect object (64). *Were eager for new governments = desired a change of government*.

ab nōnnūllīs: supply *sollicitārentur*.

13. **ā potentiōribus**: ablative of agent with *occupābantur*, l. 15.

atque īīs: supply *ab*.

14. **condūcendōs**: *hire*. Not a purpose construction, but the gerundive instead of an original gerund with a direct object (168).

15. **rēgna**: plural because each man wanted his own little rule.

occupābantur: *seize*, not *occupy*. Avoid the translation of a Latin word by its English derivative, which generally has a different meaning.

quī: referring to *potentiōribus; and these*.

rem: namely, royal power. Always adapt the translation of *rēs* to the context.

imperiō nostrō: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Translate by *under*.

17. CHAPTER 2. **commōtus**: notice the force of *com-*, *completely, deeply*.

duās: he had already six (numbered VII–XII); these were XIII and XIV.

18. **initā aestāte**: ablative absolute expressing time when. Literally, *summer having been entered upon = early in the summer*.

19. **in . . . Galliam**: connect with *quī dēdūceret*, a relative clause of purpose (123, 4) with *Pedium* as antecedent.

20. **cum prīmum**: ordinarily used with the indicative. Here the circumstances that made Caesar wait are emphasized.

cōpia: subject of *esse*, the complementary infinitive with *inciperet*.

21. **Dat negōtium** = *imperat*: it is historical present (116, *a*), after which either a primary or a secondary sequence (122, Exc. *a*) may be employed.

Senonibus: "fighters." This tribe lived between the upper Loire and the Seine. The name survives in that of the city of Sens.

22. **reliquīsque**: see 105.

Belgīs: dative with an adjective (70).

utī . . . faciant: purpose clause in apposition with *negōtium*.

23. **gerantur**: subjunctive, because the clause forms an integral part of the *ut* clause (160).

sēque: i.e. *Caesarem*.

24. **certiōrem faciant**: see note on *certior fīēbat*, l. 3.

cōnstanter omnēs: not redundant. *Cōnstanter* means that there were no contradictions in the reports, *omnēs* that all the tribes reported.

25. **manūs, exercitum**: each district raised its small contingent and these were concentrated into one army.

26. **dubitandum**: supply *esse*.

quīn: after a negative verb of doubting, a subjunctive clause introduced by *quīn* is used. It was not a question of hurry but one of doubt as to whether Caesar should take the illegal step of waging war outside of his province. When he had done this the preceding year, he could claim the attack of the Helvetians and the appeal of the Aeduans in his defense. No such reason existed in this case.

Page 82. 27. **movet**: see note on *dat negōtium*, l. 21.

diēbusque: ablative of time within which (97).

29. CHAPTER 3. **Eō**: adverb. The clause *cum . . . vēnisset* is circumstantial.

dē improvīsō: prepositional phrase expressing manner.

opīniōne: ablative of comparison (84). Translate *than was expected.*

30. **Rēmī**: the "leaders," around modern Rheims.

Galliae; dative with an adjective (70).

ex Belgīs: *reckoning from*, etc., instead of a genitive of the whole with *proximī*.

31. **lēgātōs**: appositive to *Iccium et Andebrogium* ("Greatland"); and so also *prīmōs*.

32. **quī dīcerent**: relative clause of purpose. From here to the end of the chapter we have the first long example of indirect discourse in this book. The student will best understand this peculiar Roman expression if he tries to recast the report into its direct form. So here: *nōs nostra*que omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus*, neque cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēnsimus* neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus*, *parātī*que *sumus* et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; *reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs *sunt*, *Germānī*que, quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt*, sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt*, *tantus*que *est* eōrum omnium *furor*, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem īegibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nōbīscum habent*, dēterrēre *potuerīmus*, quīn cum iīs *cōnsentiant*.

sē: object of *permittere*. Another *sē*, which would be the subject of the infinitive, has been omitted to avoid repetition.

sē . . . permittere: legal term for surrendering.

35. **coniūrāsse** = *coniūrāvisse*.

parātōsque esse: not a perfect infinitive.

dare, iuvāre (l. 37): complementary infinitives with *parātōs esse*.

36. **imperāta**: participle used as noun.

oppidīs: ablative of means, but translate by *in*. See note on *castrīs*, Bk. I, l. 813.

38. **cis**: from the Gallic point of view, on the left bank.

incolant: irregular sequence, instead of imperfect. Caesar does not follow the law of sequence very consistently.

sēsē: object of *coniūnxisse*.

39. **tantumque**: predicate adjective.

40. **ut . . . potuerint** (l. 43): result clause with perfect subjunctive instead of imperfect.

nē . . . quidem: notice that this phrase surrounds the word or words emphasized.

Suessiōnēs: how will you decide the case of this word? The *Suessiōnēs* lived in the neighborhood of the modern Soissons.

frātrēs: appositive to *Suessiōnēs*.

41. **iūre, lēgibus**: differ like *constitution* and *laws*.

42. **ipsīs**: i.e. *Rēmīs*.

43. **quīn . . . cōnsentīrent**: after negative verbs of hindering (*dēterrēre*) a subjunctive *quīn* clause is used. Translate *from*, etc.

iīs: i.e. *reliquīs Belgīs*.

44. CHAPTER 4. **ab iīs**: with *quaerere* the person asked is expressed with *ā* or *ē*.

quae . . . possent: object clause after *quaereret*. Indirect questions take the subjunctive.

45. **quid . . . possent**: *quid* is cognate accusative (72) with *possent; what they were able = how powerful they were*. Compare *multum posse*.

reperiēbat: imperfect, because he found it out piecemeal.

46. **Plērōsque**: see 105.

ortōs ā: remoter descent is expressed by a preposition.

Rhēnumque: accusative with the *trā-* in *trāductōs*.

47. **propter**, etc.: with *trāductōs*.

48. **Gallōsque**: object of *expulisse*.

ea loca: notice the irregular plural of *locus*.

49. **sōlōsque**: predicate adjective used as a noun, *the only ones*.

memoriā: see 97; between 107 and 101 B.C. Compare below.

omnī, etc.: ablative absolute expressing circumstance.

50. **Teutonōs**, etc.: these had invaded Gaul and were making their way into Italy when Marius defeated them in 102 and 101. The "Teutonic terror" was proverbial in Rome, and Caesar skillfully uses it to show the strength of this new enemy.

51. **ingredī**: complementary infinitive with *prohibēre* (147, *a*); *from invading*. The sequence of *prohibuerint* is irregular.

quā . . . utī: the *utī* clause is the subject of the infinitive. Literally, *from this thing that they . . . came about*; freely, *the result of this deed was that . . .*

rērum: objective genitive. Contrast with *patrum*, l. 49.

52. **sibi**: dative of reference (66). *Sibi sūmere, to take for one's self = to claim.*

53. **omnia**: object of *habēre*.

54. **habēre explōrāta**: not *explōrāvisse*, because the result lasts into the time of the speaker.

propinquitātibus: ablative of means.

55. **coniūnctī**: participle with causal force. Translate *on account of their connections by . . .*

quantam . . . pollicitus sit: indirect question, object of *cōgnōverint*.

quantam quisque: *quisque* commonly follows immediately upon an interrogative, reflexive, or relative pronoun.

Page 83. 56. **conciliō**: distinguish from *cōnsiliō*.

57. **Plūrimum . . . valēre** = *plūrimum posse*.

Bellovacōs: around modern Beauvais.

58. **virtūte**: ablative of specification (95).

59. **armāta**: for *armātōrum*, in agreement with *mīlia*; and so *ēlecta*.

61. **suōs**: i.e. *Rēmōrum*.

62. **fīnēs, agrōs**: objects of *possidēre*.

64. **Dīviciācum**: distinguish from the Aeduan of the same name.

Galliae: genitive of the whole (55).

cum . . . tum: almost the same as *et . . . et*.

65. **partis**: objective genitive with *imperium*, while *regiōnum* is genitive of the whole with *partis*.

66. **obtinuerit**: irregular sequence for *obtinuisset*.

rēgem: predicate noun, subject *Galbam* ("the fat man").

67. **summam . . . bellī**: *the sum of the war* = *the chief command*.

68. **voluntāte**: ablative of accordance (93).

habēre: with *Suessiōnēs*, understood, as subject.

numerō: ablative of specification.

69. **totidem**: object of *pollicērī* understood.

70. **maximē ferī**: superlative of *ferus*, which is not compared by endings.

habeantur: *habeō* and *dūcō* with infinitive = *consider*. The tense here is irregular; so also *absint*.

71. **Atrebātēs**, etc.: supply *pollicērī*. *Atrebātēs* = "owners, landholders"; *Ambiānōs* = "rivermen," around Amiens.

75. **appellantur**: the indicative shows that this is a remark of Caesar's.

arbitrārī: *sē*, referring to the Remi, is to be understood as subject, while *pollicērī* must be understood as predicate of the other names.

ad: with numbers = *about*.

77. CHAPTER 5. **cohortātus, prōsecūtus**: in translating participial constructions, including ablatives absolute, it is often advisable to turn them into independent sentences. So here: *encouraged, addressed.*

līberāliter: translate as if an adjective modifying *ōrātiōne.*

78. **senātum**: with the force of its etymology (*senex*), *body of Elders.*

79. **obsidēs**: appositive to *līberōs.*

addūcī: cp. this voice with that of *convenīre* (l. 78). *Iubeō* takes the active infinitive when the person commanded is mentioned, otherwise the passive.

Quae omnia: referring to the orders given. A relative at the beginning of a sentence is best translated by a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction.

80. **ad diem**: *to the day = punctually.*

Aeduum: added to distinguish this man from the Diviciacus mentioned in l. 64.

Dīviciācum: object of both *cohortātus* and *docet.*

81. **quantopere . . . intersit**: indirect question, object of *docet.* Verbs of teaching take two objects, of the person and of the thing (73, *b*). With the impersonal verb *interest* the person concerned is in the genitive; the degree of interest is expressed by an ablative of degree of difference (89). *Quantopere = how much.*

82. **manūs . . . distinērī**: this infinitive phrase is the subject of *intersit.*

83. **nē . . . sit**: adverb clause of purpose.

cōnflīgendum sit: gerundive construction expressing necessity (43. 2). The dative of agent (67), *sibi*, is omitted because Caesar wishes to make the subject general.

84. **Id**: i.e. *manūs distinērī*; subject of *posse.* Notice the difference between the two objects of *docet*; indirect question (*quantopere*), infinitive (*posse*).

sī . . . intrōdūxerint, coeperint: subjunctive perfect, indirect discourse for future perfect indicative. Caesar tries to create a diversion to divide the forces of the enemy.

86. **Postquam . . . cōgnōvit**: the regular construction with this conjunction (126); translate by pluperfect.

87. **cōpiās**; subject of *venīre* which depends on *cōgnōvit.*

coāctās: equivalent to a clause, *after gathering.*

Page 84. 88. **ab . . . explōrātōribus**: with *cōgnōvit.*

89. **flūmen, exercitum** (l. 90): objects of *trādūcere* (73, 2). The Axona is to-day called Aisne.

90. **extrēmīs**: reckoning from the south.

trādūcere: complementary with *mātūrāvit*, which is followed by an infinitive, never by an expression of place.

91. **ibi**: north of the Aisne.

et . . . et . . . et: translate only the last *et*. In an enumeration the Romans connected either all members or none.

92. **rīpīs**: plural, because it was necessary to cross the river and then climb the steep bank opposite.

post . . . erant: *his lines of communication.* What literally?

93. **tūta**: predicate adjective (102).

commeātūs: subject of *possent*, but anticipated for effect.

ab Rēmīs: not agency.

94. **ut . . . possent**: result clause, object of *efficiēbat*.

95. **In**: *over*.

96. **alterā**: *i.e.* the left bank.

98. **in altitūdinem**: accusative of limit (75).

pedum: genitive of measure (57, *a*). As there was generally a fixed ratio of 3:2 between width and depth of a trench, only one dimension need be given.

100. CHAPTER 6. **nōmine**: ablative of specification (95).

Bibrax: "Beavertown," a name frequent in Gaul, showing that at that time the animal was often found in the country; to-day Mt. Beuvray near Rheims.

101. **mīlia**: accusative of extent of space (74). Notice that *mīlia* is a noun followed by a genitive (*thousands of paces*). In the singular it is an adjective, *mille passūs*. The *passus* was a double step of 5 feet. *Mille passūs* = 1 Roman mile, 4850 English feet.

ex itinere: literally, *from the march*, that is, without making camp or preparing for a siege.

impetū: ablative of manner (91).

102. **sustentātum est**: impersonal passive, used by the Romans to express an indefinite subject (115). Translate by *they*, *people*, *one*, or *you*, and an active verb.

103. **eadem atque**: adjective modifying *oppugnātiō*. Expressions of identity are followed by *atque*, *and* = *as*. Translate freely by a parenthetical expression: *and likewise.*

oppugnātiō: translate *manner of*, etc.

104. **Ubi**: with *coeptī sunt* and *nūdātus est*.

circumiectā multitūdine: ablative absolute.

105. **moenibus**: dative with *circumiectā*.

coeptī sunt: with a passive infinitive *coepī* is itself put into the passive. Translate freely, *they have begun to throw*.

106. **dēfēnsōribus**: ablative of separation (79).

testūdine: see Introduction, 42.

107. **Quod**: namely, the actions mentioned. When a relative refers to an infinitive or a clause it is in the neuter.

108. **cum . . . conicerent**: causal clause. The verb is plural because a crowd consists of many men (114, 1).

109. **cōnsistendī**: gerund in objective genitive after *potestās*.

nūllī: possessive dative (68). Notice the emphatic position.

110. **oppugnandī**: see note on *cōnsistendī*, l. 109.

111. **nōbilitāte**: ablative of description (94). What other case might have been used? See 57.

112. **ex iīs**: numerals are often used with a prepositional phrase instead of the genitive of the whole (55, *a*).

lēgātī: appositive to *quī*.

113. **submittātur, posse**: indirect discourse after the idea of telling in *nūntiōs mittit*.

115. CHAPTER 7. **Isdem**: ablative with *ūsus* (86). It is antecedent of *quī*, and *ducibus* is an appositive to it.

116. **nūntiī**: appositive to *quī*.

Numidās, etc.: the mention of these unimportant parts of Caesar's army strikingly shows the hopelessness of the Gallic resistance against a man who had at his command the inexhaustible resources of the Roman world. From Africa, Greece, and Spain men had been drafted to serve in northern Europe.

Crētas: Greek form, instead of *Crētēs*.

117. **subsidiō oppidānīs**: see 69, *a*.

Page 85. 118. **adventū**: ablative of cause (83).

Rēmīs: dative of reference (66) with *accessit*. In rendering the sentence, make it the subject, *studium* the object, and translate *accessit* by *gained*.

119. **hostibus**, etc.: see note on *Rēmīs*, and treat the sentence in the same way, translating *discessit* by *lost*.

potiundī: gerundive instead of gerund with an object (168), *potiundī oppidō*. Properly only transitive verbs can be so treated,

but the construction is extended to some verbs not followed by the accusative.

120. **Itaque,** etc.: notice the way in which these statements are subordinated to one another by being expressed in participial phrases. Turn each one into an independent sentence.

122. **quō** = *ad quae.*

123. **cōpiīs**: ablative of accompaniment. The preposition is omitted in certain military terms (90, 1).

ā mīlibus: a difficult expression. It seems that Caesar had intended to write: *castra mīlibus passuum* (ablative of degree of difference) *minus ā* (*nostrīs castrīs*), but changed the expression in a manner similar to that by which *diē tertiō ante Kalendās* has become *ante diem tertium Kalendās.* Translate: *at a distance of less than two miles from.*

124. **quae castra**: *castra,* the antecedent of *quae,* has been attracted into the relative clause (111, 4).

fūmō, etc.: not a hendiadys (171, 1); by the smoke in daytime and by the glare of fire at night.

125. **mīlibus**: ablative either of degree (89) or of comparison (84).

in lātitūdinem: see note on *in altitūdinem,* l. 98. Evidently the Gallic camp was very carelessly constructed, if compared with a Roman camp. Excavations have shown that Caesar's army here occupied a space 2129 by 2137 feet. It numbered about 60,000 men. The enemy, about 300,000 strong (ll. 70–76), should then have occupied a space about 12,000 feet square, that is, about two and one half miles.

127. CHAPTER 8. **prīmō**: *at first.* Distinguish from *prīmum* = *first, for the first time.*

128. **virtūtis**: objective genitive (54); *reputation for valor.*

proeliō: ablative of separation with *supersedēre,* which is the object of *statuit.*

129. **quid . . . audērent**: indirect questions, objects of *perīclitābātur.*

quid: see note on *plūrimum possent,* Bk. I, l. 62.

hostis: collective singular.

131. **Ubi,** etc.: the "skeleton" of this sentence is formed thus: *Ubi . . . intellēxit, ab utrōque* (l. 137) . . . *obdūxit . . . collocāvit* (l. 140). This is interrupted by the description of the territory, *locō . . . redībat* (ll. 131–137).

locō: ablative absolute of circumstance with *opportūnō* and *idōneō* as predicate adjectives.

Page 86. 132. **ad**, etc.: with *opportūnō* and *idōneō*, which take either *ad* with the accusative or the dative of purpose.

nātūrā: ablative of cause. Translate by an adverb.

133. **quod**, etc.: explains *opportūnō*.

134. **ēditus**: participle used as an adjective, agreeing with *collis*.

tantum: supply *locī*; accusative of extent (74).

adversus: adjective modifying *collis*; *turned (toward the enemy)*, *in front*.

quantum: object of *tenēre*. It corresponds to *tantum*. Translate by *as* and omit the genitive of the whole, *locī*.

135. **ex**, etc.: ablative of point of view.

136. **lateris dēiectūs**: *slopes of the side = steep sides*.

137. **redībat**: compare this with *ēditus*, l. 134. The point of view differs; above, looking from plain to top, here, looking from top to plain.

ab, etc.: see note on *ex*, l. 135.

138. **trānsversam**: at right angles to the camp. See Map.

obdūxit: fronting the army of the enemy; force of *ob-*?

passuum: genitive of measure (57, *a*).

139. **extrēmās**: see 105.

tormenta: artillery, that is, engines of war worked by twisted ropes (*tortī fūnēs*). See Introduction, 54.

140. **īnstrūxisset**: a subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, showing the reason in Caesar's mind. Otherwise a future perfect would have been used.

141. **poterant**: indicative, because it is a parenthetical clause.

pugnantēs: with *suōs*, circumstantial.

142. **duābus**, etc.: Caesar's regular policy. He fought with seasoned troops only.

143. **sī . . . esset**: subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, as being the thought in Caesar's mind; originally future.

144. **quō** = *aliquō*: after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num* forms with *ali-* are not used. For case see 87.

opus esset: impersonal, *there was need*. *Opus* in this phrase is indeclinable.

subsidiō: dative of purpose (69).

reliquās: not *rest of*.

146. **ēductās**: participle with force of a clause. Translate by independent verb.

147. CHAPTER 9. **Palūs**: this is formed by a little stream, the Miette.

erat: denotes existence.

148. **Hanc**: object of *trānsīrent* in the *sī* clause, but placed before the conjunction for the sake of emphasis.

sī . . . trānsīrent: after verbs of trying, waiting, etc., an indirect question introduced by *sī* is used; *to see if*, etc. The imperfect subjunctive represents an original future.

exspectābant: imperfect of continued action.

149. **autem**: postpositive. This word, like *enim* and *quoque*, is not found at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

sī . . . fieret: see note on *sī trānsīrent*, l. 148. It depends on the adjective *parātī*, which has the force of *waiting*.

150. **ut . . . aggrederentur**: purpose clause depending on *parātī*.

impedītōs: participle, with force of a clause; *while in difficulties* (on account of picking their way through the bog).

151. **contendēbātur**: impersonal passive. In translating make the words *proeliō equestrī* the subject.

152. **faciunt**: historical present.

secundiōre: with *proeliō*, ablative absolute, with the (missing) present participle of *esse* understood.

153. **nostrīs**: dative of reference (66) with *secundiōre*.

155. **quod esse**: the infinitive is the subject of *dēmōnstrātum est*. *Quod* is made to introduce the relative clause of which *dēmōnstrātum est* is the predicate. Translate by turning the predicate into an *as* clause, making the infinitive the predicate of the relative, thus: *which, as has been pointed out, was*.

157. **cōnsiliō**: ablative of cause.

ut . . . prohibērent (l. 161): the *ut* clause of purpose with the four verbs *expugnārent, interscinderent, populārentur, prohibērent*, explains *cōnsiliō*.

sī possent: subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, as part of the plan of the Belgians; originally future. So *sī . . . potuissent*, l. 159, originally future perfect.

cui: dative with *praeerat*. This is indicative because it is an explanatory remark of Caesar's. So *quī . . . erant*, l. 160.

159. **minus**: *parum, minus, minimē*, often have the force of *nōn*.

160. **quī**: antecedent *agrōs*.

ūsuī: dative of purpose, accompanied by a dative of reference, *nōbīs* (69, *a*).

commeātū: ablative of separation.

162. CHAPTER 10. **certior factus**: see note on l. 3.

163. **levis armātūrae**: descriptive genitive (57). Translate by an adjective modifying *Numidās*.

sagittāriōsque: the *-que* marks the last two kinds of troops as forming one body, otherwise no connective would have been used in the enumeration.

164. **ponte**: ablative of means with *trādūcit*, to which the object *flūmen* should be supplied.

Page 87. 165. **pugnātum est**: impersonal passive (115). Translate *they*, with an active tense.

166. **aggressī**: circumstantial participle. Translate by an independent verb.

occīdērunt: note the quantity of the *ī* and distinguish from *occidere*. In composition *a* becomes *i*, but *ae* becomes *ī*.

per: not *through*. The prepositional phrase modifies *trānsīre*, complementary to *cōnantēs*. This refers to *reliquōs*, the object of *reppulērunt*. Translate *cōnantēs* by a circumstantial clause of which a pronoun referring to *reliquōs* should become the subject.

168. **reppulērunt**: notice the spelling and compare with the perfect of the simple verb *pellō*.

trānsierant: *had (actually) crossed*.

169. **equitātū**: ablative of means with *circumventōs*.

interfēcērunt: *nostrī*, l. 165, is the subject.

Hostēs, etc.: in translating this involved sentence it will be best to change the construction and to divide it into a number of small independent statements. Keep in mind that *hostēs* is subject of *cōnstituērunt*, l. 173, and is to be understood as subject of the verbs *intellēxērunt* and *vīdērunt*, which belong to the clause beginning with *ubi*. This clause, however, extends to *coepit*.

170. **dē . . . trānseundō**: prepositional phrases depending on *spem*. An objective genitive (54) might have been used instead; translate accordingly.

spem: subject of *fefellisse*, which has *sē* for its object and is in indirect discourse after *intellēxērunt*.

171. **neque** = *et nōn*.

nostrōs: subject of *prōgredī*, dependent on *vīdērunt*.

172. **pugnandī**: genitive of the gerund with *causā*, expressing purpose (169, 1 *b*). Note that in this construction *causā* always follows the genitive.

ipsōs: object of *dēficere*, complementary to *coepit* with *rēs* as subject.

174. **optimum esse**: predicate adjective. *Revertī* and *convenīre* (l. 176) are the subjects, the whole being the object of *cōnstituērunt* (l. 173).

domum: accusative of limit of motion (75, 1).

quemque: subject of *revertī*.

175. **quōrum**: antecedent *eōs*, l. 176.

introdūxissent: subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing a future perfect.

176. **ad . . . dēfendendōs**: gerundive of purpose, depending on *convenīre*.

ut . . . ūterentur (l. 178): these are purpose clauses, depending on the sense of the whole clause *cōnstituērunt . . . convenīre*. Insert *with the intention*.

178. **cōpiīs**: usually the plural of *cōpia* means *troops*. What does it mean here?

sententiam: *decision*.

179. **quod . . . cōgnōverant**: substantive clause, explaining *haec ratiō*.

180. **fīnibus**: dative with *appropinquāre*, which takes the dative the same as the adjective *propinquus*.

181. **Hīs**: dative, indirect object of *persuādērī*, the subject of *poterat*. Intransitive verbs cannot form a personal passive, but can be used only in the third singular with the original dative preserved (64, *a*). In translating make the dative the subject of a personal construction.

ut . . . ferrent: clause of purpose used as subject of *persuādērī*. In the active the verb is followed by an object clause, which becomes the subject clause of the passive.

182. **neque . . . auxilium ferrent**: *without aiding*. If the writer had wanted to say *and not*, he would have used *nēve*.

183. CHAPTER II. **vigiliā**: ablative of time when. The night was divided into four watches, from sunset to sunrise. At this season the sun set about 9 P.M.

184. **castrīs**: ablative of separation.

nūllō, etc.: probably ablative absolute expressing manner. *Nūllō* = *sine ūllō*.

185. **cum . . . properāret**: causal clause, modifying *fēcērunt*.

186. **ut . . . vidērētur**: object clause of result with *fēcērunt*.

cōnsimilis: force of *con-*? What degree of the adjective would have the same force?

187. **fugae**: see 70.

Caesar: subject of *perspēxerat* and *continuit*. Break up the sentence into small statements.

188. **per**: not *ab*, to show that they were acting under Caesar's orders.

veritus: the perfect participle of deponent verbs often has the force of a present.

quod . . . perspēxerat: causal, modifies *veritus*.

quā . . . discēderent: indirect question, object of *perspēxerat*.

189. **exercitum**: the Roman army proper, the legions. The cavalry consisted of Gallic auxiliaries. See Bk. I, l. 346.

190. **castrīs**: ablative of means; translate by *in*.

Prīmā lūce: ablative of time, modifies the ablative absolute expressing cause, *cōnfīrmātā rē*.

191. **quī . . . morārētur**: relative purpose clause.

novissimum agmen: see 105.

194. **subsequī**: notice the force of *sub-*, *closely*.

196. **fugientium**: circumstantial participle with *eōrum*; *while*, etc.

197. **Cum . . . sustinērent**: circumstantial clause, but almost equivalent to a concession. Translate by *while*.

ab extrēmō agmine: ablative of point of view (80).

ad quōs: *īī* must be inserted as antecedent.

ventum erat: impersonal passive, used here to avoid confusion about the subjects.

Page 88. 199. **priōrēs**: almost equivalent to *prīmum agmen*.

vidērentur, continērentur: subjunctive, because the reason is not real but only existing in their minds.

neque . . . neque: *and . . . neither . . . nor*.

200. **exaudītō . . . ōrdinibus**: two ablatives absolute which modify each other. The first gives the reason for the second, which expresses the circumstances under which the *pōnēbant* takes place. Make the first a prepositional phrase, *upon hearing*, the second an independent verb.

201. **omnēs**: referring back to *priōrēs*.

sibi: dative of reference. Translate by a possessive adjective.

202. **tantam . . . quantum**: an involved thought. Literally, *they*

killed as great a number as the extent of the day was long; freely, . . . *as daylight allowed.*

204. **sub**, etc.: there is no connective (asyndeton). Insert *but.*

205. **erat imperātum**: supply *ītis*; the impersonal passive construction of intransitive verbs (64, *a*).

206. CHAPTER 12. **Postrīdiē eius diēī**: literally, *on the next day of this day = on the next day.*

priusquam . . . reciperent: subjunctive, because Caesar's intention is indicated. Translate *could recover.*

207. **quī . . . erant.** See ll. 40 and 61.

208. **Rēmīs**: dative with an adjective (70).

magnō itinere: *a long march* (in one day) = *a forced march.*

209. **Noviodūnum**: "Newtown," to-day Soissons. It is appositive to *oppidum.*

ex itinere: see note on l. 101.

210. **quod . . . audiēbat**: causal clause, explaining *ex itinere.*

ab dēfēnsōribus: see 79, *a.*

212. **paucīs dēfendentibus**: ablative absolute with concessive force. Translate by *although.*

expugnāre: observe the difference between this word and *oppugnāre.*

213. **vīneās**: see Introduction, 52.

quaeque = *et* (*ea*) *quae.*

ad oppugnandum: a gerund. The regular dative of reference accompanying the dative of purpose *ūsuī* would have been ambiguous.

214. **ex fugā**: grammatically dependent on *convēnit*, but in sense equivalent to *fugientium.* Translate accordingly.

216. **aggere, turribus**: see Introduction, 52.

217. **magnitūdine, celeritāte** (l. 218): casual with *permōtī.*

218. **ante**: adverb.

219. **mittunt, impetrant** (l. 220): historical presents.

220. **petentibus Rēmīs**: causal ablative absolute.

ut cōnservārentur: object of both *petentibus* and *impetrant.* In translating supply a pronoun object with *impetrant.*

221. CHAPTER 13. **obsidibus**: appositive to *prīmīs, ftlīis.*

prīmīs = *prīncipibus.*

222. **Galbae**: see l. 66. Thus the Belgian confederacy was deprived of its commander in chief.

223. **in dēditiōnem . . . accipit**: literally, *receives into surrender*; freely, *accepts the surrender of.*

224. **Bellovacōs**: see note on l. 57.

Quī cum = *hī autem cum*: a relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstrative to connect it with the preceding sentence.

225. **Bratuspantium**: for case see note on l. 209.

atque: repeat *cum*.

227. **nātū**: ablative of specification (95); *greater in respect to birth* = *elders*.

228. **sēsē**, etc.: indirect discourse after *vōce sīgnificāre* = *dīcere*. Caesar, of course, did not understand their language, but judged from their tone of voice.

in eius fidem, etc.: *come into his protection and power* = *surrender unconditionally*.

Page 89. 231. **accessisset, pōneret**: note the difference in tense.

puerī: includes both boys and girls.

232. **passīs manibus**: ablative absolute expressing manner. *Passīs* is from *pandō*.

mōre: ablative of accordance (93), modifies *passīs*.

235. CHAPTER 14. **facit verba** = *dīcit*. The rest of the chapter in its original form ran somewhat as follows: *Bellovacī . . . fuērunt; impulsī . . .* quī *dīcēbant . . . dēfēcērunt* et *. . . intulērunt*. Quī *. . . fuērunt*, quod *intellegēbant . . . profūgērunt. Petunt . . . Bellovacī . . . Aeduī*, ut *tuā . . . ūtāris*. Quod sī *fēcerīs, . . . amplificābis; . . . incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuēvimus*. Notice how very little really had to be changed to make the speech direct.

236. **in fidē . . . fuisse**: *had been in the protection and friendship* = *had been friends and allies*.

237. **impulsōs . . . intulisse** (l. 240): the words *impulsōs* (*Bellovacōs*) *. . . dēfēcisse et . . . intulisse* depend on *verba facit*; the words *Aeduōs . . . perferre* depend on *dīcerent*. Notice the tense of *perferre* compared with that of *dēfēcisse*. The *prīncipēs* said *they are enduring*, Diviciacus said *they have revolted*.

240. **Quī**: supply the antecedent *eōs* as subject of *profūgisse*.

cōnsiliī: objective genitive (54) with *prīncipēs*, which differs in meaning from *prīncipibus* in l. 237.

241. **quod intellegerent**: causal clause, referring to *profūgisse*.

quantam: indirect question, object of *intellegerent*.

242. **Petere**: emphatic position. Translate *it was the prayer . . . of*.

243. **ut . . . ūtātur**: object clause with *petere*. The present subjunctive is retained from the original form.

suā: emphatic; *his customary*.

244. **Quod**: relative, object of *fēcerit*.

246. **amplificātūrum**: supply *esse Caesarem*. It was to Caesar's interest that the Roman allies should be influential.

quōrum: supply *Belgās* as antecedent.

auxiliīs, opibus: ablatives of means.

qua: instead of *quae*. Notice the quantity and distinguish from *quā*.

247. **inciderint**: for original perfect indicative, the sequence being irregular; and so *cōnsuērint*.

sustentāre: supply *bella*.

cōnsuērint: for the force of this tense see Vocabulary under *cōnsuēscō*.

248. CHAPTER 15. **honōris**: with *causā* (52).

249. **receptūrum, cōnservatūrum**: supply *esse*.

250. **auctōritāte**: ablative of description (94). But *multitūdine* (l. 251) is ablative of specification (95).

255. **quōrum**: notice that a Latin relative always opens its clause, even if, as here, it is part of a prepositional phrase.

256. **reperiēbat**: imperfect, because he gathers his information piecemeal.

Nūllum, etc.: indirect discourse after *reperiēbat*, which implies learning.

257. **mercātōribus**: dative of the possessor (68); be careful about the translation.

vīnī: genitive of the whole with *nihil* (55).

258. **īnferrī**: object of *patī*, and having *nihil* for its subject.

259. **esse**: supply *eōs* as subject.

Page 90. 260. **virtūtis**: descriptive genitive (57).

261. **quī . . . dēdidissent**: relative clause with causal force. Translate *for having*, etc.

262. **patriamque**: *of their fathers*.

cōnfirmāre: supply *eōs* as subject.

265. CHAPTER 16. **Cum . . . fēcisset**: circumstantial clause.

trīduum: here used as an adjective. Compare *trīduī viam*, Bk. I, l. 728.

inveniēbat: for tense see note on *reperiēbat*, l. 256.

266. **Sabim**: to-day Sambre.

267. **mīlia**: accusative of extent of space. For this construction after *amplius* see 84, 2.

268. **adventumque**: object of *exspectāre*.

269. **hīs utrīsque**: *both of these.* Notice that *utrīsque* and *hīs* are in the same case, and that *uterque* is here used in the plural, though generally singular.

270. **utī . . . experīrentur**: object clause of purpose with *persuāserant*.

272. **atque**: *and indeed.*

mulierēs: this word, and the *eōs* which must be supplied as antecedent of *quī*, are objects of *coniēcisse*.

273. **quō** = *ad quem*: adverb.

274. **exercituī**: dative of reference.

275. CHAPTER 17. **centuriōnēsque praemittit**: this was the regular custom of a Roman army on the march.

276. **castrīs**: see 69.

dēligant: relative adjective clause of purpose.

Cum . . . facerent: causal clause.

ex . . . Gallīs: with the indefinite numeral *complūrēs*, instead of a genitive of the whole. And so *quīdam ex hīs*, l. 278.

279. **diērum**: possessive genitive with *itineris*. Translate by *during*.

itineris: subjective genitive with *cōnsuētūdine*.

280. **exercitūs**: subjective genitive with *itineris*.

281. **dēmōnstrārunt** = *dēmōnstrāvērunt*.

singulās = *each two*.

282. **neque . . . quicquam**: a negative is regularly united with the word *not*, so that the Romans said *and . . . not anything* for *and nothing* (*et nihil*).

esse: has *adorīrī*, l. 285, for its subject.

283. **negōtiī**: *trouble.* For case see 55.

cum . . . vēnisset, abessent: the subjunctives are due to the indirect discourse and represent a future perfect and a future, respectively.

284. **hanc**: object of *adorīrī*.

285. **sub sarcinīs**: distinguish *sarcinae* from *impedīmenta*. See Introduction, 27, 28. They wanted to attack before the men had laid aside their packs.

286. **futūrum ut . . . audērent**: circumlocution for *reliquās ausūrās esse*. This circumlocution is regularly used for the passive future infinitive and occasionally for the active also.

286. **contrā**: adverb. *Contrā cōnsistere = resistere.*

287. **Adiuvābat**: carefully analyze this long sentence. *Adiuvābat* is the predicate of the main clause and its subject is the substantive clause beginning with *quod* (*the fact that*) and ending with *effēcerant*, l. 294. The order may be kept by turning *adiuvābat* into the passive and the subject into a *by* phrase.

288. **cum . . . possent**: circumstantial or causal clause, modifying *effēcerant.*

equitātū: ablative of specification.

nihil possent: cp. the phrase *plūrimum posse.*

289. **neque . . . cōpiīs** (l. 290): this is a parenthetical remark of Caesar's.

enim: here in its old meaning of *indeed.*

ad hoc tempus: *i.e.* the time of the writer.

rei: represents *equitātuī.*

quicquid possunt: see note on *nihil possent*, l. 288.

Page 91. 290. **cōpiīs**: see note on *equitātū*, l. 288. *Valent = possunt.* Translate *sed . . . possunt* freely: *but all their strength lies in their infantry.*

quō . . . impedīrent: relative clause of purpose, introduced by *quō = ut eō* (ablative of degree of difference with *facilius*); *eō, the.*

291. **sī . . . vēnissent**: implied indirect discourse, representing a future perfect. The verb is plural because *equitātum = equitēs.*

292. **tenerīs . . . interiectīs** (l. 294): ablatives of means. In translating turn *incīsīs* and *īnflexīs* into verbal nouns in *-ing*, with *arboribus* for their object; do the same for *rubīs . . . interiectīs.* The phrase *crēbrīsque . . . ēnātīs* should be turned into a result clause with *so that.* The branches of these trees grew sideways, instead of upward, and briars were planted in between.

crēbrīs = multīs.

294. **ut . . . praebērent**: object clause of result with *effēcerant.*

īnstar: indeclinable noun (*image*); *like, instead of.* It is used with the genitive.

295. **quō . . . posset**: relative clause of result. *Quō = ut eō* (adverb of place).

intrārī . . . perspicī: impersonal passive. Translate: *that not only an entrance, but even a look into the place was impossible.* Similar hedges are still found throughout the whole country lying along the shores of the North Sea as far as Denmark.

296. **rēbus**: anticipated from the causal *cum* clause.

297. **omittendum**: supply *esse*.

sibi: dative of agent (67). In translating turn *sibi* into the subject of the verb *must, ought*, making *omittendum* an active infinitive.

299. CHAPTER 18. **quem locum**: not infrequently, especially in legal language, the antecedent noun is repeated in the relative clause. In translating omit *locum* and place the relative clause before *erat*.

300. **ab summō**: *from the top*. Supply *colle*.

301. **Ab eō flūmine**: that is, on the other bank.

302. **acclīvitāte**: ablative of description (94). Notice the difference in the prefixes, according to the point of view. Looking down from the top, the hill is *dēclīvis;* looking up from the bottom, it is *acclīvis*.

nāscēbātur: *was being born, rose*.

huic: dative with an adjective (70).

303. **passūs**: accusative of extent.

ab īnfimō: see note on *ab summō*, l. 300. This, as well as *ab superiōre parte*, is an ablative of point of view.

304. **ut . . . posset**: is this purpose or result? What decides this?

305. **perspicī**: for translation see note on l. 295.

306. **secundum**: preposition.

307. **vidēbantur**: the passive of *videō* commonly has the meaning *seem*. Here, however, it is used as the actual passive of *videō, see*.

308. **pedum**: genitive of measure.

310. CHAPTER 19. **cōpiīs**: ablative of accompaniment, without preposition (90, 1).

aliter sē habēbat: *held itself otherwise = was different*. *Habēbat* is singular because *ratiō ōrdōque* forms one idea. Notice the irregular adverb *aliter*, as if from an adjective of the third declension.

ac: *from what*.

313. **expedītās**: appositional adjective.

314. **collocārat** = *collocāverat*: derived from *locus*.

proximē: refers to time.

315. **praesidiōque impedīmentīs**: see 69, *a*.

317. **cum . . . equitātū**: with *commīsērunt*.

318. **Cum**, etc.: circumstantial clause. Translate by *while*.

illī: i.e. *hostēs*.

320. **longius**: with *īnsequī* (l. 321).

quam, etc.: *than to what limit extended the open country reached = no farther than the extent of the open country*.

Page 92. 321. **cēdentēs**: object of *īnsequī*. The participle is used as a noun. Translate by a relative clause.

322. **prīmae**: here has the force of an adverb.

323. **dīmēnsō**: participle of *dīmētior*, with passive force.

325. **quod tempus** = *id tempus quod*.

committendī proeliī: gerundive construction in the objective genitive with *tempus*. Translate by *for*.

326. **convēnerat**: from the impersonal verb *convenit, it is agreed upon*.

ut: notice the mood of the predicates.

aciem ōrdinēsque: hendiadys, *the ranks of their battle line*.

327. **ipsī**: omit in translating.

329. **His**: i.e. *equitibus*.

330. **ut . . . vidērentur**: result clause.

ad: *in front of*.

331. **vidērentur**: see note on l. 307.

332. **adversō colle**: ablative absolute, implying contrast; *even uphill*.

in opere: supply *mūniendī*.

334. CHAPTER 20. The breathless haste made necessary by this surprise is well expressed by the short, jerky sentences, without any connectives. It is worth while to observe how in the description of this battle Caesar always manages to appear just at the critical moment. See beginning of Chs. 21, 25, 26.

Caesarī: dative of agent, to be understood with all the gerundives which follow.

ūnō: *one* (*and the same*).

vēxillum: a red flag hoisted over the general's quarters. See Introduction, 40.

335. **cum . . . oportēret**: circumstantial clause.

336. **concurrī**: impersonal passive infinitive, subject of *oportēret*.

quī: its (omitted) antecedent *eī* is subject of *arcessendī*.

337. **aggeris**: that is, the material for the rampart.

338. **cohortandī**: which was regularly done before commencing battle. Note that the gerundive of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.

signum: for attack.

340. **impediēbat**: singular, because the two nominatives form one idea. The time was short because the enemy rushed so rapidly.

difficultātibus: dative of reference with the dative of purpose *subsidiō* (69, *a*). Translate by *in*.

duae rēs: explained by one pair of nouns in apposition (*scientia*, etc.) and by an explanatory substantive clause (*quod . . . vetuerat*, l. 344 et seq.).

341. **quod . . . poterant** (l. 344): a causal clause, explaining *scientia atque ūsus*.

342. **proeliīs**: ablative of means.

quid . . . oportēret: indirect question (151), object of *praescrībere* and retained object of *docērī*.

343. **ipsī sibi**: see note on *ipsī*, l. 327.

344. **singulīsque . . . lēgātōs**: *and from each individual legion its own commander*.

345. **lēgātōs**: *vetāre* takes a direct object. What is the usual construction with verbs of forbidding? See 147.

nisi mūnītīs castrīs: *unless after . . .*

346. **Hī** = *lēgātī*.

347. **nihil**: *not at all*.

348. **per sē**: *on their own responsibility*.

quae vidēbantur: supply *sibi*; *what seemed good to them*. The relative clause is the object of *administrābant*.

349. CHAPTER 21. **rēbus imperātīs**: as *imperāre* takes the *thing ordered* as its direct object, the passive ablative absolute is a perfectly regular construction.

350. **quam partem** = *ad eam partem quam*.

351. **decimam**: on the left wing. Do you think it was mere accident that Caesar came first to his favorite regiment?

Page 93. 352. **quam**: *than (to say)*.

utī . . . sustinērent: these subjunctives represent a quotation (implied indirect discourse) of original commands and prohibitions.

353. **neu** = *nēve*: purpose clauses and prohibitions are regularly continued by *nēve* = *et nē* (while *neque* = *et nōn*). *Neu* and *-que* here correspond to the *neque . . . et* of a statement (*on the one hand not . . . but on the other hand*).

animō: either an expression of place, without preposition, or ablative of specification.

354. **quod . . . aberant**: giving the reason for *sīgnum dedit*.

nōn . . . posset: *no farther than whither a missile could be thrown* = *within range*.

355. **posset**: relative clauses after negative antecedents are in the subjunctive.

356. **Atque**: *and indeed*, giving the proof for the statement that the enemy was close by.

alteram: the right wing.

357. **pugnantibus**: dative with *occurrit*; *he found them fighting.*

Temporis, hostium: the position marks these words as emphatic.

358. **parātus**: adjective.

359. **ut . . . dēfuerit** (l. 361): result clause. The tense is in irregular sequence, which is often found in result clauses when the result is stated as decisive or final.

īnsīgnia, etc.: the officers were distinguished by certain trappings, while they, as well as many soldiers, possessed medals given for bravery. These things were put on before the battle. The helmets were not worn on the march, but carried either over the arm or with the baggage (*sarcinae*) on a stick. The shields were ornamented with brass and were carried in leather covers to save unnecessary polishing. See Introduction, 25, 27, 51.

360. **scūtīs**: dative of separation (66, *b*).

361. **Quam**: with *in partem.*

362. **cāsū**: ablative of cause; translate *by*, etc.

quaeque = *et quae.*

prīma: translate with *cōnspēxit* as if it were an adverb. The standards of the maniples are meant.

365. CHAPTER 22. **Instrūctō . . . poterant** (l. 372): break this sentence up into several parts. (1) *Instrūctō . . . postulābat*, (2) *cum dīversae . . . impedīrētur*, (3) *neque . . . poterant.* In the Latin context the relation of the clauses is as follows: (1) ablative absolute of time; (2) causal clause, giving the consequences arising from (1) and the reason for (3). In translating choose coördinating conjunctions in accordance with this hint.

dēiectus: a noun followed by the genitive *collis.*

366. **necessitās**: *needs of the moment.*

ratiō atque ōrdō: *theory and practice.*

367. **dīversae**: *turned from each other.*

aliae aliā: *one here, one there* (113). *Aliae* is appositive to *legiōnēs.*

368. **saepibus . . . interiectīs**: ablative absolute expressing means. In translating the participle turn it into a relative clause going with *ut . . . dēmōnstrāvimus.* For the facts cp. Ch. 17.

370. **certa subsidia**: *reserves in certain places.*

quid . . . opus esset: indirect question, subject of *prōvidērī.*

quid: if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun, this may be made the subject of the phrase *opus est.*

372. **administrārī**: not *carried out*, but *given.*

373. **inīquitāte**: literally, *unevenness*; translate *diversity.*

fortūnae: genitive, with *ēventūs.*

374. CHAPTER 23. **Legiōnis**: singular, because Caesar thinks at first only of that legion to which he comes first. His preference for the tenth legion is shown by the fact that in Ch. 21 he did not even mention the ninth.

mīlitēs: subject of *compulērunt, interfēcērunt.*

375. **cursū . . . cōnfectōs**: modifies *Atrebātēs.*

cursū ac lassitūdine: hendiadys (171, 1); *weary from running.*

376. **exanimātōs**: *winded.*

his: i.e. *Atrebātibus.*

377. **ea pars**: i.e. *exercitūs Rōmānī.*

378. **compulērunt**: notice the force of the prefix, *completely.*

cōnantēs: accusative.

379. **impedītam**: appositional. Translate by *while.*

trānsīre: complementary infinitive, with *dubitāre* meaning *hesitate.*

380. **inīquum**: because now the Romans fought uphill.

381. **hostēs**: accusative.

382. **dīversae**: as in l. 367, and hence *separately.*

Page 94. 383. **quibuscum**: *cum* is used as an enclitic with personal, reflexive, relative, and interrogative pronouns.

384. **ex locō superiōre**: the Romans were on the upper part of the river bank.

385. **proeliābantur**: progressive.

ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte: ablatives of point of view.

386. **nūdātīs**: supply *dēfēnsōribus*, an ablative of separation.

cum . . . cōnstitisset: circumstantial (129). For number see note on l. 374.

387. **intervāllō**: ablative of measure.

388. **cōnfertissimō agmine**: ablative of manner.

duce Boduognātō: ablative absolute; *Boduognatus being leader, under Boduognatus's leadership.*

389. **summam imperiī**: see note on *summam bellī*, l. 67.

390. **ab apertō latere**: see note on *ā fronte*, l. 385. The right side was shieldless.

391. **summum . . . locum**: the camp, as usual, was on the slope of the hill, hence the rear was higher than the front.

392. CHAPTER 24. **levisque armātūrae**: descriptive genitive; translate as an adjective.

393. **quī . . . fuerant**: see l. 316.

quōs: referring to *equitēs, peditēs*.

394. **pulsōs**: supply *esse*.

cum . . . reciperent: circumstantial; *while retreating*.

395. **adversīs**: *face to face*. The cavalry had run away and was now rallied near the camp, and met the enemy entering it.

396. **decumānā portā**: see the plan of a Roman camp, Introduction, 48.

ac summō iugō: the baggage train had only partly entered the camp.

397. **victōrēs**: appositive to *nostrōs*.

398. **cum respēxissent**: circumstantial; *upon looking back . . . and seeing*.

400. **eōrum**: with *clāmor*. Translate by *from*.

401. **oriēbātur**: singular, because *clāmor fremitusque* forms one idea. The shouting of the men and the noise of the beasts and wagons blend into one confused uproar.

alīque, etc.: see note on l. 367.

402. **ferēbantur**: *were carried = rushed*.

403. **Trēverī**: in the valley of the Moselle. The name survives in the name of the city of Trèves. The word is here used as an adjective.

404. **virtūtis**: objective genitive, with *opīniō; reputation for bravery*.

auxiliī causā: with *missī*.

405. **cum**: conjunction, with *vīdissent*. In itself it might be a preposition, but the subjunctive *vīdissent* (l. 408) demands a conjunction to introduce it. It is circumstantial; for translation see note on l. 394.

406. **circumventās tenērī**: the perfect participle with *habēre* and *tenēre* denotes that the action has been completed, but that its effect continues. Translate *held almost completely outflanked*.

407. **cālōnēs**, etc.: the lack of connectives is regular in enumerations where either all parts are connected or none. Here it is certainly meant to paint the excited confusion of the battlefield.

408. **dēspērātīs**, etc.: *our circumstances having been despaired of* = *despairing of our success.* In the active, *dēspērāre* takes *dē*, but the ablative absolute is used as if it were a transitive verb.

409. **Rōmānōs**: indirect discourse after *renūntiāvērunt*.

410. **castrīs**: with *potītōs*.

412. CHAPTER 25. **Caesar**, etc.: this sentence, the longest found in Caesar, *must* be broken up as follows: (1) to *profectus*; (2) to *vīdit*; (3) to *āmissō*, treating all ablatives absolute as independent sentences; (4) *to occīsīs*; (5) to *posset*, as a parenthesis; (6) to *vītāre*; (7) to *vīdit*, which should be omitted in translating; (8) to *posset*; (9) to *vēnerat*; (10) to *prōcessit*; (11) to *appellātīs*; (12) to *cohortātus*; (13) to end of sentence. Keep in mind that beginning with *ubi* (l. 413) everything depends upon *vīdit* (l. 415), which is repeated in l. 424 to refresh the reader's memory.

Caesar: subject of *prōcessit* (l. 426), and *iussit* (l. 428). See note on l. 334.

414. **collātīs**: *crowded.*

sibi ipsōs: see note on l. 327.

Page 95. 418. **prīmipīlō**: see Introduction, 30.

419. **Baculō**: probably a nickname ("Mr. Cane") given to the man by the soldiers because he used his sign of office too freely.

gravibusque: an adjective modifying the same noun as *multus* is connected with *multus* by *et* or *-que*. Omit the conjunction.

421. **ab novissimīs**: ablative of point of view.

dēsertō locō: ablative absolute.

proeliō: ablative of separation.

422. **ā fronte**: ablative of point of view.

424. **in angustō**: *in a tight place.*

vīdit: omit.

425. **ab novissimīs**: see note on l. 421.

mīlitī: dative of separation (66, *b*).

428. **sīgna īnferre**: by doing this the formation would be made open and the soldiers would have elbowroom.

quō: see 123, 3.

429. **Cuius**: i.e. *Caesaris*.

430. **mīlitibus**: dative with *illātā*.

cum . . . cuperet: causal clause.

431. **in extrēmīs suīs rēbus**: *in his own desperate circumstances* = *at the greatest personal risk.*

433. CHAPTER 26. **Caesar**: see note on l. 334.

cum . . . vīdisset: circumstantial; *upon noticing.*

434. **tribūnōs**: see Introduction, 32.

435. **ut . . . īnferrent**: purpose clauses, representing an original command.

conversa sīgna . . . īnferrent: *sīgna* is object of *īnferrent*. By turning the standards, the front would naturally be changed; hence, *should wheel and attack.*

436. **aliīs aliī**: see note on l. 367.

437. **nē . . . circumvenīrentur**: see 146.

āversī: *turned away = from the rear.* The legions were now standing back to back.

440. **proeliō nūntiātō**: ablative absolute expressing cause or time.

441. **cursū incitātō**: ablative absolute expressing manner,

442. **cōnspiciēbantur**: the imperfect here denotes the beginning of the action.

Labiēnus: see l. 373, where the commander, however, was not mentioned.

443. **quae . . . gererentur**: indirect question, object of *cōnspicātus.*

445. **Quī**: referring in thought to the individual soldiers, and therefore in "construction according to sense" not agreeing with *legiōnem.*

quō . . . esset: *in what critical situation.*

quō . . . versārētur (l. 447): indirect questions, objects of *cōgnōvissent.*

Page 96. 447. **versārētur**: agreeing only with the last and most important subject. In this way the personal relation of the tenth legion to Caesar is emphasized.

nihil . . . fēcērunt: *made nothing (of) left for them in regard to speed = left nothing undone as far as speed went.*

450. CHAPTER 27. **ut . . . redintegrārent, occurrerent, praeferrent**: result.

etiam quī: supply *eī.*

prōcubuissent: subjunctive by attraction (160).

451. **scūtīs**: ablative with *innīxī.*

452. **inermēs**: agreeing with *cālōnēs.*

453. **ut . . . dēlērent**: purpose clause referring to *praeferrent.*

454. **in**: the preposition is usually omitted in this phrase.

mīlitibus: indirect object with *praeferrent.*

455. **in extrēmā spē salūtis**: *at the end of their hope for safety = at the last ditch, without any hope.*

456. **praestitērunt**: notice that this verb is here transitive, with *virtūtem* as object. See Vocabulary.

ut . . . pugnārent: how do you decide whether this is purpose or result?

cum . . . cecidissent: circumstantial.

457. **iacentibus**: dative with *īnsisterent.*

458. **hīs**: i.e. *proximīs.*

459. **quī superessent**: supply *eī*; subjunctive by attraction (160).

ut: adverb, *as.*

460. **conicerent, remitterent**: supply the *ut* from l. 456.

ut . . . dēbēret: result clause depending on, and drawing the conclusion from, all the preceding facts.

nōn nēquīquam: with *ausōs esse.*

461. **virtūtis**: descriptive genitive.

iūdicārī dēbēret: infinitive of an impersonal passive; *one ought to judge.*

462. **trānsīre, ascendere, subīre**: complementary to *ausōs esse.*

463. **quae**: referring to the infinitives and therefore neuter. It is object of *redēgerat*, with *facilia* as predicate accusative (73, *c*).

ex: *instead of.*

466. CHAPTER 28. **redāctō**: agreeing with *nōmine*, but referring also to *gente.*

quōs . . . dīxerāmus: when, as here, a relative clause contains a verb of saying on which the rest of the clause depends, the verb of saying should be made parenthetical, and the infinitive should be translated as a finite verb. For the facts, see l. 272.

468. **cum . . . arbitrārentur**: causal clause.

victōribus, victīs: datives of reference. Literally, *nothing hindered for the victors, nothing safe for the conquered*; freely, *no barrier for the conquerors, no safety for the defeated.*

469. **impedītum, tūtum**: supply *esse.*

472. **ad trēs**, etc.: the statement was decidedly exaggerated. Five years later they again put 6,000 men in the field against the Romans.

473. **vix**: with *quīngentōs.*

474. **ut . . . vidērētur**: purpose. This clemency was probably not merely due to policy, but influenced by Caesar's sincere respect for the bravery of the Nervii. See ll. 460–464.

476. **fīnitimīs**: indirect object of *imperāvit*, the direct object of which is the *ut* clause. Notice the difference in construction of the two verbs of commanding, *iubeō* and *imperō*.

Page 97. 478. CHAPTER 29. **suprā**: see l. 271.

cum . . . venīrent: circumstantial; *while*.

479. **cōpiīs**: ablative of accompaniment, without a preposition.

ex itinere: that is, immediately.

482. **cum . . . habēret**: concessive.

ex . . . partibus, ex parte: ablatives of point of view.

in circuitū: a prepositional phrase, used almost like an adjective; *all around*.

486. **tum**: *now*. In a narrative the words of time are used as if from the point of the speaker. When Caesar wrote, it was *then*.

487. **collocābant**: progressive.

Ipsī: i.e. *Aduatucī*.

488. **Cimbrīs**: ablative of origin (81, 1).

cum . . . facerent: circumstantial. Turn into a phrase, *on their march*. See Bk. I, l. 799.

489. **iīs impedīmentīs**: ablative absolute with *dēpositīs*, l. 491.

490. **agere ac portāre**: two verbs, one referring to cattle and slaves, the other to things. Translate by the one verb *transport*.

citrā: on the Gallic side.

491. **cūstōdiae, praesidiō**: datives of purpose.

492. **eōrum**: i.e. *Cimbrōrum*.

493. **cum . . . dēfenderent**: circumstantial clause, explaining *exagitātī*.

aliās . . . aliās: adverbs.

494. **illātum dēfenderent**: supply *bellum*. Literally, *warded off* (*a war*) *made on* (*them*); freely, *waged now offensive, now defensive wars*.

496. CHAPTER 30. **Ac**: *and indeed*.

adventū: ablative of time.

497. **parvulīsque proeliīs**: *very small fights = skirmishes*.

498. **pedum**: must be understood both with *XII* and with *XV mīlium*, since the rampart certainly was not 15 miles long. It is not repeated after *mīlium*, because it would produce a disagreeable similarity of sound.

499. **circummūnītī**: by Caesar.

oppidō: ablative of means. Translate by *in*.

501. **irrīdēre, increpitāre**: historical infinitives (165).

502. **ā tantō spatiō** = *tantō spatiō* (ablative of degree of difference) *ā* (*sē*): see note on l. 123.

503. **īnstituerētur**: the subjunctive is used because this is part of their sneers.

Quibusnam, etc.: this is a question in indirect discourse, of which *cōnfīderent*, l. 507, is the predicate (for *cōnfīditis*). Do not confuse with an indirect question, which must be introduced by a verb.

504. **hominēs**: in apposition to the subject of *cōnfīderent*.

tantulae: the ending *-ulus* makes diminutives (see *parvulīs*, l. 497); *so little great* = *so small*.

505. **prae**: *in comparison with, on account of*. In translating the parenthesis make *Gallīs* the subject, turn *contemptuī* into a verbal predicate, and make *brevitās* the object.

506. **in mūrō**: verbs of placing often have an ablative of place where, instead of an accusative of place to which. The Aduatuci probably never had seen a tower on wheels, and wondered how the Romans would lift it up and place it at the wall.

Page 98. 508. CHAPTER 31. **movērī et appropinquāre**: *turrim* must be supplied as subject.

509. **speciē**: from root *spec-*, *see*.

510. **quī**, etc.: the predicate is *dīxērunt*, l. 514. This verb governs the words *sē* . . . *permittere* (l. 513), while *locūtī*, l. 510, governs the words *Nōn* . . . *possent* (ll. 510–513). In these, again, the words *Rōmānōs* . . . *gerere* depend on *exīstimāre*.

511. **quī** . . . **possent** (l. 513): relative clause with causal force (133).

513. **sē** . . . **omnia**: object of *permittere*. A second *sē* as subject of *permittere* is omitted to avoid repetition. The phrase means *surrender unconditionally*.

514. **Ūnum**: object of the following infinitives, with subject *sē* understood.

prō: *in accordance with*.

suā: i.e. *Caesaris*. Translate *his usual*.

515. **statuisset**: subjunctive in indirect discourse, for the future perfect.

516. **nē** . . . **dēspoliāret**: explains *ūnum*.

sē: i.e. *Aduatucōs*.

armīs: ablative of separation.

517. **Sibi**: with *inimīcōs*.

517. **virtūtī**: see 64.

518. **possent**: for the future.

519. **Sibi**: dative of reference with *praestāre* (from the impersonal *praestat, it is better*). The infinitives *patī, interficī* are the subjects of *praestāre*.

dēdūcerentur: for the future or for present subjunctive.

520. **quamvīs**: from the pronoun *quīvīs*.

fortūnam: meaning ?

ā: introducing an ablative of agent, because *patī* = *be treated*. Translate *at the hands of*.

quam: adverb with a comparative, since *praestāre* = *melius esse*.

hīs: antecedent of *quōs*.

521. **per**: expressing manner.

522. CHAPTER 32. **cōnsuētūdine . . . meritō**: ablatives of cause.

523. **eōrum**: with *meritō*.

524. **ariēs**: see Introduction, 52.

attigisset, dēdidissent: for the future perfect.

525. **nisi**: *except*.

527. **nē . . . inferrent**: object clause with *imperātūrum*.

528. **quae imperārentur**: object of *facere*. For the passive construction see note on l. 349. Instead of the present infinitive we should have expected the future.

531. **summam . . . altitūdinem**: *the highest height* = *the top*.

534. **patefactīs**: those compounds of *faciō* which are not made with prepositions retain the use of *fīō* as passive.

536. CHAPTER 33. **nē . . . acciperent**: purpose. Caesar's regard for the safety of the surrendered serves to show their treachery in the worst light.

quam: since a negative purpose clause must be introduced by *nē*, a compound negative used in it must be resolved into its parts; *nobody* = *that not anybody*, etc.

537. **ante**: adverb.

initō: ablative absolute with *cōnsiliō*.

intellēctum est: impersonal passive. Supply *later*.

Page 99. 539. **dēnique**: *at least*.

540. **partim, partim**: see Vocabulary.

cum: the preposition expresses possession.

541. **scūtīs, vīminibus**: ablatives absolute, but equivalent in meaning to *cum armīs*.

542. **pellibus**: ablative of means.

543. **quā**: adverb of place.

546. **ignibus**: fire signals were often employed. Monuments show a torch stuck out from a fort.

547. **concursum, pugnātum**: impersonal.

548. **in extrēmā**, etc.: see note on l. 455.

ut . . . pugnārī dēbuit: do not allow the *ita* (l. 547) to mislead you into assuming a result clause. What makes this impossible?

549. **turribus**: none had been mentioned, but towers always, and at regular intervals, strengthened the *vāllum*.

550. **iacerent**: subjunctive in a characteristic relative clause, after indefinite antecedent.

dēbuit: in translating make *virīs* the subject and turn *pugnārī* into the active. Remember that *ought* is a defective verb and that the time of *dēbuit* must be shown in the translation.

cum . . . cōnsisteret: causal clause.

551. **ad hominum mīlibus**: the preposition is used adverbially. This use probably arose from an original *hominum mīlibus ad*. See note on *ā tantō spatiō*, l. 502.

553. **cum . . . dēfenderet**: causal clause.

nēmō: note the emphatic position. *Iam* with a negative may be translated *longer*.

554. **sectiōnem**: see Vocabulary.

555. **capitum** = *hominum*: cp. the use of *souls* in English.

556. **mīlium**: predicate genitive of measure.

557. CHAPTER 34. **ā P. Crassō**: ablative of agent with *certior factus*, l. 560. For Crassus see note on *adulēscēns*, Bk. I, l. 1082.

558. **Venetōs**: "kinsmen." Also *Venellōs*, diminutive of *Venetī*; *Coriosolitēs*, "the watchers of the army"; *Esuviōs*, "sons of Esus," the Gallic war god; *Redonēs*, "charioteers." The names survive in the modern Vennes, Corseult, Rennes.

559. **quae**: agreeing with *cīvitātēs*, but referring to the names mentioned. A pronoun subject is regularly made to agree with its predicate noun.

561. **in diciōnem**: see Vocabulary.

563. CHAPTER 35. **pācātā**: what literally?

565. **incolerent**: subjunctive by attraction (160).

566. **quae . . . pollicērentur**: purpose clause.

sē: what is the gender? Why?

567. **Ītalian Īllyricumque**: Cisalpine Gaul, which began by this time to be considered part of Italy, and the district north and east of the Adriatic.

Page 100. 568. **initā**, etc.: ablative absolute; *at the beginning of.*

569. **Carnutēs** ("trumpeters"), **Andēs, Turonōs**: modify *dēductīs.* The names survive in Chartres, Anjou, Touraine.

570. **quaeque**, etc. = *eās cīvitātēs quae.*

locīs: dative with an adjective.

572. **eāsque**: *-que* is not attached to a preposition, but to the word governed by it.

ex: *from = on account of.*

573. **supplicātiō**: a public celebration, consisting of religious worship and public feasting.

dēcrēta est: supply *ā senātū.*

quod: neuter because the whole preceding sentence is the antecedent. Insert *an honor.*

574. **nūllī**: notice the emphatic position. The honor was richly deserved, for in the battle with the Nervii Caesar had fought the fight of his life.

GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

1. The stem ends in **-ā**; the nominative ends in **-a**.

rīpa, f., *bank* (of a river)

		SINGULAR
Nominative	rīpa	*a bank* (subject)
Genitive	rīpae	*of a bank, bank's*
Dative	rīpae	*to* or *for a bank*
Accusative	rīpam	*a bank* (object)
Vocative	rīpa	*O (thou) bank*
Ablative	rīpā	*by, from, in,* or *with a bank*

		PLURAL
Nominative	rīpae	*banks* (subject)
Genitive	rīpārum	*of banks*
Dative	rīpīs	*to* or *for banks*
Accusative	rīpās	*banks* (object)
Vocative	rīpae	*O (ye) banks*
Ablative	rīpīs	*by, from, in,* or *with banks*

a. The locative sing. ends in **-ae**; as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome:* the locative plu. in **-īs**; as, **Athēnīs**, *at Athens.*

b. Rule for Gender: All nouns of the first declension are *feminine* except those masculine by their meaning.

SECOND DECLENSION

2. The stem ends in **-o**; the nominative ends in **-us, -er, -ir, -um.**

	animus, m., *mind*	**puer**, m., *boy*	**ager**, m., *field*	**vir**, m., *man*	**rēgnum**, n., *royal power*
			SINGULAR		
N.	animus	puer	ager	vir	rēgnum
G.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	rēgnī

SINGULAR

D.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	rēgnō
Ac.	animum	puerum	agrum	virum	rēgnum
V.	anime	puer	ager	vir	rēgnum
Ab.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	rēgnō

PLURAL

N.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	rēgna
G.	animōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	rēgnōrum
D.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	rēgnīs
Ac.	animōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	rēgna
V.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	rēgna
Ab.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	rēgnīs

a. The locative sing. ends in -ī; as, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth:* the locative plu. in -īs; as, **Delphīs**, *at Delphi.*

b. Nouns in **-ius** may have the gen. sing. in -ī instead of -iī and the vocative ends in -ī instead of -ie. Nouns in **-ium** may have the gen. sing. in -ī. The accent remains as though the longer form were used; as, **imperī.**

c. Rule for Gender: Nouns in **-um** are *neuter;* others are *masculine.*

Exceptions: **Locus**, m., *place*, has its plu. **loca**, n., *places*. **Vulgus**, *crowd*, is generally neuter.

THIRD DECLENSION

3. The stem ends in a consonant or in -i. The nominative ending is -s or nothing.

I. *Consonant Stems*

	cōnsul, m., *consul*	**nōmen**, n., *name*	**genus**, n., *race*	**eques**, m., *horseman*	**caput**, n., *head*
			SINGULAR		
N.	cōnsul	nōmen	genus	eques	caput
G.	cōnsulis	nōminis	generis	equitis	capitis
D.	cōnsulī	nōminī	generī	equitī	capitī
Ac.	cōnsulem	nōmen	genus	equitem	caput
V.	cōnsul	nōmen	genus	eques	caput
Ab.	cōnsule	nōmine	genere	equite	capite

PLURAL

N.	cōnsulēs	nōmina	genera	equitēs	capita
G.	cōnsulum	nōminum	generum	equitum	capitum
D.	cōnsulibus	nōminibus	generibus	equitibus	capitibus
Ac.	cōnsulēs	nōmina	genera	equitēs	capita
V.	cōnsulēs	nōmina	genera	equitēs	capita
Ab.	cōnsulibus	nōminibus	generibus	equitibus	capitibus

II. -i *and Mixed Stems*

4. Here belong: 1. Nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs**, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

2. Most nouns ending in **-ns** or **-rs** (for **-nts**, **-rts**).

3. Monosyllabics ending in **-s** or **-x**, when these letters follow a consonant.

4. Neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**.

	hostis, m., f., *enemy*	**cliēns**, m., f., *dependent*	**urbs**, f., *city*	**vectīgal**, n., *tax*
		SINGULAR		
N.	hostis	cliēns	urbs	vectīgal
G.	hostis	clientis	urbis	vectīgālis
D.	hostī	clientī	urbī	vectīgālī
Ac.	hostem	clientem	urbem	vectīgal
V.	hostis	cliēns	urbs	vectīgal
Ab.	hoste	cliente	urbe	vectīgālī
		PLURAL		
N.	hostēs	clientēs	urbēs	vectīgālia
G.	hostium	clientium	urbium	vectīgālium
D.	hostibus	clientibus	urbibus	vectīgālibus
Ac.	hostēs or -īs	clientēs or -īs	urbēs or -īs	vectīgālia
V.	hostēs	clientēs	urbēs	vectīgālia
Ab.	hostibus	clientibus	urbibus	vectīgālibus

a. The locative sing. of third declension nouns ends in **-ī** or **-e**; as, **Carthāgine**, *at Carthage*: the locative plu. in **-ibus**; as, **Trallibus**, *at Tralles*.

III. *Irregular Nouns*

5. **vīs**, f., *force* — **senex**, m., *old man*

	vīs			senex	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	vīs	vīrēs		senex	senēs
G.	vīs	vīrium		senis	senum
D.	vī	vīribus		senī	senibus
Ac.	vim	vīrēs or -īs		senem	senēs
V.	vīs	vīrēs		senex	senēs
Ab.	vī	vīribus		sene	senibus

6. Rule for Gender: 1. Nouns in **-ō** (except **-dō**, **-gō**, **-iō**), **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, **-es** are *masculine*.

2. Nouns in **-dō**, **-gō**, **-iō**, **-ās**, **-ēs**, **-is**, **-ūs**, **-ys**, **-x**, and those in **-s** when following a consonant are *feminine*.

3. Nouns in **-a**, **-e**, **-ī**, **-y**, **-c**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, and **-us** are *neuter*.

FOURTH DECLENSION

7. The stem ends in **-u**; the nominative ends in **-us** or **-ū**.

	exercitus, m., *army*		cornū, n., *horn*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
V.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

a. The dative and ablative plu. of a few nouns end in **-ubus**.

8. **Domus** has some forms of the second declension, as below:

domus, f., *home*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	domus	domūs
G.	domūs	domuum or domōrum
D.	domuī or domō	domibus
Ac.	domum	domōs or domūs
V.	domus	domūs
Ab.	domō or domū	domibus
	Locative, domī	

a. Rule for Gender: Nouns ending in **-us** are *masculine*; those in **-ū**, *neuter*; but **domus, manus, Īdūs** are *feminine*.

FIFTH DECLENSION

9. The stem ends in **-ē**; the nominative ends in **-ēs**.

	diēs, m., *day*		**rēs**, f., *thing*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. **Rēs** and **diēs** are the only nouns of this declension that are fully declined in the plural. **Spēs** and **aciēs** have only the nom. and acc. plu.

b. Rule for Gender: Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine* except **diēs**, which is always masculine in the plural and generally so in the singular.

ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION

lātus, *wide*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	lātus	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
G.	lātī	lātae	lātī	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
D.	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs
Ac.	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
V.	lāte	lāta	lātum	lātī	lātae	lāta
Ab.	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

miser, *wretched*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
V.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

crēber, *frequent*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	crēber	crēbra	crēbrum	crēbrī	crēbrae	crēbra
G.	crēbrī	crēbrae	crēbrī	crēbrōrum	crēbrārum	crēbrōrum
D.	crēbrō	crēbrae	crēbrō	crēbrīs	crēbrīs	crēbrīs
Ac.	crēbrum	crēbram	crēbrum	crēbrōs	crēbrās	crēbra
V.	crēber	crēbra	crēbrum	crēbrī	crēbrae	crēbra
Ab.	crēbrō	crēbrā	crēbrō	crēbrīs	crēbrīs	crēbrīs

11. ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -īus

Nine first-and-second declension adjectives have **-īus** (usually **-ius in alter**) in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative, otherwise they are regular except that **alius** has **-ud** for **-um** in the neuter. These nine adjectives are: —

alius, *another* **ūllus**, *any* **uter**, *which* (of two) **sōlus**, *only*
alter, *the other* (of two) **nūllus**, *no* **neuter**, *neither* **tōtus**, *whole*
ūnus, *one*

ūllus, *any*

	SINGULAR		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ūllus	ūlla	ūllum
G.	ūllīus	ūllīus	ūllīus
D.	ūllī	ūllī	ūllī
Ac.	ūllum	ūllam	ūllum
Ab.	ūllō	ūllā	ūllō

alius, *another*

	SINGULAR		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	alius	alia	aliud
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō

The plural is like that of **lātus**.

12. THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes as regards the number of different terminations in the nominative singular. Adjectives in the comparative degree and the word **vetus** have consonant stems, others have **-i** stems.

I. *Consonant Stems*

a. One Termination.

vetus, *old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
V.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

b. Two Terminations.

fortior, *braver*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Ac.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
V.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Ab.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

1. Like **fortior** are declined all comparatives; but **plūs**, *more*, is irregular and defective.

plūs, *more*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	——	plūs	plūrēs or -īs	plūra
Ab.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Complūrēs is declined like the plural of **plūs** except that it may have either **complūra** or **complūria** in the neuter.

II. -i *Stems*

13. *a.* One Termination.

potēns, *powerful*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
G.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
D.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	potentem	potēns	potentēs or -īs	potentia
V.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Ab.	potente or -ī	potente or -ī	potentibus	potentibus

1. Like **potēns** are declined all present participles and most adjectives of one termination.

b. Two Terminations.

nōbilis, *well-known*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	nōbilis	nōbile	nōbilēs	nōbilia
G.	nōbilis	nōbilis	nōbilium	nōbilium
D.	nōbilī	nōbilī	nōbilibus	nōbilibus
Ac.	nōbilem	nōbile	nōbilēs or -īs	nōbilia
V.	nōbilis	nōbile	nōbilēs	nōbilia
Ab.	nōbilī	nōbilī	nōbilibus	nōbilibus

1. Like **nōbilis** are declined all adjectives in **-is, -e.**

c. Three Terminations.

celer, *swift*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
G.	celeris	celeris	celeris	celerium	celerium	celerium
D.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
Ac.	celerem	celerem	celere	celerēs or -īs	celerēs or -īs	celeria
V.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
Ab.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

ācer, *sharp*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs or -īs	ācrēs or -īs	ācria
V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

1. Like **ācer** are declined **equester**, *equestrian*, **pedester**, *pedestrian*, and names of months in **-ber**.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

14. *a.* Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the base (the genitive singular minus the ending) **-ior** for the comparative and **-issimus** for the superlative; as, **nōbilis, nōbilior, nōbilissimus.**

b. Adjectives in **-er** form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding **-rimus** to the masculine nominative of the positive; as, **ācer, ācrior, ācerrimus.**

c. Six adjectives in **-lis** form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding **-limus** to the base; as, **facilis, facilior, facillimus.** The six adjectives are: **facilis**, *easy*; **similis**, *like*; **humilis**, *low*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*.

Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly.

15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

bonus,	**melior,**	**optimus**, *good, better, best.*
malus,	**peior,**	**pessimus**, *bad, worse, worst.*
magnus,	**maior,**	**maximus**, *great, greater, greatest.*
parvus,	**minor,**	**minimus**, *small, less, least.*
multus,	**plūs,**	**plūrimus**, *much, more, most.*

16. Of the following the positive forms are rare:

(exterus),	**exterior,**	**extrēmus** (or **extimus**), *outer, outmost.*
(īnferus),	**īnferior,**	**īnfimus** (or **īmus**), *lower, lowest.*
(posterus),	**posterior,**	**postrēmus** (or **postumus**), *latter, last.*
(superus),	**superior,**	**suprēmus** (or **summus**), *higher, highest.*

17. Of the following the positive is lacking:

citerior,	**citimus,** *hither, hithermost.*
interior,	**intimus,** *inner, inmost.*
prior,	**prīmus,** *former, first.*
propior,	**proximus,** *nearer, next.*
ulterior,	**ultimus,** *farther, farthest.*

18. COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

Adjectives ending in **-us** following a vowel (and some others) form their comparatives by the use of **magis,** *more,* and their superlatives by the use of **maximē,** *most;* as, **frūmentārius, magis frūmentārius, maximē frūmentārius.**

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

19. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives as follows: —

1. *Positive. a.* Most adjectives of the first-and-second declension form a corresponding adverb by adding **-ē** to their bases, e.g.,

adjective, lātus; *adverb,* lātē.

b. Most adjectives of the third declension having two or three endings in the nominative singular form a corresponding adverb by adding **-iter** to their bases, e.g.,

adjective, fortis, **-e**; *adverb,* fortiter.

c. Most adjectives of the third declension having one ending in the nominative singular form a corresponding adverb by adding **-ter** to their bases; a final **t** of the base is dropped, e.g.,

adjective, potēns, potentis; *adverb,* potenter.

2. *Comparative.* The comparative of an adverb is always the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding adjective, e.g.,

adjective, lātior; *adverb,* lātius.

3. *Superlative.* The superlative of an adverb is always the base of the superlative of the adjective + ē, e.g.,

adjective, lātissimus; *adverb,* lātissimē.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

20.	**bene,**	**melius,**	**optimē,** *well, better, best.*
	male,	**peius,**	**pessimē,** *ill, worse, worst.*
	diū,	**diūtius,**	**diūtissimē,** *long* (of time), *longer, longest.*
	facile,	**facilius,**	**facillimē,** *easily, more easily, most easily.*
	(magnopere),	**magis,**	**maximē,** *greatly, more, most.*
	multum,	**plūs,**	**plūrimum,** *much, more, most.*
	nūper,	——	**nūperrimē,** *recently, most recently.*
	parum,	**minus,**	**minimē,** *too little, less, least.*
	prope,	**propius,**	**proximē,** *near, nearer, next.*
	saepe,	**saepius,**	**saepissimē,** *often, more often, most often.*

NUMERALS

21. *Cardinals:*—

I.	ūnus, -a, -um	XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā
II.	duo, -ae, -o	XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā
III.	trēs, tria	XXX.	trīgintā
IV.	quattuor	XL.	quadrāgintā
V.	quīnque	L.	quīnquāgintā
VI.	sex	LX.	sexāgintā
VII.	septem	LXX.	septuāgintā
VIII.	octō	LXXX.	octōgintā
IX.	novem	XC.	nōnāgintā
X.	decem	C.	centum
XI.	ūndecim	CI.	centum (et) ūnus
XII.	duodecim	CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a
XIII.	tredecim	CCC.	trecentī
XIV.	quattuordecim	CCCC.	quadringentī
XV.	quīndecim	D.	quīngentī
XVI.	sēdecim	DC.	sescentī
XVII.	septendecim	DCC.	septingentī
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	DCCC.	octingentī
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	DCCCC.	nōngentī
XX.	vīgintī	M.	mīlle
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	MM.	duo mīlia

a. Numbers made up of two or more orders are expressed as follows:

1. When *tens* and *units* are combined, either the units and **et** precede

the tens, as, **ūnus et vīgintī**, *one and twenty*; or the tens precede the units without **et**, as, **vīgintī ūnus**, *twenty-one*.

2. In other combinations of two numbers, the larger precedes the smaller, with or without **et**, as, **centum (et) decem**, *one hundred and ten*.

3. In combinations of three or more numbers, the order is the same as in English, without **et**, as, **tria mīlia ducentī trīgintā quattuor**, *three thousand two hundred and thirty-four*.

DECLENSION OF **duo** AND **trēs**

22.

	duo, *two*			**trēs**, *three*	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. For declension of **ūnus**, see § 11. The cardinals **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī** are declined like the plural of **lātus** (§ 10); **mīlle** is an indeclinable adjective in the singular, while in the plural it is a neuter noun declined like the neuter of **trēs**, and is generally spelled with one **l**.

23. *Ordinals:* meaning *first*, *second*, etc.

prīmus, -a, -um	octāvus	quīntus decimus
secundus *or* alter	nōnus	sextus decimus
tertius	decimus	septimus decimus
quārtus	ūndecimus	duodēvīcēsimus
quīntus	duodecimus	ūndēvīcēsimus
sextus	tertius decimus	vīcēsimus
septimus	quārtus decimus	vīcēsimus prīmus

24. *Distributives:* meaning *one each*, *two each*, etc.

singulī, -ae, -a	quaternī	septēnī
bīnī	quīnī	octōnī
ternī *or* trīnī	sēnī	novēnī
		dēnī

25. *Adverbs*. —

1. semel, *once*
2. bis, *twice*
3. ter, *three times*
4. quater, *four times*
5. quīnquiēns, *five times*
6. sexiēns, *six times*

PRONOUNS

26. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR		
	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers. (Reflex.)
N.	ego	tū	——
G.	meī	tuī	suī
D.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
V.	——	tū	——
Ab.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
	PLURAL		
N.	nōs	vōs	——
G.	nostrum nostrī	vestrum vestrī	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
V.	——	vōs	——
Ab.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

a. The pronoun of the third person is lacking; for it is used **is, ea, id** (or another demonstrative); or, when reflexive, **suī**.

b. The preposition **cum** with personal pronouns is used as an enclitic, as, **vōbīscum**, *with you*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

1st pers. **meus, -a, -um**, *my*	**noster, -tra, -trum**, *our*
2d pers. **tuus, -a, -um**, *your* (of one)	**vester, -tra, -trum**, *your* (of more than one)
3d pers. **suus, -a, -um**, *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)	**suus, -a, -um**, *their* (when referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

27. **hīc**, *this*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

28. **is, *this, that; he, she, it***

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

29. **īdem, *the same***

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem iīdem, īdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

30. **ille, *that***

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

31. **THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN**

ipse, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

32. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

33. *a.* THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, *who?*

SINGULAR

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	quis	quid
G.	cuius	cuius
D.	cui	cui
Ac.	quem	quid
Ab.	quō	quō

The plural forms are like those of the relative pronoun.

b. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

The interrogative adjective, **quī** (*what?*), is declined like the relative pronoun.

34. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

aliquis, *some one, any one*

SINGULAR

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	aliquis, aliquī (*adj.*)	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod (*adj.*)
G.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod (*adj.*)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

35. **quīdam,** *a certain*

SINGULAR

N.	quīdam, *a certain one*	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam (*adj.*)
G.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam (*adj.*)
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. **quisque** and **quisquam** use the same case endings as does **aliquis.**

VERBS

36. All regular verbs have three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *supine.* Upon these three stems are based all the forms of the verb, as follows:

1. On the present stem: —

Active and *passive*:
- present, imperfect, and future indicative
- present and imperfect subjunctive
- both tenses of the imperative
- present infinitive

Active: present participle, gerund

Passive: gerundive

2. On the perfect stem: —

Active:
- perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative
- perfect and pluperfect subjunctive
- perfect infinitive

3. On the supine stem: —

Active and *passive*: future infinitive

Active
- future participle
- supine

Passive
- perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative
- perfect and pluperfect subjunctive
- perfect infinitive
- perfect participle

37. FIRST CONJUGATION

spectō, *look at*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **spectō** **spectāre** **spectāvī** **spectātum**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		
spectō	spectem	spector	specter
spectās	spectēs	spectāris, -re	spectēris, -re
spectat	spectet	spectātur	spectētur
spectāmus	spectēmus	spectāmur	spectēmur
spectātis	spectētis	spectāminī	spectēminī
spectant	spectent	spectantur	spectentur
	Imperfect		
spectābam	spectārem	spectābar	spectārer
spectābās	spectārēs	spectābāris, -re	spectārēris, -re
spectābat	spectāret	spectābātur	spectārētur
spectābāmus	spectārēmus	spectābāmur	spectārēmur
spectābātis	spectārētis	spectābāminī	spectārēminī
spectābant	spectārent	spectābantur	spectārentur
	Future		
spectābō		spectābor	
spectābis		spectāberis, -re	
spectābit		spectābitur	
spectābimus		spectābimur	
spectābitis		spectābiminī	
spectābunt		spectābuntur	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Perfect		
spectāvī	spectāverim	spectātus sum	spectātus sim
spectāvistī	spectāveris	spectātus es	spectātus sīs
spectāvit	spectāverit	spectātus est	spectātus sit
spectāvimus	spectāverīmus	spectātī sumus	spectātī sīmus
spectāvistis	spectāverītis	spectātī estis	spectātī sītis
spectāvērunt, -ēre	spectāverint	spectātī sunt	spectātī sint
	Pluperfect		
spectāveram	spectāvissem	spectātus eram	spectātus essem
spectāverās	spectāvissēs	spectātus erās	spectātus essēs
spectāverat	spectāvisset	spectātus erat	spectātus esset
spectāverāmus	spectāvissēmus	spectātī erāmus	spectātī essēmus
spectāverātis	spectāvissētis	spectātī erātis	spectātī essētis
spectāverant	spectāvissent	spectātī erant	spectātī essent
	Future Perfect		
spectāverō		spectātus erō	
spectāveris		spectātus eris	
spectāverit		spectātus erit	
spectāverimus		spectātī erimus	
spectāveritis		spectātī eritis	
spectāverint		spectātī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	spectā	spectāte	spectāre	spectāminī
Fut.	spectātō	spectātōte	spectātor	
	spectātō	spectantō	spectātor	spectantor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	spectāre	spectārī
Perf.	spectāvisse	spectātus esse
Fut.	spectātūrus esse	spectātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	spectāns	*Perf.*	spectātus
Fut.	spectātūrus	*Fut.*	spectandus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	spectandī		spectandus, -a, -um
Dat.	spectandō	SUPINE	
Acc.	spectandum	*Acc.*	spectātum
Abl.	spectandō	*Abl.*	spectātū

38. SECOND CONJUGATION

moneō, *warn*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō** **monēre** **monuī** **monitum**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		
moneō	moneam	moneor	monear
monēs	moneās	monēris, -re	moneāris, -re
monet	moneat	monētur	moneātur
monēmus	moneāmus	monēmur	moneāmur
monētis	moneātis	monēminī	moneāminī
monent	moneant	monentur	moneantur
	Imperfect		
monēbam	monērem	monēbar	monērer
monēbās	monērēs	monēbāris, -re	monērēris, -re
monēbat	monēret	monēbātur	monērētur
monēbāmus	monērēmus	monēbāmur	monērēmur
monēbātis	monērētis	monēbāminī	monērēminī
monēbant	monērent	monēbantur	monērentur
	Future		
monēbō		monēbor	
monēbis		monēberis, -re	
monēbit		monēbitur	
monēbimus		monēbimur	
monēbitis		monēbiminī	
monēbunt		monēbuntur	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Perfect		
monuī	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuistī	monuerīs	monitus es	monitus sīs
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerīmus	monitī sumus	monitī sīmus
monuistis	monuerītis	monitī estis	monitī sītis
monuērunt, -ēre	monuerint	monitī sunt	monitī sint
	Pluperfect		
monueram	monuissem	monitus eram	monitus essem
monuerās	monuissēs	monitus erās	monitus essēs
monuerat	monuisset	monitus erat	monitus esset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	monitī erāmus	monitī essēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis	monitī erātis	monitī essētis
monuerant	monuissent	monitī erant	monitī essent
	Future Perfect		
monuerō		monitus erō	
monueris		monitus eris	
monuerit		monitus erit	
monuerimus		monitī erimus	
monueritis		monitī eritis	
monuerint		monitī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	monē	monēte	monēre	monēmini
Fut.	monētō	monētōte	monētor	
	monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	monēre	monērī
Perf.	monuisse	monitus esse
Fut.	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	monēns	*Perf.*	monitus
Fut.	monitūrus	*Fut.*	monendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	monendī	monendus, -a, -um
Dat.	monendō	SUPINE
Acc.	monendum	*Acc.* monitum
Abl.	monendō	*Abl.* monitū

39. THIRD CONJUGATION

regō, *rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō** **regere** **rēxī** **rēctum**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		Present	
regō	regam	regor	regar
regis	regās	regeris, -re	regāris, -re
regit	regat	regitur	regātur
regimus	regāmus	regimur	regāmur
regitis	regātis	regiminī	regāminī
regunt	regant	reguntur	regantur
		Imperfect	
regēbam	regerem	regēbar	regerer
regēbās	regerēs	regēbāris, -re	regerēris, -re
regēbat	regeret	regēbātur	regerētur
regēbāmus	regerēmus	regēbāmur	regerēmur
regēbātis	regerētis	regēbāminī	regerēminī
regēbant	regerent	regēbantur	regerentur
		Future	
regam		regar	
regēs		regēris, -re	
reget		regētur	
regēmus		regēmur	
regētis		regēminī	
regent		regentur	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		Perfect	
rēxī	rēxerim	rēctus sum	rēctus sim
rēxistī	rēxeris	rēctus es	rēctus sīs
rēxit	rēxerit	rēctus est	rēctus sit
rēximus	rēxerīmus	rēctī sumus	rēctī sīmus
rēxistis	rēxerītis	rēctī estis	rēctī sītis
rēxērunt, -ēre	rēxerint	rēctī sunt	rēctī sint
		Pluperfect	
rēxeram	rēxissem	rēctus eram	rēctus essem
rēxerās	rēxissēs	rēctus erās	rēctus essēs
rēxerat	rēxisset	rēctus erat	rēctus esset
rēxerāmus	rēxissēmus	rēctī erāmus	rēctī essēmus
rēxerātis	rēxissētis	rēctī erātis	rēctī essētis
rēxerant	rēxissent	rēctī erant	rēctī essent
		Future Perfect	
rēxerō		rēctus erō	
rēxeris		rēctus eris	
rēxerit		rēctus erit	
rēxerimus		rēctī erimus	
rēxeritis		rēctī eritis	
rēxerint		rēctī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	rege	regite	regere	regiminī
Fut.	regitō	regitōte	regitor	
	regitō	reguntō	regitor	reguntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	regere	regī
Perf.	rēxisse	rēctus esse
Fut.	rēctūrus esse	rēctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	regēns	*Perf.*	rēctus
Fut.	rēctūrus	*Fut.*	regendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	regendī	regendus, -a, -um
Dat.	regendō	SUPINE
Acc.	regendum	*Acc.* rēctum
Abl.	regendō	*Abl.* rēctū

40. THIRD CONJUGATION, IN -iō

capiō, *take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō** **capere** **cēpī** **captum**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		Present	
capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capiās	caperis, -re	capiāris, -re
capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
		Imperfect	
capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
capiēbās	caperēs	capiēbāris, -re	caperēris, -re
capiēbat	caperet	capiēbātur	caperētur
capiēbāmus	caperēmus	capiēbāmur	caperēmur
capiēbātis	caperētis	capiēbāminī	caperēminī
capiēbant	caperent	capiēbantur	caperentur
		Future	
capiam		capiar	
capiēs		capiēris, -re	
capiet		capiētur	
capiēmus		capiēmur	
capiētis		capiēminī	
capient		capientur	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		Perfect	
cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
cēpistī	cēperīs	captus es	captus sīs
cēpit	cēperit	captus est	captus sit
cēpimus	cēperīmus	captī sumus	captī sīmus
cēpistis	cēperītis	captī estis	captī sītis
cēpērunt, -ēre	cēperint	captī sunt	captī sint
		Pluperfect	
cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
cēperās	cēpissēs	captus erās	captus essēs
cēperat	cēpisset	captus erat	captus esset
cēperāmus	cēpissēmus	captī erāmus	captī essēmus
cēperātis	cēpissētis	captī erātis	captī essētis
cēperant	cēpissent	captī erant	captī essent
		Future Perfect	
cēperō		captus erō	
cēperis		captus eris	
cēperit		captus erit	
cēperimus		captī erimus	
cēperitis		captī eritis	
cēperint		captī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
Fut.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	capiēns	*Perf.*	captus
Fut.	captūrus	*Fut.*	capiendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	capiendī		capiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	capiendō	SUPINE	
Acc.	capiendum	*Acc.*	captum
Abl.	capiendō	*Abl.*	captū

41. FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, *hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō** **audīre** **audīvī** **audītum**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		Present	
audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
audīs	audiās	audīris, -re	audiāris, -re
audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
audītis	audiātis	audīminī	audiāminī
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
		Imperfect	
audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris, -re	audirēris, -re
audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audirētur
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbātis	audirētis	audiēbāminī	audīrēminī
audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
		Future	
audiam		audiar	
audiēs		audiēris, -re	
audiet		audiētur	
audiēmus		audiēmur	
audiētis		audiēminī	
audient		audientur	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		Perfect	
audīvī	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audīvistī	audīveris	audītus es	audītus sīs
audīvit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audīvimus	audīverīmus	audītī sumus	audītī sīmus
audīvistis	audīverītis	audītī estis	audītī sītis
audīvērunt, -ēre	audīverint	audītī sunt	audītī sint
		Pluperfect	
audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audīverās	audīvissēs	audītus erās	audītus essēs
audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audīverāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
audīverātis	audīvissētis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
audīverant	audīvissent	audītī erant	audītī essent
		Future Perfect	
audīverō		audītus erō	
audīveris		audītus eris	
audīverit		audītus erit	
audīverimus		audītī erimus	
audīveritis		audītī eritis	
audīverint		audītī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	audī	audīte	audīre	audīmini
Fut.	audītō	audītōte	audītor	
	audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	audīre	audīrī
Perf.	audīvisse	audītus esse
Fut.	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	audiēns	*Perf.*	audītus
Fut.	audītūrus	*Fut.*	audiendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	audiendī		audiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	audiendō	SUPINE	
Acc.	audiendum	*Acc.*	audītum
Abl.	audiendō	*Abl.*	audītū

42. *A.* DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent Verbs are those which are passive in form but active in meaning. But deponents (1) have some active forms, namely, future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund and supine; and (2) always have a passive meaning in the future passive participle and sometimes in the perfect participle.

CONJUGATION OF DEPONENTS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Conj. I	cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum,	*try*
II	vereor, verērī, veritus sum,	*fear*
III	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,	*follow*
IV	potior, potīrī, potītus sum,	*get possession of*

INDICATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
	cōnāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
	cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
Imperf.	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
Fut.	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
Perf.	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
Pluperf.	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
Fut. Perf.	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	cōner	verear	sequar	potiar
Imperf.	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perf.	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Pluperf.	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	cōnāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
Fut.	cōnātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
Perf.	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
Fut.	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
Fut.	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
Perf.	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
Fut. Pass.	cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

GERUNDIVE

cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

SUPINE

Acc.	cōnātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum
Abl.	cōnātū	veritū	secūtū	potītū

B. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

A few verbs are deponent only in those forms that are based on the perfect stem.

They are: —

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*

43. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

1. The First Periphrastic Conjugation is formed from the future active participle and the verb **sum**; as, **spectātūrus sum,** *I am going to look at.*

2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation is formed from the future passive participle and the verb **sum**; as, **spectandus sum**, *I am to be looked at, must be looked at.*

	First Periphrastic	Second Periphrastic
	INDICATIVE	INDICATIVE
Pres.	spectātūrus sum	spectandus sum
Imperf.	spectātūrus eram	spectandus eram
Fut.	spectātūrus erō	spectandus erō
Perf.	spectātūrus fuī	spectandus fuī
Pluperf.	spectātūrus fueram	spectandus fueram
Fut. Perf.	spectātūrus fuerō	spectandus fuerō
	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	spectātūrus sim	spectandus sim
Imperf.	spectātūrus essem	spectandus essem
Perf.	spectātūrus fuerim	spectandus fuerim
Pluperf.	spectātūrus fuissem	spectandus fuissem
	INFINITIVE	INFINITIVE
Pres.	spectātūrus esse	spectandus esse
Perf.	spectātūrus fuisse	spectandus fuisse

44. IRREGULAR VERBS

Conjugation of **sum, possum, eō, fīō**

Principal Parts

sum, esse, fuī, *be*
possum, posse, potuī, *be able*
eō, īre, iī, itum, *go*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, happen* (pass. of **faciō**).

a. **possum** is a compound of **pot-** and **sum**. **fīō** is the passive of **faciō**. Note that i is long before all vowels except **e** in **-er-**.

			INDICATIVE		
Pres.	sum	possum	eō	fīō
	es	potes	īs	fīs
	est	potest	it	fit
	sumus	possumus	īmus	[fīmus]
	estis	potestis	ītis	[fītis]
	sunt	possunt	eunt	fīunt

INDICATIVE

Imperf.	eram	poteram	ībam	fīēbam
Fut.	erō	poterō	ībō	fīam
Perf.	fuī	potuī	iī (īvī)	factus sum
Pluperf.	fueram	potueram	ieram	factus eram
Fut. Perf.	fuerō	potuerō	ierō	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	sim	possim	eam	fīam
Imperf.	essem	possem	īrem	fierem
Perf.	fuerim	potuerim	ierim	factus sim
Pluperf.	fuissem	potuissem	iissem (īssem)	factus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	es		ī	fī
Fut.	estō		ītō	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	esse	posse	īre	fierī
Perf.	fuisse	potuisse	iisse (īsse)	factus esse
Fut	futūrus esse		itūrus esse	factum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres. Act.		potēns	iēns (*Gen.* euntis)	
Fut. Act.	futūrus		itūrus	
Perf. Pass.				factus
Fut. Pass.				faciendus

GERUND

Gen.			eundī	

GERUNDIVE

			eundum	faciendus, -a, -um

SUPINE

Acc.			itum	
Abl.			itū	

45. Conjugation of volō, nōlō, mālō

Principal Parts
- **volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing*
- **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** *be unwilling*
- **mālō, mālle, māluī,** *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imperf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Pluperf.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imperf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Pluperf.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

46. Conjugation of ferō, *bear*

Principal Parts: **ferō** **ferre** **tulī** **lātum**

	Active		Passive	
	Indicative	Subjunctive	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris, -re	ferāris, -re
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Imperf.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
Pluperf.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō		lātus erō	

Imperative

Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Infinitive

Pres.	ferre	ferrī	
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse	
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī	

Participle

Pres.	ferēns	*Perf.*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	*Fut.*	ferendus

Gerund	Gerundive
Gen. ferendī	ferendus

Supine

Acc. lātum
Abl. lātū

47. Defective Verbs

Conjugation of **meminī, ōdī, coepī**

Principal Parts:
meminī, meminisse, ——, *I remember*
ōdī, ōdisse, ——, *I hate*
coepī, coepisse, ——, *I have begun*

a. Note that **meminī** and **ōdī** are present in meaning. Their pluperfects and future perfects are imperfect and future in meaning.

b. For the present, imperfect, and future meanings of **coepī**, forms of **incipiō** are used.

c. With a passive infinitive, **coeptus sum** is used in place of **coepī**.

		INDICATIVE	
Perf.	meminī	ōdī	coepī
Pluperf.	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
Fut. Perf.	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō
		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Perf.	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
Pluperf.	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem
		IMPERATIVE	
Sing.	mementō		
Plur.	mementōte		
		INFINITIVE	
Perf.	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
Fut.		ōsūrus esse	coeptūrus esse
		PARTICIPLE	
Perf.		ōsus	coeptus
Fut.		ōsūrus	coeptūrus

48. IMPERSONAL VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **oportet, oportēre, oportuit,** *it is right, it is proper*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INFINITIVE
Pres.	oportet	oporteat	oportēre
Imperf.	oportēbat	oportēret	
Fut.	oportēbit		
Perf.	oportuit	oportuerit	oportuisse
Pluperf.	oportuerat	oportuisset	
Fut. Perf.	oportuerit		

SYNTAX

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

49. RULE. An appositive or a predicate noun agrees in case with the word it modifies; as, **persuādet Casticō Sēquanō**, *he persuades Casticus the Sequanian* (I, 52); **quī Celtae appellantur**, *who are called Celts* (I, 2).

CASES

NOMINATIVE

Nominative as Subject

50. RULE. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case; as, **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs**, *Gaul as a whole is divided in three parts* (I, 1).

GENITIVE

Genitive with Nouns

51. GENERAL RULE. A noun modifying another noun and not meaning the same thing may be put in the genitive case.

Possessive Genitive

52. RULE. The genitive may be used to denote that to which something belongs; as, **fīnibus Belgārum**, *by the territory of the Belgians* (I, 17); **huius potentiae causā**, *for the sake of this power* (I, 332).

a. This genitive may be used predicatively; as, **iūdicium est imperātōris**, *the decision is the general's* (I, 849).

Subjective Genitive

53. RULE. The subjective genitive denotes the person or thing that does something or has a feeling; as, **occāsus sōlis**, *the setting of the sun* (I, 24).

Objective Genitive

54. RULE. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling; as, **rēgnī cupiditās**, *the desire (of) for royal power* (I, 27).

Genitive of the Whole

55. RULE. The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is mentioned. This genitive may depend on any noun, pronoun, adjective, or adverb which suggests part of the whole; as, **hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae,** *the Belgians are the bravest of all these* (I, 6); **eōrum ūna pars,** *one part of these* (I, 15); **satis causae,** *sufficient (of) reason* (I, 354).

a. Instead of this genitive, **dē** or **ex** with the ablative is generally used with cardinal numerals and with **quīdam,** and may be used with **paucī** and with superlative adjectives; as, **ūnus ē fīliīs captus est,** *one of his sons was captured* (I, 492); **paucī dē nostrīs,** *a few of our men* (I, 272); **proximī ex Belgīs,** *the nearest of the Belgians* (II, 30).

Genitive of Material

56. RULE. The genitive may express the material of which a thing consists; as, **multitūdinem hominum,** *a large number of men* (I, 76).

Descriptive Genitive

57. RULE. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing; as, **trium mēnsium molita cibāria,** *meal for three months* (I, 87); **hominēs magnae virtūtis,** *men of great bravery* (II, 260).

a. When the adjective of this construction is a numeral, the genitive is called a genitive of measure.

b. This genitive may be used predicatively; as, **flūminis erat altitūdō pedum trium,** *the river's depth was three feet* (II, 307).

c. With **sum** and verbs of *rating,* indefinite value is expressed by the genitive; as, **tantī eius grātiam esse ostendit,** *he showed that his good will was of such (value)* (I, 384).

Genitive with Adjectives

58. RULE. The genitive may be used with some adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, skill, fullness* and their opposites; as, **bellandī cupidus,** *fond of warring* (I, 38).

Genitive with Verbs

59. RULE. The genitive may be used with verbs of *remembering, forgetting,* and *reminding;* as, **reminiscerētur veteris incommodī,** *he should bear in mind the old disaster* (I, 231).

60. RULE. The impersonal verb **interest** governs a genitive case; as, **reī pūblicae interest**, *it concerns the state* (II, 81).

61. RULE. The impersonal verbs **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet** and **taedet** take the accusative of the person affected and the genitive of the cause of the feeling; as, **quōrum eōs paenitet**, *of which* (*it repents them*) *they repent* (IV, 5, 3).

62. RULE. The genitive may be used with **potior** (but see § 86); as, **tōtius Galliae potīrī**, *to obtain control of all Gaul* (I, 30).

DATIVE

Dative of Indirect Object

63. RULE. The indirect object denotes the person or thing that is indirectly affected by the action of the verb.

a. Many transitive verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object; as, **eī fīliam dat**, *he gives him his daughter* (I, 59).

Dative with Special Verbs

64. Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin and therefore must take an indirect object instead of a direct object, as shown by the following: —

RULE. The dative is used with many verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, *command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *serve* or *resist*, *trust* or *distrust*; also *believe*, *envy*, *favor*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *spare*, *threaten* and the like; as, **cīvitātī persuāsit**, *he persuaded the state* (I, 28).

a. The above verbs, when used passively, must be impersonal; as, **mihi persuādētur**, (*it is persuaded to me*) *I am persuaded* (I, 792).

b. The dative is also used with phrases that have a meaning equivalent to the above; as, **nōn erunt dictō audientēs mīlitēs**, *the soldiers will not* (*be listening to*) *heed the command* (I, 784).

c. Some of the (generally intransitive) verbs may take a direct object along with the indirect; as, **id iīs persuāsit**, *he persuaded* (*this to them*) *them of this* (I, 30).

d. Note that **dēlectō**, *delight*, **iubeō**, *command*, **iuvō**, *please*, **vetō**, *forbid*, are transitive and therefore are exceptions to the rule; as, **eōs frūmentō iuvant**, *they help them with grain* (I, 499).

Dative with Compound Verbs

65. Some verbs when compounded with certain prepositions take on a meaning which requires a dative. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both a dative and an accusative.

RULE. The dative of the indirect object is used with some verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes with **circum**; as, **omnibus praestant,** *they surpass all* (I, 29); **fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possunt,** *they are able to make war on the neighbors* (I, 37).

a. But note that **aggredior, conveniō, incendō, interclūdō, interficiō, oppugnō** and many others do not govern the dative; as, **quī cum eum convēnissent,** *and when they had met him* (I, 503).

Dative of Reference

66. RULE. The dative may denote the person with reference to whom a statement is true; as, **molita cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent,** *they order each one to carry meal for himself* (I, 87).

a. This dative is sometimes equivalent in meaning to a possessive genitive; as, **sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt,** *they threw themselves at Caesar's feet* (I, 565).

b. This dative, when used with verbs of *taking away*, is best translated with *from* and may be called a *dative of separation*; as, **Aeduīs lībertātem ēripient,** *they will take away liberty from the Aeduans* (I, 310).

Dative of Agent

67. RULE. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the person who has the thing to do; as, **nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi statuit,** *he decided that (it must not be waited by him) he must not wait* (I, 195).

Dative of Possessor

68. RULE. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject; as, **dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse,** *they prove that (nothing is to them) they have nothing* (I, 193).

a. This construction emphasizes the thing possessed, while the genitive of possession (§ 52) emphasizes the person possessing.

Dative of Purpose (or Service)

69. RULE. The dative may be used to express the purpose for which an action is done or which a thing serves; as, **locum domiciliō dēligunt,** *they choose a place for an abode* (I, 553).

a. This dative is often used with a dative of reference (§ 66) denoting the person affected; as, **quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant,** *whom the Aeduans had sent as an aid to Caesar* (I, 346).

b. This dative, when used with forms of **sum,** is best translated as a predicate noun or with the word *as;* as, **Gallīs impedīmentō erat,** *it was a hindrance to the Gauls* (I, 454).

Dative with Adjectives

70. RULE. The dative may be used with adjectives meaning *near;* also *fit, friendly, pleasing, similar,* and the like, with their opposites; as, **proximī sunt Germānīs,** *they are nearest to the Germans* (I, 10).

a. **Propior** and **proximus,** and the adverbs **propius** and **proximē,** may govern the accusative like prepositions; as, **proximī Rhēnum,** *nearest the Rhine* (I, 1112).

ACCUSATIVE

Accusative of Direct Object

71. RULE. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative case; as, **quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae,** *of which the Belgians inhabit one* (I, 1).

Cognate Accusative

72. RULE. Some verbs may take an accusative of a noun or pronoun of related meaning; as, **cum trīduī viam prōcessisset,** *when he had advanced a three days' march* (I, 728).

Two Accusatives with Verbs

73. *a.* Two Accusatives with Compound Verbs.

RULE. 1. Some intransitive verbs, when compounded with **circum** and **trāns,** become transitive and take an accusative of the direct object; as, **ea pars nōndum flūmen trānsierat,** *this section had not yet crossed the river* (I, 205).

RULE. 2. Some transitive verbs, when so compounded, may take two accusatives, one the object of the verb and one the object of the

preposition; as, **trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxērunt,** *they have led three fourths of the forces across this river* (I, 202).

b. Two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing.

RULE. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, and *teaching* may take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing; as, **Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre,** *he kept demanding grain of the Aeduans* (I, 282).

1. Verbs of *asking* and *demanding* frequently express the person by the ablative with a preposition (so always **petō** and **quaerō**); as, **quaerit ex sōlō ea,** *he asks these questions from him alone* (I, 320).

c. Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.

RULE. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *regarding*, *showing*, and the like may take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing; as, **eum vergobretum appellant Aeduī,** *the Aeduans call this man "vergobret"* (I, 295).

1. In the passive, the direct object becomes the subject and the predicate accusative becomes a predicate nominative; as, **is vergobretus appellātur ab Aeduīs,** *this man is called "vergobret" by the Aeduans.*

Accusative of Extent

74. RULE. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition; as, **rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat,** *he had held the royal power many years* (I, 53).

1. Adverbs are sometimes used to denote extent in amount; as, **plūrimum possunt,** *they are the most powerful* (I, 62); **minimum potest,** *he has very little power* (I, 374).

Accusative of Limit of Motion or Place to Which

75. RULE. Limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with **ad, in,** or **sub**; as, **ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam coēgit,** *he brought to the trial all his retinue* (I, 71).

1. But names of towns and the word **domus** omit the preposition; as, **Rōmam vēnit,** *he came to Rome* (I, 591).

a. **Ad** is sometimes used with names of towns with the meaning of *towards* or *near*; as, **ad Genavam pervenit,** *he arrives near Geneva* (I, 114).

Subject Accusative

76. RULE. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative case; as, **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,** *which it has been said the Gauls occupy* (I, 15).

VOCATIVE

Nominative of Address

77. RULE. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative case; as, **dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs,** *jump down, comrades* (IV, 25, 6).

ABLATIVE

Ablative of Place from Which

78. RULE. Place from which is expressed by the ablative, usually with **ab, dē,** or **ex**; as, **ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent,** *that they go out from their territory* (I, 28).

1. But names of towns and the word **domus** omit the preposition; as, **domō exīre possunt,** *they are able to go out from home* (I, 94).

a. **Ab** is sometimes used with names of towns with the meaning of *from near, from the vicinity of*; as, **ab Ocelō pervenit,** *he comes from near Ocelum* (I, 175).

Ablative of Separation

79. RULE. Separation may be expressed by the ablative with or without **ab, dē,** or **ex**.

a. This construction is used with both verbs and adjectives of *depriving, excluding, freeing, lacking,* and the like; as, **Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna dīvidit,** *the Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians* (I, 4); **cum suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,** *when they keep them away from their own territory* (I, 14); **id oppidum vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat,** *he heard that this town was stripped of defenders* (II, 209).

Ablative of Point of View

80. RULE. The ablative with **ab** or **ex** may be used to denote the position from which something is done or is true; as, **continentur ūnā ex parte,** *they are hemmed in on one side* (I, 31).

Ablative of Source or Origin

81. RULE. Source or origin is expressed by the ablative with or without **ab, dē,** or **ex**; as, **quaerit ex sōlō ea,** *he asks these questions from him alone* (I, 320).

1. Here also may be found the ablatives that denote *parentage* and *material;* as, **ortī ā Germānīs,** *sprung from the Germans* (II, 46); **nāvēs factae ex rōbore,** *ships made out of oak* (III, 13, 3).

Ablative of Agent

82. RULE. Agency with a passive verb is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**; as, **ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat,** *he had been called friend by the senate* (I, 54).

For the dative of agent see § 67.

Ablative of Cause

83. RULE. Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition; as, **grātiā plūrimum poterat,** *he was very powerful because of his popularity* (I, 152).

1. Cause is frequently expressed by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative; as, **ob eam rem incitāta,** *stirred up on account of this matter* (I, 75).

Ablative of Comparison

84. RULE. The ablative without a preposition may be used after comparatives in place of **quam** with the nominative or accusative; as, **nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum,** *not more than five miles* (I, 280).

1. When **quam** is used the two nouns compared are in the same case; as, **nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam imperātor meritus est,** *the army deserved no less praise than the general* (I, 800).

2. **Plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius** are often used for **plūs quam, minus quam,** etc; as, **flūmen nōn amplius mīlia passuum X abest,** *the river is not more than ten miles distant* (II, 266).

Ablative of Means

85. RULE. Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, **ūna pars continētur flūmine,** *one section is bounded by a river* (I, 17).

1. Here also may be found such expressions as: **proeliīs contendere,** *to contend in battles* (I, 13); **īnsidiīs nītī,** *to rely on ambuscades* (I, 237); **frūmentum flūmine nāvibus subvehere,** *to bring grain up (by) the river in (by) ships* (I, 287); **castrīs sē tenēre,** *to keep in camp* (I, 813).

Ablative with Deponent Verbs

86. RULE. The ablative is used with **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** and their compounds; as, **imperiō potīrī,** *to get control of the government* (I, 30); **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō,** *adopting the same plan* (I, 89).

1. But **potior** may be used with the genitive. See § 62.

Ablative with *opus* and *ūsus*

87. RULE. **Opus est** and **ūsus est,** meaning *there is need,* may take the ablative; as, **sī quō subsidiō opus esset,** *if there should be need of any help* (II, 143).

Ablative of Price

88. RULE. With verbs of *buying* and *selling,* price is denoted by the ablative without a preposition; as, **parvō pretiō redēmpta,** *bought at a low price* (I, 326).

Ablative of Degree of Difference

89. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the degree of difference; as, **multō facilius,** (*easier by much*) *much easier* (I, 99); **paucīs ante diēbus,** (*before by a few days*) *a few days before* (I, 344).

Ablative of Accompaniment

90. RULE. Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**; as, **cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem cōnfirmāre,** *to establish peace with the nearest states* (I, 47).

1. In military language, the **cum** may be omitted if the noun is modified by a word that is not a numeral; as, **Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs,** *Caesar followed with all his troops* (II, 309).

Ablative of Manner

91. RULE. Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum** or a modifier, rarely with both; as, **in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit,** *he hurried into Italy with forced marches* (I, 169).

1. The preposition and modifier are regularly omitted with **iniūriā** and **iniussū**; as, **iniussū suō,** *without his order* (I, 352).

2. **Sine** is sometimes used; as, **sine maleficiō iter facere,** *to make the trip without mischief* (I, 120).

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance

92. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the attendant circumstances of an act or condition; as, **imperiō populī Rōmānī,** *under the control of the Roman people* (I, 341).

Ablative of Accordance

93. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done; as, **mōribus suīs,** *in accordance with their customs* (I, 68).

Ablative of Description

94. RULE. The ablative with a modifier may be used to describe a person or thing; as, **hominēs inimīcō animō,** *men of unfriendly disposition* (I, 126).

1. This construction may be used predicatively; as, **nōndum bonō animō vidēbantur,** *they did not yet seem of friendly disposition* (I, 105).

Compare the Descriptive Genitive, § 57.

Ablative of Specification

95. RULE. The ablative without a preposition may be used to denote that in respect to which a statement is true; as, **linguā differunt,** *they differ in language* (I, 3).

Ablative Absolute

96. RULE. A noun and a participle may be used in the ablative independently as a substitute for a clause; as, **rēgnō occupātō,** *after the royal power had been seized* (I, 65).

1. Instead of a participle, a second noun or an adjective may be used. Here the lacking present participle of **sum** is to be supplied and the second noun or the adjective is in a predicate relation; as, **Messālā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus,** *when Messala and Piso were consuls* (I, 26).

Ablative of Time When or Within Which

97. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used to express time when or within which; as, **eō tempore,** *at that time* (I, 57); **patrum nostrōrum memoriā,** *within the memory of our fathers* (I, 211).

1. The ablative is used rarely to denote duration of time; as, **eā**

tōtā nocte continenter iērunt, *they advanced continuously during that entire night* (I, 493).

Ablative of Place in Which

98. RULE. Place in which is expressed by the ablative with **in** or **sub**; as, **in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt,** *they carry on war in their territory* (I, 14).

1. But names of towns and the word **domus** omit the preposition and use the locative if there is one; as, **domī,** *at home* (I, 331).

2. No preposition is used with ablatives of **locus** and **pars,** when modified by an adjective; or with any noun when modified by **tōtus**; as, **Rhodanus nōnnūllīs locīs trānsītur,** *the Rhone is crossed in several places* (I, 101); **tōtīs castrīs,** *throughout the entire camp* (I, 770).

LOCATIVE

99. The locative case is confined to names of towns and the word **domus**. In the singular of the first and second declensions, the form is identical with the genitive, elsewhere with the ablative. The locative of **domus** is **domī**. Examples: **Rōmae,** *at Rome;* **Athēnīs,** *at Athens;* **Corinthī,** *at Corinth;* **Delphīs,** *at Delphi;* **Carthāgine,** *at Carthage;* **Trallibus,** *at Tralles.*

PREPOSITIONS

With the Ablative

100. The following prepositions govern the ablative only; **ā, ab, cum, dē, ē, ex, prae, prō, sine.**

1. Before a word beginning with **h** or a vowel, **ab** and **ex** are used; elsewhere **ā** and **ē** are generally found.

2. **Cum** is always used as an enclitic with personal and reflexive pronouns and generally with the relative and interrogative.

With the Accusative and Ablative

101. *a.* The prepositions **in** and **sub** govern either the accusative or the ablative. With the accusative they denote *place to which,* with the ablative *place in which.*

With the Accusative

b. All other prepositions take the accusative only.

ADJECTIVES

102. An adjective is called predicate when it is connected with its noun by a form of **sum** or verb of similar meaning; as, **Gallia est dīvīsa**, *Gaul is divided* (I, 1); an adjective is called attributive when there is no such connecting verb; as, **partēs trēs**, *three parts* (I, 1).

Agreement of Adjectives

103. RULE. Adjectives, participles, and adjective pronouns agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; for examples see above.

1. When an attributive adjective modifies nouns of different gender or number, it generally agrees with the nearest; as, **vir et cōnsiliī magnī et virtūtis**, *a man both of great wisdom and of great courage* (III, 5, 2).

Adjectives used as Nouns

104. Adjectives are frequently used as nouns. The meaning is shown by the context or by some word easily understood; as, **mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis**, *they send the best known (men) of the state* (I, 118); **nostrōs lacessere coepērunt**, *they began to harass our (soldiers)* (I, 275).

Adjectives used as Denoting a Part

105. Some adjectives, mostly superlatives, are used to denote a part. Such are: **extrēmus, īnfimus (īmus), medius, prīmus, reliquus, summus**; as, **summus mōns**, *the highest part of the mountain* (I, 405); **in colle mediō**, *halfway up the hill* (I, 438).

Meanings of Comparatives and Superlatives

106. Besides the usual English forms,

1. Comparatives may mean *too*, *quite*, *rather*; as, **cupidius īnsecūtī**, *having followed too eagerly* (I, 270).

2. Superlatives may mean *very* or, when **quam** is used, the superlative idea is made as strong as possible; as, **flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō**, *by the very wide river Rhine* (I, 32); **quam maximum numerum**, *the greatest number possible* (I, 45).

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

107. *a.* The personal pronouns are rarely used as subjects of finite verbs except for emphasis or for contrast; as, **is coniūrātiōnem fēcit,** *he made a conspiracy* (I, 26).

b. The genitives **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī** are used only as objective genitives; **nostrum** and **vestrum,** only as partitives.

Reflexive Pronouns

108. The reflexive pronoun (**suī**) and the corresponding reflexive adjective (**suus**) may refer to the subject

1. Of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); as, **sibi lēgātiōnem suscēpit,** *he took the commission on himself* (I, 51); **rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāvit,** *he seized the royal power in his (own) state* (I, 55); or

2. Of the main clause (indirect reflexive); as, **sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnābantur, prohibēre poterat,** *he was able to stop them, if they tried to cross against his will* (I, 138); **quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit,** *he shows what his plan is* (I, 399).

a. Latin uses the reflexive to denote reciprocal relation; as, **iūs iūrandum inter sē dant,** *they give pledges to one another* (I, 65).

Intensive Pronoun

109. The intensive pronoun (**ipse**) emphasizes the noun with which it agrees; as, **ipsī bellum gerunt,** *they carry on war themselves* (I, 14); **in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs,** *on the very banks of the river* (II, 384).

a. The genitive of the intensive is sometimes used for particular emphasis upon the possessor; as, **ipsōrum linguā,** *in their own language* (I, 2).

Demonstrative Pronouns

110. Demonstrative Pronouns may be used either as adjectives or as nouns.

1. **Hīc** refers to that which is near in thought or position.

2. **Iste** refers to that which is near the person addressed and often implies contempt.

3. **Ille** refers to that which is more distant in thought or position.

a. **Ille** and **hīc** are often used in contrast, meaning: *the former, the latter*.

4. **Is** is used frequently as the pronoun of the third person or as the antecedent of a relative. The genitive is regularly used to denote possession that is not reflexive.

Relative Pronoun

111. RULE. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause; as, **proximī sunt Germānīs quibuscum bellum gerunt,** *they are nearest to the Germans with whom they wage war* (I, 10).

1. When the relative refers to two nouns of different genders, it is neuter plural unless one of those nouns denotes a living being. Otherwise it is masculine rather than feminine and feminine rather than neuter.

2. A relative often agrees with a predicate noun instead of with its antecedent; as, **Vesontiō, quod est oppidum Sēquanōrum,** *Vesontio, which is a town of the Sequanians* (I, 730).

3. A relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. It should then be translated by a demonstrative or personal pronoun with or without a coordinate conjunction, as circumstances require; as, **quā dē causā,** *and for this reason* (I, 11).

4. The antecedent of a relative is often attracted from the main to the subordinate clause; as, **cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs locus fuit, hāc nostrī exercitūs capī nōn possunt,** *our armies cannot be taken in by this strategy, for which there has been a chance against barbarous men* (I, 816).

5. The antecedent is often omitted; as, **Cōnsidius quod nōn viderat renūntiāvit,** *Considius reported that which he had not seen* (I, 419).

Indefinite Pronouns

112. 1. **Quīvīs,** *any one whatever*, is a general indefinite; as, **quamvīs fortūnam patī,** *to suffer any fortune whatever* (II, 520).

2. **Quis,** *any one*, is generally used after **sī, nisi, nē, num**; as, **sī quid vellent,** *if they wanted anything* (I, 130).

3. **Aliquis (aliquī),** *some one (some)*, is generally used in affirmative sentences; as, **eōs aliquid disciplīna sublevābat,** *the training helped them somewhat* (I, 802).

4. **Quīdam**, *certain*, is the most definite of the indefinites; as, **habent quāsdam rēs**, *they have certain matters* (I, 558).

5. **Quisquam**, *any one*, and the adjective **ūllus**, *any*, occur generally in sentences which are negative or which imply a negative; as, **nec quisquam plūs quam ego dolōris capit**, *nor does any one suffer more pain than I* (I, 372).

6. **Quisque**, *each one*, is sometimes used idiomatically with a superlative; as, **nōbilissimī cuiusque līberī**, *the children of (each most famous man) all the most famous men* (I, 607).

Pronominal Adjectives

113. **Alius**, *another*, and **alter**, *the other (of two)* are frequently used as correlatives; as, **alius aliā causā illātā**, *one offering one excuse and another another* (I, 759); **legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resistēbant**, *some legions in one direction, others in another were resisting the enemy* (II, 367); **alterī . . . alterī**, *the one body of men . . . the other* (I, 478).

VERBS

Agreement of Verb with Subject

114. RULE. A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

1. A verb may agree with the sense of the subject instead of with the form; as, **ut (cīvitās) exīrent**, *that the state (citizens) go forth* (I, 28).

2. A compound subject generally takes a plural verb but may take a singular verb if the subjects are considered as one; as, **Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit**, *the Marne and Seine* (making one boundary) *separates the Gauls from the Belgians* (I, 4); or the verb may agree with the nearer; as, **fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est**, *his daughter and one of his sons was captured* (I, 492).

3. In the compound tenses of a verb, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case; as, **pater eius amīcus appellātus erat**, *his father had been called friend* (I, 53).

a. A clause or phrase is neuter; as, **eam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est**, *(that the Gauls occupy this part has been said) it has been said that the Gauls occupy this part* (I, 15).

Verbs used Impersonally

115. Verbs may be used impersonally with or without a clause or phrase as subject; as, **pugnātum est,** *they fought* (I, 476); see also **§ 64,** *a*.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

Present Tense

116. The present tense is used

1. Of a general truth; as, **omnēs hominēs lībertātī student,** *all men are anxious for liberty* (III, 10, 3);

2. Of an action still going on in the present; as, **dīvidit,** *he divides* (simple present), *he is dividing* (progressive present), *he does divide* (emphatic present).

a. The historical present is much used in Latin to enliven the narrative, and may be translated as a past; as, **in eō itinere persuādet Casticō,** *on this trip he persuaded Casticus* (I, 52).

Imperfect Tense

117. The imperfect tense may denote an action

1. As habitual in the past; as, **pugnābant,** *they used to fight,* or *they would fight;*

2. As done or going on in the past; as, **pugnābant,** *they fought* (simple past), *they were fighting* (progressive past), *they did fight* (emphatic past).

Future Tense

118. The future tense corresponds to the English future but the active periphrastic (§ 166, 2, *a*) is often used to describe an action that is future to some form of **sum**; as, **quod portātūrī erant,** *what they were going to carry* (I, 85).

Perfect Tense

119. The perfect tense has two uses: —

1. Equivalent to the English past; as, **nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx,** *Orgetorix was the best known* (I, 25);

2. Equivalent to the English present perfect; as, **suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,** *we have shown above* (II, 1).

a. A few verbs have perfects that are generally translated as pres-

ents; as, **nōvī, cōgnōvī** (literally, *I have found out*), *I know;* and **cōnsuēvī** (literally, *I have become accustomed*), *I am accustomed.* These verbs have corresponding changes in the pluperfect and future perfect.

b. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of **meminī,** *I remember,* and **ōdī,** *I hate,* have the meanings of the present, imperfect, and future, respectively.

Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses

120. The pluperfect and the future perfect tenses correspond to the past perfect and the future perfect of English.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

121. The present and imperfect subjunctive represent incomplete action, and the perfect and pluperfect represent complete action.

1. In independent clauses, subjunctive tenses have special uses.

2. Tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses represent time which is not absolute but which is *relative* to the tense of the main verb. For the purposes of this relation, indicative and subjunctive tenses are divided into two classes, as follows: —

a. Primary Tenses: *Indicative,* present, future, perfect (English present perfect), future perfect; *Subjunctive,* present, perfect.

b. Secondary Tenses: *Indicative,* imperfect, perfect (English past), pluperfect; *Subjunctive,* imperfect, pluperfect.

Sequence of Tenses

122. RULE. In dependent subjunctive clauses, primaries follow primaries and secondaries follow secondaries; as, —

Primaries:

1. **rogō**	
2. **rogābō**	**quid faciās.***
3. **rogāvī**	**quid fēcerīs.**
4. **rogāverō**	

1. *I ask*	
2. *I shall ask*	*what you are doing* or *what you will do.**
3. *I have asked*	*what you did* or *have done.*
4. *I shall have asked*	

Secondaries:

5. **rogābam** 6. **rogāvī** 7. **rogāveram**	**quid facerēs.*** **quid fēcisses.**
5. *I asked* or *was asking* 6. *I asked* 7. *I had asked*	*what you were doing* or *would do.** *what you had done.*

Exceptions:

a. The historical present may be considered either primary or secondary.

b. The perfect subjunctive is sometimes considered secondary. This is especially true in result clauses.

c. For clearness or vividness, Latin often changes the sequence.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Purpose

123. RULE. Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut, nē, quō**, or a relative.

1. **Ut (utī)** is commonly the introductory word for affirmative purpose ; as, **sēmentēs fēcērunt ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret,** *they sowed grain that there might be on hand a supply of food* (I, 46).

2. **Nē** is the regular introductory word for negative purpose ; as, **omnem aciem suam circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur,** *they surrounded their entire line so that there might not be left any hope in flight* (I, 1063).

3. **Quō** is used as the introductory word if there is a comparative in the purpose clause; as, **castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre posset,** *he built redoubts that he might be able the more easily to keep (them) back* (I, 137).

4. A relative pronoun is used as the introductory word if there is a convenient antecedent in the main clause; as, **diem dīcunt, quā diē (ut eā diē) omnēs conveniant,** *they name a day on which (day) all are to assemble* (I, 108).

* Futurity in the subjunctive is often expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation (see § 43, 1). Thus **quid factūrus sīs** may be used above to express *what you will do* and **quid factūrus esses** to express *what you would do.*

Result

124. RULE. Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**; as, **mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent,** *a mountain overhung so that very few were able to keep* (*them*) *back* (I, 97).

Characteristic

125. RULE. A relative subjunctive clause may be used to characterize an antecedent which is otherwise undefined.

a. Such clauses are common after expressions that denote existence or non-existence; as, **erant duo itinera quibus itineribus exīre possent,** *there were two roads by which* (*roads*) *they could go forth* (I, 94).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.

126. RULE. Temporal clauses with **postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, cum prīmum** are used with the indicative, generally the perfect; as, **postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar subdūxit,** *after he had noticed this, Caesar led up his troops* (I, 436).

Temporal Clauses with *dum, donec,* and *quoad*

127. *a*. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by **dum** (*at a certain point of time, while*) take the present indicative; as, **dum ea conquīruntur, ēgressī sunt,** *while these were being sought for, they started out* (I, 508).

b. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by **dum, donec,** or **quoad** (*as long as*) take the indicative of any tense; as, **quoad potuit, restitit,** *he resisted as long as he could* (IV, 12, 5).

c. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by **dum, donec,** or **quoad** (*until*) take the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an act that is unforeseen; otherwise the subjunctive is used; as, **exspectāvit dum mīlitēs convēnērunt,** *he waited until the soldiers collected;* **ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs convenīrent,** *that a space of time might intervene until the soldiers should collect* (I, 128).

Temporal Clauses with *priusquam* and *antequam*

128. RULE. Temporal clauses with **priusquam** or **antequam** take the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an act that is unfore-

seen; otherwise the subjunctive is used; as, **nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt,** *and they did not cease to flee before they came to the river Rhine* (I, 1087); **priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum vocārī iubet,** *before he should try (to do) anything, he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned* (I, 361).

Temporal Clauses with *cum*

129. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by **cum** take the indicative if simply the *time* or the *date* of the action is denoted and take the subjunctive if the *circumstances* are denoted.

a. The subjunctive is generally used with the imperfect and pluperfect tenses and the indicative with the other tenses; as, **contendunt cum suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,** *they fight when they keep them out of their territory* (I, 13); **cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est,** *when the state was trying to assert its rights, Orgetorix died* (I, 75).

CAUSAL CLAUSES

Causal Clauses with *quod*

130. RULE. Causal clauses introduced by **quod** take the indicative unless the reason is quoted; as, **fortissimī sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt,** *the bravest are the Belgians because they are the farthest away* (I, 6); **inductī sunt quod suam fugam occultārī posse exīstimārent,** *they were influenced because* (according to some) *they thought their flight could be hidden* (I, 511).

Causal Clauses with *quia* or *quoniam*

131. RULE. Causal clauses with **quia** or **quoniam** take the indicative; as, **quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur,** *since we have arrived at this point, it seems not out of place* (VI, 11, 1).

Causal Clauses with *cum*

132. RULE. Causal clauses introduced by **cum** take the subjunctive; as, **hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt,** *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors* (I, 149).

Causal Clauses with *quī*

133. RULE. Causal clauses introduced by forms of **quī** take the subjunctive ; as, **dētēstātus est Ambiorīgem quī eius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset**, *he cursed Ambiorix who (because he) had been the author of this scheme* (VI, 31, 5).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Concessive Clauses with *quamquam, etsī, tametsī*

134. RULE. Concessive clauses introduced by **quamquam** and (in Caesar) by **etsī, tametsī** take the indicative; as, **etsī sine ūllō perīculō proelium fore vidēbat, tamen nōn putābat**, *although he realized that a battle would be unattended by any danger, yet he did not think* (I, 974).

Concessive Clauses with *cum* or *quī*

135. RULE. Concessive clauses introduced by **cum** or by forms of **quī** take the subjunctive; as, **cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit**, *although the battle waged till evening, nobody could see one of the enemy retreating* (I, 482).

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

136. Conditional clauses may be divided into three classes as regards tense, *i.e. present, past, future*; two classes as regards mood, *i.e. indicative* and *subjunctive*.

Indicative Conditions

137. 1. *Present:* **si pugnat, superat** — *if he fights, he conquers.*

2. *Past:* **si pugnābat, superābat** / **si pugnāvit, superāvit** — *if he fought, he conquered.*

3. *Future:* **si pugnābit,** / **si pugnāverit,** **superābit** — *if he will fight (fights)* / *if he will have fought (fights)* — *he will conquer.*

Note that: *a.* Nothing is implied as to the truth or the falsity of the above. These are sometimes called *simple conditions*;

b. In 3 above the English present is used where the Latin requires the future or the future perfect. This is sometimes called a *future more vivid condition.*

138. RULE. Indicative conditions use tenses according to sense.

Subjunctive Conditions

139. 1. *Present:* **si pugnāret, superāret,** *if he were fighting, he would be conquering.*

2. *Past:* **si pugnāvisset, superāvisset,** *if he had fought, he would have conquered.*

3. *Future:* **si pugnet, superet,** *if he should fight, he would conquer.*

Note that: *a.* In 1 and 2 above the conditions and conclusions are *contrary to fact* and that the imperfect denotes present time and the pluperfect denotes past time;

b. In 3, the condition and conclusion are doubtfully stated and that the present tense denotes future time. This is sometimes called a *future less vivid condition.*

140. *a.* RULE. Contrary to fact conditions use the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses to denote present time and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote past time;

1. With verbs or expressions meaning *could* or *ought*, a past tense of the indicative may be used in the conclusion.

b. RULE. Subjunctive conditions use the present tense in both clauses to denote future time.

Mixed Conditions

141. In Latin, as in English, the condition may be of one form and the conclusion of another; as, **sī hoc fēcit, bene est,** *if he has done this, it is well.*

Conditional Clauses of Comparison

142. RULE. Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by **ac sī, ut sī, quasī, quam sī, tamquam sī, velut sī,** take the subjunctive, applying the rule for sequence; as, **absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent,** *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus absent, as if he were present in person* (I, 634).

RELATIVE CLAUSES

143. RULE. Relative clauses regularly have their verbs in the indicative, but they may become subjunctive if they in turn depend on another subjunctive; as, **utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant,** *that they should find out the things that were being done among them* (II, 22).

a. But for subjunctive relative clauses see: § 123, 4, purpose; § 125, characteristic; § 133, causal; § 135, concessive.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

144. Substantive clauses are those which are used like nouns, as the subjects or objects of verbs, as appositives, etc.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose

145. RULE. Verbs that mean *ask, command, decide, demand, permit, persuade, urge,* take object clauses with **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive; as, **cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent,** *he persuaded the state (citizens) to go forth* (I, 28).

a. But **iubeō,** *order,* **cupiō,** *desire,* **vetō,** *forbid,* take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing

146. RULE. Verbs of fearing take object clauses with **nē** (affirmative) or **ut** (negative) and the subjunctive; as, **nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur,** *he feared lest by punishing him he would hurt the feelings of Diviciacus* (I, 359); **rem frūmentāriam, ut supportārī posset, sē timēre dīcēbant,** *they said they were afraid that the grain could not be brought up* (I, 781).

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering, etc.

147. RULE. Verbs of *hindering, preventing, refusing,* take object clauses with **nē, quōminus** or **quīn** (after negatives) and the subjunctive; as, **nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit,** *he saved himself from pleading his case* (I, 75).

a. But **prohibeō** takes the infinitive.

Substantive Clauses of Result

148. RULE. Substantive clauses of result may be used as object clauses with verbs of *accomplishing*, as subjects of certain impersonal verbs, or as appositives of nouns or pronouns; they take **ut** or **ut nōn** and the subjunctive; as, **quae rēs commeātūs ut ad eum supportārī possent efficiēbat,** *and this maneuver brought it to pass that supplies could be brought to him* (II, 91); **hīs rēbus fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur,** *because of these things it happened that they wandered less widely* (I, 36); **iūs est bellī ut quī vīcērunt iīs quōs vīcērunt imperent,** *it is the law of war that those who have conquered control those whom they have conquered* (I, 695).

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Doubting

149. RULE. Substantive clauses with **quīn** are used with negative expressions of doubt or uncertainty; as, **nōn est dubium quīn Helvētiī plūrimum possint,** *there is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful* (I, 62).

a. When **dubitō** means *hesitate* it takes a complementary infinitive.

Substantive Clauses with *quod*

150. RULE. Substantive clauses with **quod** take the indicative.

a. **Quod** here may be translated *that, the fact that, as to the fact, so far as;* as, **quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō,** *as to the fact that I am bringing a vast number of Germans over into Gaul, I am doing this for the purpose of strengthening myself* (I, 928).

Indirect Questions

151. RULE. Substantive clauses introduced by a question word (sometimes by **sī,** *whether*) are indirect questions and take a subjunctive verb; as, **in utram partem (flūmen) fluat, iūdicārī nōn potest,** *it cannot be decided in which direction (the river) flows* (I, 200); **sī perrumpere possent cōnātī,** *after trying (to see) whether they could break through* (I, 145).

1. Double indirect questions are introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** in the first part and by **an** in the second. **Necne** means *or not.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

152. Direct discourse quotes the exact words spoken or thought.

In English, indirect discourse changes the original words to conform to the verb upon which it depends; as, (Direct) *He said, "I am going"*; (Indirect) *He said that he was going.*

Moods in Indirect Discourse

In Latin, the changes in moods are made according to the following rules: —

153. RULE. All declarative main verbs become infinitives with subjects accusative in indirect discourse; as, (Direct) **Allobrogibus persuādēbimus,** *we shall persuade the Allobroges;* (Indirect) **Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs (esse) exīstimābant,** *they thought they would persuade the Allobroges* (I, 104).

154. RULE. All imperative main verbs become subjunctive in indirect discourse. The negative is **nē**; as, (Direct) **nōlī committere,** *don't allow;* (Indirect) **(dīxit) nē committeret,** (*he said*) *he should not allow* (I, 238).

155. RULE. All real interrogative main verbs become subjunctive in indirect discourse; as, (Direct) **quid verēminī?** *why are you afraid?* (Indirect) **(quaesīvit) quid verērentur,** (*he asked*) *why they were afraid* (I, 796).

1. A statement put into question form for emphasis is called a *rhetorical question* and employs an infinitive (see § 153); as, (Direct) **num memoriam dēpōnere possum,** *I cannot forget, can I?* (Indirect) **(quaesīvit) num (sē) memoriam dēpōnere posse?** (*he asked*) *could he forget?* (I, 251).

156. RULE. All subordinate clauses in indirect discourse have their verbs in the subjunctive; as, (Direct) **sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt Helvētiī,** *if the Roman people make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians will go into that section;* (Indirect) **(dīxit) sī . . . faceret, Helvētiōs . . . itūrōs esse,** (*he said*) *if the Roman people made,* etc., *the Helvetians would go,* etc. (I, 227).

1. Subordinate clauses which are not considered as a part of the quotation are in the indicative; as, **id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellēxērunt,** *they realized that he, in one day, had done that which they had done with the greatest difficulty in twenty days* (I, 223).

Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse

157. RULE. The time indicated by the infinitive is present, past, or future *relatively* to the verb on which it depends; as, (Direct) **angustōs fīnēs habēmus**, *we have narrow limits;* (Indirect) **angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur**, *they thought they had narrow limits* (I, 40).

1. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* take a future indirect discourse infinitive. **Posse** often has a future meaning; as, **tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant**, *they hope they will be able to get control of all Gaul* (I, 66).

2. Contrary to fact conditions in indirect discourse form the conclusion in the active by the use of a future participle with **fuisse**, and in the passive by using **futūrum fuisse** with **ut** and the imperfect subjunctive; as, **respondit sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse**, *he replied that if he himself needed anything from Caesar, he would have come to him* (I, 666); **dīxit, sī Caesar vēnisset, futūrum fuisse ut vincerētur**, *he said that if Caesar had come, (it would have happened that he would be conquered) he would have been conquered.*

3. Verbs or expressions that mean *ability* or *obligation* may have a perfect infinitive in the conclusion; as, **respondit nōn fuisse difficile**, *he replied that it would not have been difficult* (I, 245).

Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse

158. The regular rule of sequence applies to the use of tenses in the subjunctives of indirect discourse, but the subordinate verb is secondary if either the main verb of *saying* or *thinking* or the infinitive is a past tense. However, a primary tense may be used after a secondary for the sake of vividness; as, **respondit, cum ea ita sint, sēsē pācem esse factūrum**, *he replied that, although these things were so, he would make peace* (I, 257).

1. The rule for sequence of tenses does not hold in the conditional part of contrary to fact conditions in indirect discourse. The imperfect or pluperfect does not become primary even though it depends on a primary; as, **dīcit (or dīxit), sī Caesar vēnisset, sē eum vīsūrum fuisse**, *he says* (or *said*) *that, if Caesar had come, he would have seen him.*

Subjunctive in Implied Indirect Discourse

159. RULE. The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to suggest that it is a quotation; as, **Caesar frūmentum quod essent pollicitī flāgitāre,** *Caesar kept demanding the grain which* (as he claimed) *they had promised* (I, 282).

Subjunctive by Attraction

160. RULE. A verb subordinate to a subjunctive clause (or infinitive) and forming an essential part of that clause is often attracted from the indicative to the subjunctive; as, **utī commeātū quī supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet,** *that he might cut Caesar off from the supplies which were being brought up* (I, 1007).

Imperative Mood

161. Commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative; as, **dēsilīte,** *jump down* (IV, 25, 3).

a. A negative command (prohibition) is expressed most commonly by the use of **nōlī** (plu. **nōlīte**) with the present infinitive; as, **nōlī nōs dēspicere,** *don't despise us.*

Infinitive

162. The infinitive with or without a subject accusative may be used as the subject or the object of a verb.

The Infinitive without a Subject Accusative

163. 1. As Subject of a Verb.

The infinitive without a subject accusative may be used as subject of forms of **sum** and of impersonal verbs; as, **perfacile est imperiō potīrī,** *it is very easy to get control* (I, 29); **ut id sibi facere liceat,** *that it may be allowed* (*to*) *them to do this* (I, 122).

2. As Object of a Verb (Complementary Infinitive).

The infinitive without a subject accusative may be used as the object of a verb to complete the meaning of that verb. Such verbs are: **audeō, coepī, cōnor, cōnstituō, cōnsuēscō, cupiō, dēbeō, dēsistō, dubitō, incipiō** and **volō, nōlō, mālō**; as, **cōnstituērunt ea comparāre,** *they decided to prepare the things* (I, 44).

a. The complementary infinitive is common with **possum.**

The Infinitive with Subject Accusative

164. 1. As Subject of a Verb.

The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of forms of **sum** and of impersonal verbs; as, **poenam sequī oportēbat,** (*punishment to follow was right*) *punishment must follow* (I, 70).

2. As Object of a Verb.

a. The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of verbs meaning *allow, command, forbid,* etc. Such verbs are: **cōgō, iubeō, patior, vetō**; as, **Orgetorīgem causam dīcere coēgērunt,** *they compelled Orgetorix to plead his case* (I, 69).

b. This construction is used most commonly with verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* etc., and as such is known as *indirect discourse.* See §§ 152 ff.

The Infinitive with Subject Nominative (Historical Infinitive)

165. The infinitive when used as a substitute for the imperfect indicative in a main clause takes a subject nominative; as, **cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre,** *Caesar kept demanding the grain every day* (I, 282).

Participles

166. RULE. The time indicated by the participle is present, past or future *relatively* to the verb on which it depends and, according to the context, may denote *cause, manner, concession, time,* or *circumstance,* like a clause; as, **haec flēns petiit,** *he asked these things* (*while he was*) *weeping* (I, 382); **is rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem fēcit,** (*because he had been*) *influenced by a desire for royal power, he formed a conspiracy* (I, 26).

1. The present participle is not common in Latin. A clause with **dum** or **cum** is generally used instead; as, **dum morātur, subitō timor exercitum occupāvit,** *while he was delaying, suddenly fear seized the army* (I, 748, 754).

2. *a.* The future active participle is used with forms of **sum** to describe an action that is future to that form; as, **quod portātūrī erant,** *what they were going to carry* (I, 85). This combined form is known as the First Periphrastic Conjugation.

b. The future passive participle is used

(1) With **cūrō** and a few other verbs to denote *purpose;* as, **pontem faciendum cūrat,** *he had a bridge built* (I, 221);

(2) As a predicate adjective; as, **nōn ferendus,** *unendurable* (I, 661);

(3) With forms of **sum**, and then denotes *obligation* or *necessity*; as, **Caesar concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat,** *Caesar thought that permission ought not to be granted* (I, 123). This combined form is known as the Second Periphrastic Conjugation;

(4) For gerundive constructions, see § 168 and § 169.

3. The perfect participle agreeing with a direct object of **habeō** emphasizes the lasting effect of the action of the participle; as, **portōria redēmpta habet,** *he kept the import duties (which had been) bought up* (I, 325).

a. The perfect participle of a deponent verb sometimes has a passive meaning; as, **dēpopulātīs agrīs,** *now that their fields had been laid waste* (I, 190).

Gerund

167. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*; as, **bellandī cupidus,** *fond of warring* (I, 38). It is never found in the nominative, and in the accusative only after prepositions.

Gerundive

168. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and is, almost without exception, used where English would employ a verbal noun with a direct object. In Latin the noun is placed in the case the gerund would have had and the gerundive is made to agree; as, **ad animōs effēminandōs,** *to weaken the character* (I, 9), instead of **ad animōs effēminandum; cupiditās bellī gerendī,** *fondness for waging war* (I, 841), instead of **cupiditās bellum gerendī; dē expugnandō oppidō spem,** *hope of taking the town* (II, 170), instead of **dē expugnandō oppidum spem.**

1. With **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,** the gerundive with a like ending is used without regard to gender or number; as, **nōn suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt,** *they do not leave the enemy a chance for collecting themselves* (III, 6, 1).

Uses of Gerund and Gerundive

169. 1. The genitive is used

a. With nouns and adjectives; as, **bellandī cupidus,** *fond of warring* (I, 38); **facultās itineris faciundī,** *the chance of making the march* (I, 126).

b. With **causā** and **grātiā** to denote *purpose;* as, **suī mūniendī**

causā, *for the sake of strengthening himself* (I, 929); **speculandī causā**, *for the sake of spying* (I, 1002).

2. The dative is seldom used.

3. The accusative is used with **ad** to express *purpose*; as, **diem ad dēlīberandum sūmam**, *I shall take time for deliberating* (I, 130); **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur**, *Orgetorix was chosen to complete these matters* (I, 50).

4. The ablative is used with prepositions and to denote *means* or *cause*; as, **in quaerendō reperiēbat**, *upon inquiring, he found out* (I, 343); **lapidibus subministrandīs**, *by furnishing stones* (III, 25, 1).

Supine

170. *a.* The accusative supine is used with verbs that express or imply *motion* to denote *purpose*; as, **lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium**, *they send ambassadors to ask for aid* (I, 184).

b. The ablative supine is used with adjectives to denote *specification*; as, **perfacile factū est**, *it is very easy to do* (I, 60).

Grammatical and Rhetorical Figures

171. 1. *Hendiadys* consists of the use of two nouns with a conjunction instead of a single modified noun; as, **omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit**, *he displays all sorts of cruelties* (I, 608).

2. *Asyndeton* consists of the omission of coördinate conjunctions; as, **L. Pisōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus**, *when Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius were consuls* (I, 110).

3. *Litotes* consists of the use of two negatives to make an emphatic affirmative; as, **nōn irrīdiculē**, *with much wit* (I, 877).

METHOD OF EXPRESSING DATES

172. *a.* The Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls for that year; as, **Messālā et Pisōne cōnsulibus**, *in the year when Messala and Piso were consuls* (*i.e.* 61 B.C.) (I, 26).

b. Months were designated by the use of adjectives, as follows: **Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Quīnctīlis (Iūlius), Sextīlis (Augustus), September, Octōber, November, December.**

c. Days of the month were reckoned backward from three points in the month, as follows: —

1. **Kalendae**, which fell upon the *first* of the month;

2. **Nōnae**, which fell upon the *fifth* (except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the *seventh*);

3. **Īdūs**, which fell on the *thirteenth* (except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the *fifteenth*).

173. In reckoning days of the month, the Romans counted both ends of the series; for instance, they would have said that Wednesday was the fourth day before Saturday and the third of January was known as the third day before the Nones (which fell on the fifth). Hence the following: —

Kalendīs Iānuāriīs or **Kal. Iān.** = on Jan. 1.

diē quārtō ante Nōnās Iānuāriās, or, more commonly, **ante diem quārtum Nōnās Iānuāriās**, which was generally written in abbreviated form; as, **a. d. IV. Nōn. Iān.** = on Jan. 2.

prīdiē Nōnās Iānuāriās or **prīdiē Nōn. Iān.** = on Jan. 4.

diē tertiō ante Kalendās Februāriās or **a. d. III. Kal. Feb.** = on Jan. 30.

prīdiē Kalendās Februāriās or **prīdiē Kal. Feb.** = on Jan. 31.

174. Formulae for translating Roman dates into English: —

1. Falling after the Ides. For example: —

a. d. IV. Kal. Feb. The English date = 31 (days in Jan.) + 1 (for the Feb. Calends) + 1 (for counting both ends) − 4 (the given number) = Jan. 29.

In general add two to the number of days in the earlier month and subtract the given number.

2. Falling after the Calends or Nones. For example: —

a. d. VII. Īd. Apr. The English date = 13 (Ides of Apr.) + 1 (for counting both ends) − 7 (the given number) = Apr. 7.

In general add one to the date on which the Nones or Ides fall and subtract the given number.

ROMAN NAMES

175. A Roman generally had three names: —

praenōmen, first or given name;

nōmen, name of the gens to which he belonged;

cōgnōmen, name of the family to which he belonged.

Thus the name **Gāius Iūlius Caesar** denotes *Gaius* of the *Julian* gens or house and of the family of *Caesar*.

a. A foreigner on becoming a Roman citizen took the **praenōmen** and **nōmen** of his Roman patron and added his own name as a **cōgnōmen**; as, **C. Valerius Cabūrus** (I, 992).

WORD LIST

The following list is based on Lodge's Vocabulary of High School Latin. The words in italics appear in Caesar ten or more times — those in Roman type appear five to nine times.

PRELIMINARY

gracilis
nōngentī
quaternī
quīnquiēs
septendecim
sextus
tredecim
ūndecim

BELLUM GALLICUM

Book I

1. *sum*
omnis
dīvidō
in
pars
trēs
quī
ūnus
incolō
alius
tertius
ipse
lingua
noster
appellō
hīc
īnstituō
inter
suī
differō
ab
flūmen
et
fortis
proptereā
quod
atque
prōvincia
longus
absum
parvus
-que
ad
is
mercātor
saepe
animus
pertineō
prope
trāns
cum (prep.)
contineō
bellum
gerō
dē
causa
quoque
reliquus
virtūs
ferē
cotīdiānus
proelium
contendō
cum (conj.)
aut
suus
finis
prohibeō
obtineō
dīcō
initium
capiō
ōceanus
attingō
etiam
vergō

septentriō
orior
īnferus
spectō
sōl
mōns
occāsus
2. *apud*
nōbilis
rēgnum
indūcō
nōbilitās
faciō
cīvitās
persuādeō
ut
cōpia
exeō
praestō
tōtus
imperium
potior
facilis
undique
locus
nātūra
ex
lātus
altus
ager
alter
lacus
rēs
fīō
vagor

finitimus
īnferō
possum
homō
bellō
cupidus
magnus
prō
multitūdō
autem
angustus
habeō
mīlle
passus
ducentī
quādragintā
lātitūdō
octōgintā
pateō
3. *addūcō*
auctōritās
permoveō
cōnstituō
proficīscor
comparō
carrus
quam
numerus
iter
frūmentum
pāx
amīcitia
cōnfīrmō
cōnficiō
satis

dūcō
annus
profectiō
dēligō
lēgātiō
suscipiō
fīlius
pater
multus
senātus
populus
amīcus
occupō
ante
item
frāter
tempus
accipiō
īdem
cōnor
fīlia
dō
ille
probō
perficiō
nōn
quīn
exercitus
conciliō
ōrātiō
fidēs
iūs
iūrō
per
firmus

spērō
4. ēnūntiō
mōs
cōgō
sequor
oportet
ignis
diēs
decem
cliēns
condūcō
nē
ob
incitō
arma
magistrātus
neque
suspīciō
mors
5. *post*
nihil
ubi
iam
parō
oppidum
duodecim
vīcus
quadringentī
prīvō
aedificium
incendō
portō
domus
spēs
tollō

perīculum
subeō
mēnsis
quisque
iubeō
ūtor
cōnsilium
trānseō
oppugnō
recipiō
socius
6. *omnīnō*
duo
vix
singulī
expediō
pācō
fluō
nōnnūllus
vadum
pōns
vel
nōndum
bonus
videō
exīstimō
vīs
eō
patior
rīpa
conveniō
quīntus
7. *nūntiō*
mātūrō
ulterior

perveniō
mīles
imperō
legiō
adventus
cernō (*certus*)
lēgō (*lēgatus*)
mittō
prīnceps
sine
ūllus
maleficium
nūllus
rogō
voluntās
licet
memoria
teneō
occīdō
pellō
sub
iugum
concēdō
putō
facultās
temperō
iniūria
tamen
spatium
intercēdō
dum
respondeō
sūmō
sī
quis

volō
revertor
8. *intereā*
novem
mūrus
altitūdō
pēs
sēdecim
fossa
perdūcō
opus
praesidium
dispōnō
castellum
invītus
veniō
ostendō
dēiciō
nāvis
iungō
ratis
complūrēs
nox
mūnītiō
concursus
tēlum
repellō
dēsistō
9. *relinquō*
via
propter
angustiae
sponte
impetrō
grātia
novus
studeō
beneficium
itaque
obses
10. renūntiō
intellegō
frūmentārius
praeficiō
ibi
circum
hiemō
hībernus
ēdūcō
quīnque
superus
citerior
septimus
inde
prīmus
11. *trādūcō*
populor
dēfendō
auxilium
ita
mereor
paene
cōnspectus
vāstō
līber
servitūs
expugnō
dēbeō
necessārius
cōnsanguineus
hostis
fuga
dēmōnstrō
praeter
exspectō
statuō
fortūna
cōnsūmō
12. *incrēdibilis*
uter
iūdicō
explōrātor
quārtus
vigilia
castra
impediō
aggredior
concīdō
mandō
silva
abdō
pāgus
nam
quattuor
interficiō
cāsus
īnsīgnis
calamitās
sōlus
pūblicus
sed
ulcīscor
13. *cōnsequor*
cūrō
repentīnus

commoveō
vīgintī
aeger
dux
agō
vetus
prīstinus
improvīsus
adorior
ferō
dēspiciō
īnsidiae
nītor
committō
cōnsistō
nōmen
14. *gravis*
accidō
aliquis
caveō
dēcipiō
timeō
contumēlia
recēns
temptō
vexō
dēpōnō
victōria
tam
diū
admīror
cōnsuēscō
enim
commūtātiō
doleō
secundus
interdum
polliceor
discēdō
15. *posterus*
moveō
equitātus
praemittō
agmen
īnsequor
aliēnus
paucī
cadō
quīngentī
eques
tantus
audāx
lacessō
coepī
circiter
quīndecim
amplus
quīnī
16. *interim*
cotīdiē
flāgitō
pōnō
modus
mātūrus
quidem
āvertō
nōlō
cōnferō
comportō
īnstō
convocō
praesum
creō
potestās
accūsō
emō
propinquus
praesertim
prex
queror
17. *tum*
dēmum
prōpōnō
valeō
dēterreō
perferō
dubitō
superō
lībertās
quantus
18. *sentiō*
celer
concilium
dīmittō
retineō
quaerō
conventus
reperiō
vērus
pretium
redimō
contrā
audeō
nēmō
familiāris

augeō
largus
māter
collocō
soror
faveō
cupiō
restituō
equester
adverto
perterreō
19. *cōgnōscō*
accēdō
animadvertō
studium
ēgregius
iūstitia
vereor
priusquam
quisquam
removeō
colloquor
simul
petō
hortor
20. *lacrima*
complector
sciō
minuō
frāternus
vulgus
verbum
fleō
dexter
ōrō
adhibeō
reprehendō
moneō
loquor
21. *cōnsīdō*
octō
circuitus
ascendō
mīlitāris
perītus
posteā
22. *lūx*
captīvus
comperiō
equus
admittō
collis
subdūcō
aciēs
īnstruō
nisi
impetus
timor
intervāllum
23. postrīdiē
bīduum
supersum
prīdiē
interclūdō
cōnfīdō
convertō
24. *postquam*
sustineō
medius
triplex
suprā
compleō
impedīmentum
mūniō
cōnfertus
rēiciō
phalanx
succēdō
25. *deinde*
cohortor
pīlum
gladius
pugna
scūtum
sinister
commodus
pugnō
bracchium
manus
corpus
tandem
vulnus
dēfessus
referō
latus
aperiō
circumveniō
cōnspicor
rūrsus
sīgnum
vincō
resistō
26. *anceps*
ācer
hōra

vesper
vāllum
obiciō
cōniciō
subiciō
vulnerō
trīgintā
intermittō
trīduum
moror
littera
nūntius
iuvō
27. *inopia*
dēditiō
prōiciō
supplex
poscō
sex
trādō
salūs
ēgredior
28. *redūcō*
unde
āmittō
ratiō
vacō
par
condiciō
29. nōminātim
puer
mulier
caput
sexāgintā
quattuordecim
nōnāgintā
trecentī
redeō
30. *ūsus*
flōreō
opportūnus
quīdam
commūnis
permittō
31. labōrō
cruciātus
arcessō
ferus
barbarus
centum
semel
iterum
hospitium
implōrō
recūsō
quōminus
perpetuus
profugiō
postulō
victor
rēx
cōnsuētūdō
vīctus
superbus
ēdō
nūtus
quīcumque
experior
32. cēterus
terra
vōx
occultus
velut
cōram
intrā
33. *paulātim*
occurrō
34. uterque
colloquium
praetereā
commeātus
contrahō
mīrus
negōtium
35. *quoniam*
invītō
gravor
reddō
neglegō
36. praescrībō
congredior
dēterior
maneō
stīpendium
pendō
37. trānsportō
coniungō
38. *prōcēdō*
namque
sīc
cingō
sescentī
rādīx
circumdō
efficiō

39. *magnitūdō*
exercitātiō
perturbō
tribūnus
remaneō
fingō
centuriō
timidus
audiō
40. *ōrdō*
cūr
temerē
officium
perspiciō
impellō
ego
inermis
armō
plērusque
palūs
dispergō
difficultās
simulātiō
brevis
dēsum
avāritia
an
decimus
cohors
indulgeō
41. quīnquāgintā
42. *ultrō*
pedes
interpōnō
dētrahō
legiōnārius
impōnō
43. *tumulus*
aequus
mūnus
doceō
aditus
praemium
cōnsulō
afferō
remittō
at
44. dēcertō
dētrīmentum
suspicor
opprimō
dēdūcō
regiō
labor
45. *sententia*
dēserō
dīgnōscō
redigō
46. lapis
etsī
iniciō
47. adulēscēns
longinquus
cōnspiciō
conclāmō
catēna
48. ultrā
continuus
prōdūcō
genus
totidem
vēlōx
versor
dūrus
concurrō
circumsistō
prōdeō
celeritās
cursus
adaequō
49. *idōneus*
50. *paulum* (*paulō*)
prōgredior
sors
51. speciēs
pandō
52. quaestor
cornū
excipiō
premō
subsidium
53. *tergum*
vertō
fugiō
nancīscor
nātiō
trīnī
vinciō
trahō
incidō
hospes
ter
statim
necō
reservō

incolumis
54. *aestās*

Book II

1. *crēber*
rūmor
coniūrō
2. *ineō*
incipiō
cōnstō
prōvideō
3. *opīniō*
cōnsentiō
4. *expellō*
explōrō
dēferō
5. *līberālis*
prōsequor
dīligō
6. oppugnātiō
iaciō
nūdō
testūdō
submittō
7. paulisper
adeō
8. *frōns*
9. neuter
10. *levis*
dēficiō
appropinquō
11. strepitus
properō
subsequor
prior
clāmor
12. *vacuus*
vīnea
agger
turris
13. *nāscor*
14. discessus
15. *mora*
dēdō
vīnum
17. adiuvō
pedester
praedor
arbor
rāmus
praebeō
18. nōminō
contrārius
statiō
19. *cēdō*
lateō
dēcurrō
20. tuba
administrō
21. dēveniō
adigō
dīmicō
accommodō
22. *dēnsus*
ēventus
varius
23. nōnus
exanimō
compellō (3)
octāvus
24. *respiciō*
praeceps
fremitus
25. urgeō
vir
tardus
excēdō
opera
27. *prōcumbō*
praeferō
īnsistō
29. *rūpēs*
duplex
pondus
saxum
trabs
30. exstruō
onus
31. quīvīs
32. cēlō
33. pellis
ēruptiō
vēndō
34. *maritimus*

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

The references are to sections in the *Grammatical Summary*. Words to be omitted in Latin are in parentheses, words which are explanatory are in brackets.

The editors recommend that the Exercises in Latin Prose Composition be used largely as oral rather than as written lessons. The sentences are purposely made short and are intended simply as a basis of drill in forms and syntax. Oral drill brings about this result much more effectively than written work. It is suggested that the sentences be read by the instructor and the Latin given by the pupil with book closed. To promote independence and facility, slight changes may be made in tenses of verbs, number of nouns, etc.

LESSON I

Predicate Noun and Appositive: 49.
Agreement of Verb: 114 with 1 and 2.
Tenses of Incomplete Action: 116, 117, 118.

Exercise

1. This province is a part of Gaul. 2. Gaul has not many rivers. 3. One river is the Seine; another, the Marne. 4. The Seine is a river of Gaul. 5. Two rivers, the Rhone and the Rhine, separate one side [**pars**]. 6. These were long and deep rivers. 7. The Belgians inhabit this part of Gaul. 8. The Gauls, a tribe of Gaul, keep out the Helvetians. 9. The Helvetians were a brave tribe. 10. The Gauls and Helvetians were brave tribes. 11. The languages and customs differed. 12. The territory of the Helvetians, a brave tribe, had many mountains. 13. Orgetorix was a chieftain of the Helvetians. 14. The Helvetians will start out and will wage many wars. 15. The citizens of this territory will go forth.

16. A large number of men will seize a part of Gaul, a fertile land. 17. Wars will be often waged. 18. (There) will be many battles. 19. Many nobles will be taken (as) hostages. 20. Orgetorix and the Helvetians will occupy this territory.

LESSON II

Predicate and Attributive Adjectives: 102, 103.
Agreement of Adjectives: 103, 114, 3 and *a*.
General Rule for the Genitive: 51.
Tenses of Complete Action: 119, 120.

Exercise

1. The influence of Orgetorix was great. 2. The people prepared many carts and troops. 3. Peace and friendship had already been established. 4. (It) had been decided to undertake the journey. 5. The roads were not easy. 6. (There) were wide lakes and rivers. 7. To prepare all the grain and carts was not easy. 8. But the neighboring nations and tribes were friendly. 9. Casticus, a Sequanian, and (his) father had been called friends of the Roman people. 10. And the Roman senate and people had called the Aeduans friends. 11. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, was the brother of Diviciacus. 12. Both Casticus and Diviciacus have been chosen leaders of armies. 13. (It) had been decided to accept both Aeduan and Sequanian troops. 14. Orgetorix and (his) friends will be made leaders of these troops. 15. The Helvetians found out Orgetorix's plan. 16. This plan was decided (upon). 17. All the clients and friends of Orgetorix were brought together. 18. (It) was easy to save him. 19. The magistrates collected large armies and troops. 20. All these things are known.

LESSON III

Agreement of the Relative Pronoun: 111.
Demonstrative Pronouns: 110.
Indirect Object: 63.

Exercise

1. The speech which Orgetorix had delivered influenced the Helvetians. 2. He announced to them that which had been decided (upon). 3. Those to whom arms have been given will go forth. 4. They will leave the villages and buildings which have been set-on-fire. 5. The Boii, who had many towns, and the Rauraci too, will go forth. 6. The former were neighbors; the latter (were) allies. 7. (There) are two rivers which they will cross. 8. One is wide and deep; the other has several fords. 9. The former is called the Rhine; the latter the Rhone. 10. Four hundred towns and villages will be left. 11. The former were large and well-known. 12. Grain was given to all those who will start out. 13. All these (men) to whom grain has been given will start out. 14. They choose Geneva, which is a well-known town of the Helvetians. 15. They had already prepared carts and grain which had been purchased. 16. They will cross the bridges and fords which you have seen. 17. Orgetorix, who has been chosen leader, will win the royal-power. 18. The Helvetians, whose army has been collected, will choose the easier road. 19. These Helvetians, who are a brave tribe, will seize many towns and villages of Gaul. 20. The width of that territory which is called Gaul is great.

LESSON IV

Reflexive Pronoun and Adjective: 108.
Intensive Pronoun: 109.
Possessive Adjectives.
Possessive Genitive: 52.

Note that

a. The reflexive possessive **suus** must be used when the English possessives *his, her, its, their,* refer to the subject of the verb. Remember that **suus** is an adjective and hence must agree with the noun it modifies and *not* with the noun to which it refers; as, **mātrem suam vīdit,** *he saw his mother.*

b. The genitive of **is** is regularly used when the English possessive does not refer to the subject; as, **mātrem eius vīdit,** *he saw his* (i.e., *another's*) *mother.*

Exercise

1. The Helvetians themselves will make a journey through our province. 2. This (fact) was announced to Caesar himself, who had already sent his army. 3. Caesar himself started out. 4. His arrival was announced to all the Helvetians' chieftains. 5. The Boii had been made allies of the Helvetians. 6. The Helvetians sent their best-known (men) (as) ambassadors. 7. We shall make our journey through your province without injury. 8. (There) is no other road left. 9. Caesar sent away the ambassadors who had said these (things) to him. 10. Meanwhile his soldiers constructed a long wall and ditch. 11. They also built redoubts which kept out the Helvetians' troops. 12. Dumnorix had great influence among the Sequanians and he was a friend of the Helvetians. 13. Orgetorix, the Helvetian, had given him his daughter. 14. (It) was decided to go through the Sequanians' territory. 15. Caesar replied to the ambassador who had reported this plan to him. 16. You will try the road through the Sequanians. 17. But I shall keep your troops

away. 18. The Aeduans themselves have asked (for) aid which I shall give to them. 19. My army will defeat your army. 20. The Helvetians' ambassador announced Caesar's reply to his (friends).

LESSON V

Extent of Time and Space: 74.
Time When and Within Which: 97.

Exercise

1. Within two days, three cantons of the Helvetians crossed the river. 2. At that time, the other men were left behind. 3. Caesar pursued these for many miles and killed them. 4. These men, within the memory of our fathers, had killed Cassius the consul. 5. The Helvetians at this time sent another embassy, of which Divico was chief. 6. For several years Divico had been a leader of the Helvetians. 7. You have done in one day that which we have completed in twenty days. 8. The Romans themselves have not defeated our brave troops. 9. Within a short time, we shall defeat the Romans. 10. To Divico Caesar pointed out the many wrongs of the Helvetians. 11. For many months you harassed the Aeduans, our friends. 12. And within a few days you have attempted a journey through our province. 13. Caesar demanded (as) hostages many sons and daughters of the leaders. 14. But the Helvetians did not give the hostages that Caesar demanded. 15. Both the Romans and the Helvetians moved camp on the next day. 16. Scouts were sent ahead in the third watch. 17. The Romans pursued the enemy for ten miles and sustained a great loss. 18. Then both armies marched fifteen days. 19. Neither

Caesar nor the Helvetians' chieftain was conquered. **20.** Within a brief space of time, they will fight again.

LESSON VI

Place to Which: 75.
Place from Which: 78.
Place in Which: 98, 99.

Exercise

1. The Aeduans did not give Caesar the grain which they had promised. **2.** The grain was not yet ripe in the fields. **3.** The boats, in which was Caesar's supply, were on the River Saône. **4.** The Helvetians had turned away from the river. **5.** Caesar did not depart from them. **6.** The Aeduans had not helped Caesar at this critical time. **7.** Liscus, who had been summoned to Caesar, replied. **8.** In our territory, (there) are some powerful leaders. **9.** They will not bring the grain to the Romans. **10.** These things were said to Caesar in his camp. **11.** Dumnorix, who at this time was at Geneva, had been powerful for many years. **12.** He was the brother of Diviciacus, whom Caesar summoned from home. **13.** Caesar pointed out those (things) which had been said in the council of the Gauls. **14.** You have not brought the grain from Geneva nor from the other parts of the territory. **15.** My soldiers will go to the Aeduans and to-the-vicinity-of Geneva. **16.** In those places they will see a great supply of grain. **17.** Other soldiers will be sent to my army from-near Rome. **18.** For I have many friends at home who will come to Gaul. **19.** The (men) who are now here, I shall send home. **20.** Your brother has returned to Geneva, but I shall not punish him.

LESSON VII

Direct Questions.
Indirect Questions: 151.
Sequence of Tenses: 121, 122.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Questions are divided into

A. Direct.
B. Indirect.

A. Direct questions may be subdivided into
(1) Those answerable by *yes* or *no.*
(2) Those not answerable by *yes* or *no.*

1. Those answerable by *yes* or *no* use
   a. The enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word (placed first) when the answer is not hinted in the question; as, **venietne Caesar**? *will Caesar come?*
   b. The introductory word **nōnne** when the answer *yes* is hinted; as, **nōnne Caesar veniet**? *will not Caesar come?*
   c. The introductory word **num** when the answer *no* is hinted; as, **num Caesar veniet**? *Caesar will not come, will he?*
2. Those not answerable by *yes* or *no* use an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb; as, **quis veniet**? *who will come?* **quī homō veniet**? *what man will come?* **ubi homō veniet**? *when will the man come?*

B. Indirect questions are direct questions quoted indirectly and used as substantive clauses with a verb that expresses an interrogative idea, and may be subdivided into
(1) Those which, in the direct form, are answerable by *yes* or *no.*
These are introduced by **num** or **-ne**; as, **rogat num veniat,** *he asks whether he is coming.*
(2) Those which, in the direct form, are *not* answerable by *yes* or *no.*
Direct questions introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb use, upon becoming indirect, the same introductory word; as, **rogat quis veniat,** *he asks who is coming.*

Exercise

1. What did Caesar do on the next day? 2. He found out whether he could ascend the mountain. 3. Did he

send Considius from the camp to the mountain? 4. Considius did not find the enemy on the mountain, did he? 5. Didn't Considius see the Roman army at daybreak? 6. Caesar asked whom he had seen. 7. Considius did not find out whether the enemy was there. 8. But late in the day Caesar learned who was there. 9. On the next day, he started out for Bibracte. 10. You know, don't you, whether he made forced marches? 11. Did he remain there many days? 12. The Helvetians tried to find out where Caesar would find a supply of grain. 13. He will ask whether the neighbors will give him grain. 14. Will he not leave his baggage in that town? 15. Have the Aeduans always been called friends of Caesar? 16. Don't you know how large a number of soldiers the Aeduans have sent to Caesar? 17. He asked whether they would also fortify his camp. 18. They will find out how powerful Caesar is. 19. Then they will show how they will help him. 20. Will not Caesar draw up a battle line within a few days?

LESSON VIII

Purpose Clauses with ut and nē: 123 with 1 and 2.
alius and alter: 113.

Exercise

1. Caesar had demanded the help of the Aeduans. 2. Their forces had crossed to the other bank of the river that they might help him. 3. They chose a prominent man that he might be leader of their troops. 4. Caesar had come into the Helvetians' territory to conquer them. 5. He had brought some (men) from Rome, others from the Roman province. 6. This had been done so that the

Helvetians might not cross the Rhone into our province. 7. The territory of the Helvetians was on one side [**pars**] of the mountains, our province was on the other. 8. Some neighbors of the Helvetians were their friends, others (were their) enemies. 9. Caesar had pitched his camp near [**ad**] Bibracte so that he might have sufficient [of] grain. 10. A line of battle was drawn up so that Caesar might withstand the enemies' charge. 11. The battle was (a) fierce (one) and many Helvetians were captured. 12. Some were slain, others were made slaves. 13. The rest are sent home that they may rebuild the towns and villages which have been set-on-fire. 14. The men and women who returned home were few, were they not? 15. They will rebuild their towns so that they may keep out the Germans. 16. Caesar had fought fiercely so that the Helvetians might not try again to cross the Rhone. 17. He had not come to seize their lands. 18. One army conquered, the other suffered defeat. 19. This battle was considered the fiercest of the entire war. 20. Caesar sent a message to Rome to announce the victory to the senate.

LESSON IX

Ablative of Separation: 79 with *a*.
Ablative of Source (Origin): 81 with 1.
Ablative of Agent: 82.
Verbs of Fearing: 146.

Exercise

1. The Helvetians had been conquered by Caesar. 2. Ambassadors from many states came to Caesar to ask (for) peace. 3. He asks why the Helvetians have left their homes. 4. They had done this that they might have

other states as neighbors. 5. The Gauls alone will not keep them out of their territory. 6. Will not help be given to them by the Roman people? 7. Ariovistus, who was sprung from the Germans, had come into the Gauls' territory. 8. In a short time, he will drive out all the Gauls from their fields. 9. Will you not send this man away from Gaul? 10. Caesar wonders what the cause of these things is. 11. These injuries arose from Ariovistus's haughty character. 12. The Sequanians feared that Ariovistus would not depart from their towns. 13. Caesar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus that he might cease from his wrongdoing. 14. The Aeduans, often called brothers by the Romans, had been deprived of their fields. 15. Even the children were taken from their homes (as) hostages. 16. Caesar fears that the Germans may cross the Alps into Italy. 17. The Sequanians feared that Ariovistus might not abstain from battle. 18. Don't you know when [at what time] we shall be free of Ariovistus? 19. We fear that we may suffer his rule many years. 20. Only the Rhone separates our province from the Sequanians.

LESSON X

Ablative of Comparison: 84.
Ablative of Degree of Difference: 89.
Idiomatic Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives: 105, 106.

Exercise

1. Ariovistus had more soldiers than Caesar. 2. But Caesar's soldiers were much better [more] prepared. 3. Caesar asked Ariovistus whether he would overlook the kind deeds of the Romans. 4. Then Ariovistus replied very haughtily. 5. He had been in Gaul more years than

Caesar. 6. His army was braver than Caesar's. 7. The barbarians had a very great amount of grain. 8. Caesar was many miles further from his (own) supply. 9. And so he prepared his army as quickly as possible. 10. He hastened to Vesontio, a rather large town. 11. Vesontio was a larger town than Bibracte. 12. At Vesontio (there) were stronger fortifications than at other places. 13. A wall that was many feet higher had been placed around the town. 14. In the middle of the town (there) was quite a high hill. 15. A redoubt, as strong as possible, had been built on the top of this hill. 16. Caesar feared that Ariovistus might arrive there first [**prior**]. 17. And so he hastened that he might seize the arms that were there. 18. At this time Ariovistus was more than ten miles away. 19. He had marched very rapidly, but Caesar had gone more rapidly. 20. Caesar came to this town a little earlier than Ariovistus.

LESSON XI

Ablative of Cause: 83.
Ablative of Means: 85.
Result Clauses with **ut** and **ut nōn**: 124.

Exercise

1. On account of the grain supply, Caesar's army delayed for a few days near Vesontio. 2. The Romans learned from the replies of the traders how brave the Germans were. 3. For this reason, so great a fear seized the army that the minds of all were disturbed. 4. This fear first arose from the tribunes who had followed Caesar out of friendship. 5. Some, however, were influenced by (a sense of) duty. 6. The former are afraid that the enemy may put them to death. 7. The latter will stay in the

camp that there may be no [not be any] suspicion of cowardice. 8. Because of their cowardice many, throughout the entire camp, were panic-stricken. 9. They feared that the grain might not be brought. 10. This had been received from neighboring tribes. 11. In the farthermost (parts of the) camp, some were grieving on account of their danger. 12. Others were so panic-stricken that they did not restrain their tears. 13. Were not the centurions much less cowardly than the tribunes? 14. By means of a speech, Caesar strengthened their courage. 15. We shall go out from this town which is surrounded by a river. 16. With our carts we shall carry as large a supply of grain as possible. 17. We conquered this same tribe many years before, so that it is not proper to fear them now. 18. They defeated the Gauls more by strategy than by bravery. 19. But our armies will never be captured by this means. 20. I shall break camp at once, so that I may find out what legions will follow.

LESSON XII

Ablative with Deponent Verbs: 86.
Infinitive as Subject: 162, 163, 1, 164, 1.
Infinitive as Object: 162, 163, 2 and *a*, 164, 2 and *a*, *b*.

Exercise

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion desired to follow Caesar. 2. (It) was not necessary (for) Caesar to order them to march. 3. They were accustomed to undergo dangers. 4. On this account they were willing to start out at once. 5. They were not afraid that (there) was a scarcity of food. 6. And they were prepared to go by whichever road (it) had been decided to send them. 7. And so he ordered

Diviciacus to find out what road was the best. 8. They employed Diviciacus as guide and marched for seven days. 9. Ariovistus's troops at this time were not more than twenty miles away. 10. Caesar had come nearer so that Ariovistus desired to hold a conference. 11. (It) was decided by Caesar to do that which Ariovistus proposed. 12. Ariovistus was unwilling to bring to the conference any foot-soldiers. 13. And so Caesar did not hesitate to use his regular soldiers. 14. (It) seemed to him to be suitable to place them on horses. 15. For he did not dare to intrust his safety to the cavalry of the Gauls. 16. That he might be able to do this, he ordered many horses to be procured. 17. Therefore his soldiers secured all the Gallic horses, so that he had a very strong guard. 18. Thus he had the best possible guard. 19. For Ariovistus was prepared to employ treachery. 20. Because of these things, was it not proper (for) Caesar to use all his prudence?

LESSON XIII

Ablative of Accompaniment: 90.
Ablative of Manner: 91.
Ablative of Attendant Circumstance: 92.
Infinitive in Indirect Discourse: 153, 157.

Exercise

1. With these horsemen, Caesar said he would go to the conference. 2. (It) was reported that the conference was (attended) with great danger. 3. Ariovistus was ready to attack Caesar with great violence. 4. For this reason, Caesar had brought with him the tenth legion, which was well-known for its bravery. 5. All except a few men were further than two hundred paces away. 6. Ariovistus says that he is unwilling to come under any other plan.

7. Caesar will not dare to come without the tenth legion. 8. This legion at all times fought with the greatest bravery. 9. Because of Caesar's influence, Ariovistus had been called king by the Romans. 10. Caesar showed how the Aeduans had secured the control of Gaul. 11. He also said that they had held this power many years. 12. He said that the Romans would at all times help their allies. 13. Don't you think that we shall defend them with our greatest strength? 14. You will attack them with great danger. 15. A larger number of Germans will never cross the Rhine with our consent. 16. Ariovistus replied that these fields had been given him by the Gauls themselves. 17. I say that I have not accepted tribute from them wrongfully. 18. Do you realize that all their troops were defeated by my soldiers with great loss? 19. This (fact) shows why they have with great willingness paid me tribute. 20. With my army, I came into Gaul many years earlier than the Roman people.

LESSON XIV

Ablative (and Genitive) of Description: 94 with 1; 57 with *a*, *b*, *c*.
Ablative of Specification: 95.
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse: 156.

Exercise

1. Ariovistus was (a man) of great influence. 2. He had sent men of unfriendly disposition into Gaul. 3. He had tried with much [great] eagerness to drive Caesar out of Gaul. 4. At home we had very fertile fields and several months' supply of grain. 5. But rewards were offered to me by the Gauls of their (own) free-will. 6. I have learned that all the places in Gaul that are especially

fertile are held by the Romans. 7. I have tried to get possession of these fertile fields. 8. But the Gauls have not hesitated to wage war with my troops. 9. However, we have shown that we surpass in bravery the men who hold this locality. 10. The friendship of the Roman people ought to help me. 11. With this hope, I have come to talk with Caesar. 12. I realize that a large number of Germans have crossed the river. 13. You see that they are (men) of very great size of bodies and of extraordinary bravery. 14. They are men like in character but unlike in customs. 15. They are men of like character but of unlike customs. 16. You said that the Aeduans, to whom you had given rewards, had been called your brothers. 17. But I know that, in the war which you waged with the Allobroges, the Romans did not enjoy the Aeduans' aid. 18. I suspect that you keep this army, which you have in Gaul, that you may crush me. 19. I swear that I shall call you my enemy and not my friend. 20. I am informed that (there) are many Romans whose gratitude I am able to purchase by your death.

LESSON XV

Participles: 166.
Ablative Absolute: 96 with 1.

Exercise

(Each of the first twelve sentences contains an ablative absolute.)

1. After this speech was delivered by Ariovistus, Caesar replied. 2. While I was consul, the Aeduans sought our friendship. 3. Now that the fields of the Aeduans have been ravaged, I shall not desert them. 4. Having defeated the Aeduans, you will get possession of their largest towns.

5. With Gaul conquered, I fear you may try to overrun the Roman province. 6. After you have been sent home, I shall allow the Aeduans to enjoy their own laws. 7. When these words had been spoken, (it) was announced that Ariovistus's cavalry was approaching. 8. The conference dismissed, Caesar withdrew to the tenth legion. 9. Because these things had been done, a much greater eagerness arose. 10. If an attack is made by Ariovistus, we shall fight with all our courage. 11. But with the tenth legion helping, we can fight without great danger. 12. However, I fear that an attack may be made on our other friends. 13. A few days afterwards, Ariovistus desired ambassadors to be sent to him. 14. He said (there) were many things which he wished to discuss with Caesar. 15. These matters were of much importance [pertained very much] both to Caesar and to himself. 16. (It) was decided to send Valerius, who was a young (man) of extraordinary wisdom. 17. Caesar knew that this (man) was able to use the Gallic language. 18. Valerius, having advanced to Ariovistus, was asked why he had come. 19. But Ariovistus stopped him as he tried to reply. 20. Thrown into chains, he was made a prisoner.

LESSON XVI

Dative with Intransitive Verbs: 64 with *a*, *c*, *d*.
Dative with Compound Verbs: 65.

Exercise

1. Will Ariovistus harm this ambassador? 2. Caesar will not pardon Ariovistus, will he? 3. Ariovistus will not be pardoned by Caesar. 4. Did not Valerius resist those who made him prisoner? 5. Those men were resisted by

Valerius. 6. Ariovistus desired power more than booty. 7. And so he made war upon the Aeduans, whom Caesar had favored. 8. Caesar encouraged the tenth legion, which he had trusted. 9. Caesar trusted the tenth legion, which he had encouraged. 10. The tenth legion was greatly trusted and indulged by Caesar. 11. With this legion, he will be able to meet the attack of those who wish to harm him. 12. He knows that those whom he has favored will help him. 13. In a short time, he will be in command of the auxiliaries which the Aeduans will [have] sent to him. 14. Ariovistus broke camp and withdrew several miles. 15. Caesar's army crossed the river and, for five successive days, he displayed his men to Ariovistus. 16. But Ariovistus did not wish to fight with an army of so extraordinary bravery. 17. However, within these few days, a part of his troops fought in cavalry battles with the Gallic horsemen. 18. He was afraid that he was not able to resist the army over which Caesar had been placed in command. 19. He thought he would not meet the enemy but would stay in the camp which he had built. 20. This plan having been decided upon, he kept his men there for several days.

LESSON XVII

Dative of Possessor: 68.
Dative of Purpose: 69.
Dative with Adjectives: 70.

Exercise

1. The Germans were very unlike the Romans in the method of battle which they employed. 2. For the sake of his own safety, each cavalryman chose a foot-soldier. 3. Because of his training, the latter was able to equal the

speed of the former. 4. For another camp, Caesar found a place which was next to the enemy. 5. In all matters this place was suitable for a camp. 6. He ordered one line to fortify the camp with a twelve foot wall. 7. He drew up two battle lines as a protection to the others. 8. An attack having been made on the third line, Caesar sent the others as a reënforcement to them. 9. Thus this part of the army was [for] a help and not a hindrance to the other. 10. With this smaller camp fortified, Caesar withdrew to the larger camp. 11. Caesar had two redoubts. [Translate in two ways.] 12. Each camp had a wall and a ditch. [Translate in two ways.] 13. Caesar thought that the smaller camp would be a (source of) loss to the enemy. 14. Caesar asked why Ariovistus had not fought-a-decisive-battle. 15. He asked the same (question) of several Germans who were friendly to him. 16. He found out that the lots did not favor a battle. 17. For many years, we have considered the lots as a (source of) safety to us. 18. We have consulted them often, so that we may not be harmed by our enemies. 19. This custom has been of [for] great use to us. 20. The Romans also have customs like this. [Translate in two ways.]

LESSON XVIII

Gerund and Gerundive: 166, 2, *b*, 167, 168, 169.
Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: 43, 2.
Dative of Agent: 67.

Exercise

1. Soldiers had to be left by Caesar as a guard for each camp. 2. He then advanced toward the enemies' camp for the purpose of fighting. 3. He had a smaller number

of soldiers than the enemy. 4. For this reason, the auxiliaries had to be drawn up by Caesar. 5. To [**ad**] strengthen their courage, the Germans drew up their line so that kinsmen stood together. 6. Carts were placed around the entire line, so that no [not any] hope of fleeing might be left. 7. On the carts [**in** with the abl.] they placed women to [**ad**] encourage the men. 8. Caesar went away to the right wing for the sake of encouraging his army. 9. (The battle) was fought so fiercely that opportunity for [of] withdrawing was not given. 10. The Germans received the attack by making a phalanx. 11. More men had to be summoned by the commander to the right wing. 12. The third line had to be sent by Crassus as a reënforcement to our men. 13. Finally by advancing rapidly our men routed the enemy. 14. They fled fifteen miles to the river Rhine. 15. Some threw themselves into the river to save themselves. 16. Others finding boats escaped in [by] them. 17. No opportunity for [of] collecting themselves ought to be given to the enemy. 18. The Roman cavalry overtaking the rest slew (them) all. 19. Caesar himself, in pursuing the enemy, happened upon [**in**] Valerius. 20. Great was Caesar's (good) fortune in seeing Valerius.

LESSON XIX

Genitive of the Whole: 55 entire.

Exercise

1. We have learned that the Belgians are a third part of Gaul. 2. They were one of the well-known tribes. 3. Certain (ones) of them formed a conspiracy against the Romans. 4. Caesar asked what the causes of the conspiring were. 5. The Belgians feared that in-the-first-

place all (of) the Gauls would be conquered. 6. After this is done [abl. abs.], the Roman army will harass us by laying waste our fields. 7. We have sufficient [of] bravery so that we can keep them out. 8. But we ought to have more soldiers. 9. Many of our prominent men desire a revolution more than peace. 10. They have larger resources for hiring men than the others. 11. Caesar was informed that those who were making the conspiracy were of great influence. 12. Aroused by these rumors, he decided that more grain must be purchased. 13. A few of his soldiers were sent by Caesar to [**ad**] purchase grain. 14. Caesar knew that the Belgians were the bravest of all the Gauls. 15. For this reason, the largest possible number of soldiers had to be collected. 16. Therefore he ordered one of his lieutenants to lead two legions into Gaul. 17. He also ordered the Senones, who lived nearest the Belgians, to find out whether a conspiracy had been formed. 18. They reported that a very large number of men were being collected. 19. Then Caesar did not hesitate to start out with all the troops that he was able to collect. 20. He arrived at the Belgians' territory within a very short time.

LESSON XX

Subjective Genitive: 53.
Objective Genitive: 54.
Genitive with Adjectives: 58.

Exercise

1. Because of the memory of Caesar's victories, the Remi sent ambassadors to him. 2. (In) the beginning of their speech, they said the Remi would give all (of) their (things) to Caesar. 3. We do not dare to fight with the

leader of so great an army. 4. We are not skilled in war and we desire peace. 5. With your consent, we shall allow your army to come into our towns. 6. We are desirous of helping you with supplies. 7. Our eagerness for [of] peace was so great that we did not conspire with the other Belgians. 8. Will the wrongdoings of the other tribes be a (source of) loss to us? 9. Caesar found out that a large number of the Belgians had sprung from the Germans. 10. Because of the scarcity of supplies, they had crossed the Rhine. 11. Upon the arrival of the Belgians, the Gauls had been driven out. 12. Within the memory of their fathers, they had been able to keep off the attacks of the Cimbri. 13. The flight of the Cimbri had given them much influence. 14. The Remi knew how great a number of men each tribe had promised in the council of the Belgians. 15 They said that the Bellovaci were desirous of the control of the entire war. 16. But they were not more skilled in fighting than the Suessiones, who lived next to them. 17. A few years before Diviciacus had been king, but at this time they had made Galba king. 18. This man had much wisdom. [Translate in two ways.] 19. He was more influenced by eagerness for [of] power than by hope of peace. 20. He had promised many thousand men as an aid to his neighbors.

LESSON XXI

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 145 with *a*.
Relative Clauses of Purpose: 123 with 3 and 4.

Exercise

1. Caesar urged the Remi to [that they should] bring as hostages the children of prominent men. 2. He decided

that he would not allow larger forces of the enemy to be collected. 3. He ordered the Aeduans to [that they should] advance to the territory of the Bellovaci. 4. This was done that they might the more easily lay waste their territory. 5. He learned that all the Belgians' forces, which they had collected, were coming toward him. 6. He sent scouts to [who were to] find out how far they had advanced. 7. Then his army crossed the river so that supplies could be brought to him without danger. 8. He left Titurius on the other side [**pars**] to [who was to] keep the enemy from the bridge. 9. The Belgians began to attack a town of the Remi, Bibrax by name. 10. They stripped the walls of men so that they might come nearer. 11. So many stones were thrown that no one could remain on the wall. 12. In-the-early-part-of [**prīmus**] the night Iccius, one of the Remi, sent messengers to Caesar. 13. These messengers were sent to say that he could not hold out much longer. 14. He begged that soldiers should be sent as a reënforcement to him. 15. At midnight Caesar ordered [**imperō**] the Numidians to start out. 16. Upon their arrival, the eagerness of the Remi was increased. 17. For the same reason, no hope of storming the town was left to the Belgians. 18. And so, after delaying for a few days near Bibrax, they came toward Caesar with all their troops. 19. They pitched camp (after) having advanced six miles. 20. The Belgians' camp was much larger than Caesar's.

LESSON XXII

Various Ways of Expressing Purpose:

With **ut, nē, quō,** or a Relative Pronoun: 123 entire.
With Substantive Clause: 145 with *a*.
With Supine: 170 *a*.

Exercise

1. (There) were more soldiers in the enemies' camp than in Caesar's. 2. And so Caesar warned his men that they should not fight with the enemy. 3. But by daily cavalry battles, he tried to find out how brave the enemy was. 4. He found out that they were no [by nothing] braver than our men. 5. He ordered [**iubeō**] his soldiers to make a ditch from each side of the hill which was in-front-of the camp. 6. Then he ordered them to put up redoubts at-the-ends-of the ditches. 7. This was done for the sake of fortifying the camp. 8. He left the two legions which he had last enrolled in the camp, so that they could be led out as a reënforcement. 9. The other six legions, which he greatly trusted, he ordered to be stationed in-front-of the camp. 10. The enemy also advanced to fight. [Use supine.] 11. Each army delayed to find out what the other would do. 12. Each hesitated to fight for so long a time that Caesar led his men back into camp. 13. The enemy then tried to cross the river to storm a redoubt. 14. Caesar sent the Numidians to prevent them. [Translate in three ways.] 15. Then he led out the entire army to drive them back. [Translate in three ways.] 16. (The battle) in the river was so fiercely fought that a very large number of the enemy was slain. 17. Our men crossed the river to pursue the others. [Translate in three ways.] 18. The enemy, having called together a council, decided that they

would return home. 19. They decided upon this so that they might fight-it-out at home and use their (own) supplies. 20. Their leader could not persuade them to delay longer.

LESSON XXIII

Substantive Clauses of Result: 148.
Clauses of Characteristic: 125 with *a*.

Exercise

1. This plan having been decided upon, the enemy started out of the camp with much noise. 2. (It) was brought to pass by this noise that the departure was very similar to a flight. 3. (It) happened that Caesar, fearing treachery, had not allowed his men to follow. 4. He did not understand why the enemy had gone away so quickly. 5. He therefore sent scouts ahead to find out. [Translate in three ways.] 6. These scouts reported that the enemy, who had started out a little (while) before, had hidden in the woods. 7. The result was, because of this news, that Caesar sent all (of) his cavalry ahead. 8. He ordered [**imperō**] Labienus to follow closely with three legions. 9. Thus it was brought to pass that many were killed in flight. 10. At that time it was decided that those who had hidden should start out for home. 11. (There) are some who think that these men were very cowardly. 12. But there was no food in this place which they could give to their men. 13. And (there) was also the additional fact that they could not hold out longer without food. 14. (There) were few who were not desirous of returning home. 15. Meanwhile the arrival of the Roman army brought it to pass that the rest did not dare to delay longer. 16. The Suessiones were now almost the only (ones) who

had not surrendered themselves to Caesar. 17. And so (it) happened that Caesar at once hastened to them by forced marches. 18. But at first he was not able to storm their town, although there were few defending it [abl. abs.]. 19. Finally, however, they said they would surrender the arms which Caesar desired. 20. Then they obtained their request that they should not be killed.

LESSON XXIV

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering, etc.: 147.
Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Doubting: 149 with *a*.

Exercise

1. Caesar did not refuse to [but that he would] receive them into surrender. 2. Nor did he hesitate to lead his army against the Bellovaci. 3. Caesar did not doubt that they would surrender themselves at once. 4. Nothing will hinder the Bellovaci from coming [but that they will come] into his power. 5. Suspicion was not lacking that they had heard (of) Caesar's victories. 6. These rumors prevent them from making [so that they will not make] an attack on Caesar. 7. Many prominent men say that the Aeduans have been made slaves by Caesar. 8. Because of their influence, the Bellovaci had revolted from the Aeduans. 9. These men can not be restrained from saying [but that they will say] these things. 10. Caesar, after receiving their surrender [abl. abs.], demanded [**impĕrō**] of them six hundred hostages. 11. Caesar then advanced to the territory of the Nervii, concerning whom he asked many (questions.) 12. He found out that their customs prevented them from being [so that they should not be] cowardly. 13. They said that

they would not refuse to fight with Caesar. **14.** We shall try to prevent you from harming [so that you will not harm] our homes and children. **15.** We shall prevent those who are unfriendly to us from coming [so that they shall not come] into our territory. **16.** Caesar thought that he must make war [passive] upon the Nervii. **17.** And so he sent scouts to choose a place for a camp. [Translate in three ways.] **18.** Several of the Gauls who had been with Caesar pointed out to the Nervii how they could capture one of Caesar's legions. **19.** They did not doubt that Caesar's legions could be captured one at a time. **20.** The Nervii did not hesitate to try this plan.

LESSON XXV

Temporal Clauses:

With **postquam**, etc.: 126.
With **dum**, etc.: 127, *a*, *c*.
With **cum**: 129 with *a*.

Exercise

1. As soon as Caesar had found this out, he arranged his line of march otherwise. **2.** For when he approached the enemy, he used-to-lead his army unencumbered. **3.** He did not doubt that the enemy would attack him. **4.** But after his men were drawn up for [**ad**] fighting, the enemy hesitated to make an attack. **5.** At this time, when six legions were marching light-armed, two other legions served [were] as a protection to the baggage. **6.** After our men had crossed the river, they engaged in battle with the enemies' cavalry. **7.** After a fierce battle had been fought, the cavalry withdrew to the woods. **8.** And our men waited until they should advance again.

9. Until they have been driven from the woods, no attack will be made upon them. 10. When the scouts had chosen a place suitable for a camp, the six legions began to fortify it. 11. As soon as our baggage was seen by the enemy, they advanced with all their troops. 12. When our cavalry had been routed, they, with great violence, made an attack against the six legions. 13. All these things were done while the six legions were pitching camp. 14. On account of the enemies' speed, everything had to be done by Caesar in the shortest possible time. 15. The enemy advanced so quickly that our men did not wait until Caesar sent his orders. 16. Caesar ordered [**iubeō**] the lieutenants to remain with [**apud**] their legions until the camp had been fortified. 17. Caesar came while the battle raged fiercely [it was being fiercely fought]. 18. After Caesar came, he urged the soldiers that they should bravely withstand the enemies' attack. 19. He knew that he could trust an army of so great bravery. 20. When he went away in another direction to [**ad**] encourage them, he found them already fighting.

LESSON XXVI

Causal Clauses:

With **quod**: 130.
With **cum**: 132.

Exercise

1. Because the time was very short, each soldier fought near [**ad**] the standards he saw first. 2. The time was so short that our men were hindered from seeking [so that they should not seek] their own standards. 3. Since the

legions were fighting in various places, they could not carry out [**facere**] Caesar's commands at the same time. 4. Because of the many trees, (it) resulted that all of the legions could not be seen by one man. 5. When the Atrebates had been exhausted by wounds, they were driven into the river. 6. While they were trying to cross the river, our men killed a large number of them. 7. Because our men had advanced into an unfavorable place, the enemy tried again to resist them. 8. But after they had begun again to fight, they were routed. 9. (It) happened also that two other legions had routed the Viromandui. 10. When they had been driven from the higher place, they fought on the very bank of the river. 11. The enemy could not be prevented from stripping [but that they should strip] our ramparts of soldiers. 12. The Nervii advanced to attack the camp. [Translate in three ways.] 13. Since the ramparts had been stripped of soldiers, certain (ones) of the Nervii advanced. 14. They did not doubt that they could gain possession of the camp. 15. Because those who were on the top of the hill saw that our men were victors, they hurried from the camp for the sake of plundering. 16. But when they saw the enemy in our camp, they fled headlong. 17. On account of the noise of those who were coming with the baggage, it resulted that many fled. 18. The Treveri, who were especially skilled in war, fled because they found out that our camp was filled with the enemy. 19. They did not wish to wait until they should be killed. 20. Because the Romans were fleeing in all directions, they thought that we had been conquered.

LESSON XXVII

Concessive Clauses:

With **etsī**: 134.
With **cum**: 135.

Exercise

1. When Caesar had come to the right wing, he found that his soldiers were hard pressed. 2. He warned them that they should not fight with their ranks so compact. 3. Although they were fighting very bravely, they were being conquered. 4. (There) were some who were not able to stand. 5. But although they were exhausted with wounds, they were resisting the enemy. 6. Caesar himself advanced to the front [first] rank because (there) was no aid that could be sent. 7. He thought that the enemies' attack could be stopped, though matters seemed to be at a crisis. 8. Because time was short, he snatched a shield; he himself had come there without a shield. 9. When he had arrived at the front rank, he ordered [**imperō**] the centurions to fight with open ranks. 10. This was done that they might the more easily use their swords. 11. Though the Romans had been hard pressed, Caesar's arrival gave them hope of victory. 12. No one doubted that they had soldiers enough. 13. But their method of fighting had prevented them from conquering [so that they should not conquer]. 14. The result was that the enemies' attack was stopped. 15. Although the enemy had ceased from the attack on one side, Caesar found out that the seventh legion was being hard pressed. 16. He warned the tribunes that they should gradually bring their forces together. 17. When this is [will have been] done, you will no longer fear that you will be surrounded by the enemy. 18. Al-

though the enemy is very brave, they have not more bravery than the Romans. 19. When Labienus had gained possession of the enemies' camp, he sent the tenth legion as a reënforcement to our men. 20. As soon as they found out that our men were in danger, they hurried with the greatest possible speed.

LESSON XXVIII

Conditions: 136, 137, 138, 139, 140.

Exercise

1. If we have encouraged you by our words, we have helped you. 2. And if we are able to help you, we are grateful. 3. If you [shall] desire more aid, we shall send reënforcement to you. 4. If we should receive reënforcement, we should begin again to fight. 5. If we had more aid now, we should be willing to fight. 6. If aid had been sent to us earlier, we should not have fled. 7. But we shall not be cowardly, even if we [shall] fight alone. 8. If the enemy were not so brave, we should now be victors. 9. When the front rank of the enemy fell, other soldiers fought from their bodies. 10. They are (men) of so great bravery that they can not be easily conquered. 11. (It) resulted from this battle that almost all (of) the Nervii were killed. 12. If they should try to fight again, (there) would be few who would be able to bear arms. 13. Because they were thoroughly frightened, those who survived sent ambassadors to Caesar. 14. Though they had long been enemies of the Roman people, Caesar received them into surrender. 15. He will allow them to occupy their own towns, if they [shall] desire. 16. If their neighbors should try to harm them, he would stop them. 17. Unless Caesar

had been an extraordinary commander, the Romans would have been conquered. 18. Would not Caesar be considered extraordinary, if he were a general now? 19. Did his army at any time conquer a braver enemy than the Nervii? 20. Would the Nervii have conquered the Romans if they had had more [of] training?

LESSON XXIX

Conditions in Indirect Discourse: 153, 156, 157, 158.

Exercise

1. (*a*) If Caesar fights, he conquers. (*b*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīcō**. (*c*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīxī**. 2. (*a*) If Caesar has fought, he has conquered. (*b*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīcō**. (*c*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīxī**. 3. (*a*) If Caesar fights [future], he will conquer. (*b*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīcō**. (*c*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīxī**. 4. (*a*) If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. (*b*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīcō**. (*c*) Write (*a*) depending on **dīxī**. 5. If the Aduatuci heard (of) that battle, they returned home. 6. I shall tell you that, if the Aduatuci heard (of) that battle, they returned home. 7. Although their town was surrounded by fortifications, on one side [**pars**] (there) was an easy approach. 8. When we were approaching the walls, they made several sallies out of the town. 9. If we [shall] resist them very bravely, we shall gain possession of the town. 10. Caesar said that, if his men should resist them very bravely, they would get possession of the town. 11. After we had built a tower, we began to move it toward the wall. 12. The Aduatuci thought that, if we were able to do this, we had the help of the gods. 13. The result was that they sent ambassa-

dors and surrendered [themselves] to Caesar. **14.** If they had not done this, Caesar would have captured the entire tribe. **15.** They did not wait until an attack was made upon them. **16.** They thought that, if they should ask (for) Caesar's help, he would give it to them. **17.** They begged that he should not strip them of their arms. **18.** They realized that, if they were [should be] stripped of their arms, their neighbors would easily conquer them. **19.** Do you think that, if they should surrender their arms, the enemy would attack them? **20.** Who doubts that they will suffer many wrongs?

LESSON XXX

Commands: 161.
Commands in Indirect Discourse: 154.
Questions in Indirect Discourse: 155.

Exercise

1. Caesar replied that he would spare them, if they should surrender [themselves] at once. **2.** But I shall not spare you, unless you give up all your arms. **3.** Surrender your arms at once, if you desire peace. **4.** Don't think that otherwise I shall spare you. **5.** He told them that they should announce this to their (people). **6.** Go home and tell your people what [that which] I have said. **7.** After they have replied to you, return as quickly as possible. **8.** (Tell them to) talk with their chiefs concerning these matters. **9.** In the conference some one asked [said], with a great shout, what Caesar wanted. **10.** (He said), did he think that they would give up all their arms? **11.** But others replied that they thould do the things that Caesar had commanded. **12.** (Report to him that) our

neighbors should not harm us. **13.** If he will promise that, nothing will prevent us from surrendering [but that we shall surrender] our arms. **14.** After they had returned to Caesar, he received them into surrender. **15.** But (it) was afterwards found out that they had kept a third [part] of their arms. **16.** Although they made a fierce attack upon us, the others were driven back into the town with great loss [many having been killed]. **17.** Caesar told his lieutenants that they should sell those who survived into slavery. **18.** He said that they should not allow any to escape. **19.** (He said), why had they employed such [this] treachery? **20.** With all these things completed in one summer [abl. abs.], Caesar went into winter quarters.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

For distinction in meaning, consult Latin-English Vocabulary.

A

able: be able, *possum.*
abstain, *mihi*, etc., *temperō*, *abstineō.*
accept, *accipiō; recipiō.*
account: (on this) account, *quam ob rem;* (on) account (of), *propter; ob.*
accustomed: become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō.*
across, *trāns.*
additional: (there is the) additional (fact), *accēdit.*
advance, *prōcēdō; prōgredior.*
Aeduan, *Aeduus.*
afraid: be afraid, *timeō.*
after (conjunction), *postquam.*
afterwards, *posteā.*
again, *iterum.*
against, *in* (with accusative).
aid, *auxilium.*
all, *omnis.*
allow, *patior.*
ally, *socius.*
almost, *paene.*
alone, *sōlus.*
Alps, *Alpēs.*
already, *iam.*
also, *etiam; quoque.*
although, *etsī; cum.*
am, *sum.*
ambassador, *lēgātus.*
among, *apud.*
amount, *cōpia.*
and, *atque; et; -que.*
and so, *itaque.*
announce, *nūntiō.*
another, *alius.*
any, *aliquis; ūllus.*
approach (noun), *aditus.*
approach (verb), *accēdō; appropinquō.*
arise, *orior.*
arms, *arma.*
army, *exercitus.*
arouse, *commoveō.*
arrange, *cōnstituō.*
arrival, *adventus.*
arrive, *perveniō.*
ascend, *ascendō.*
ask, *quaerō; rogō.*
as soon as, *ubi.*
attack (noun), *impetus.*
attack (verb), *impetum faciō; oppugnō.*
attempt, *temptō.*
auxiliary, *auxilia.*
away: be away, *absum.*

B

baggage, *impedīmenta.*
bank, *rīpa.*
barbarian, *barbarus.*
battle, *proelium.*
battle line, *aciēs.*
bear, *ferō.*

because, *quod*.
because of, *propter; ob*.
before (prep.), *ante*; (adv.), *anteā*.
beg, *ōrō*.
begin, *incipiō*; **began**, *coepī*.
beginning, *initium*.
Belgian, *Belga*.
boat, *nāvis*.
body, *corpus*.
booty, *praeda*.
both, *uterque*, sing.
both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
bound, *contineō*.
brave, *fortis*.
bravery, *virtūs*.
break (camp), *moveō*.
bridge, *pōns*.
brief, *brevis*.
bring, *dūcō; addūcō; comportō*.
bring together, *condūcō; coniungō*.
bring to pass, *efficiō*.
brother, *frāter*.
build, *faciō*.
building, *aedificium*.
but, *sed*.
but that, *quīn*.

C

call, *appellō*.
call together, *convocō*.
camp, *castra*.
canton, *pāgus*.
capture, *capiō*.
cart, *carrus*.
cause, *causa*.
cavalry (noun), *equitātus*; (adjective), *equester*.
cease, *dēsistō*.
centurion, *centuriō*.
certain (one), *quīdam*.
chain, *catēna*.
character, *nātūra*.
check, *impediō*.
chief, *princeps*.
chieftain, *prīnceps*.
child, *puer*.
children (free), *līberī*.
choose, *dēligō*.
citizens, *cīvitās*.
client, *cliēns*.
collect, *cōgō*.
come, *veniō*.
command, *imperō; iubeō*.
command: (be in) command (of), *praesum*; **(place in) command**, *praeficiō*.
commander, *imperātor*.
compact, *cōnfertus*.
complete, *cōnficiō*.
concerning, *dē*.
conference, *colloquium*.
conquer, *vincō*.
consent, *voluntās*.
consider, *habeō*.
conspiracy, *coniūrātiō*.
conspire, *coniūrō*.
construct, *perdūcō*.
consul, *cōnsul*.
consult, *cōnsulō*.
control, *imperium*.
council, *concilium*.
courage, *virtūs*.
cowardice, *timor*.
cowardly, *timidus*.
crisis: (at a) crisis, *in angustō*.
critical, *necessārius*.
cross, *trānseō*.
crush, *opprimō*.
custom, *mōs*.

D

daily (adjective), *cotīdiānus*.
danger, *perīculum*.

dare, *audeō*.
daughter, *fīlia*.
day, *diēs*; (**within two**) **days**, *bīduō*.
daybreak: (**at**) **daybreak**, *prīmā lūce*.
death, *mors*.
decide, *cōnstituō*.
deep, *altus*.
defeat, *superō*; **suffer defeat**, *superor*.
defend, *dēfendō*.
delay, *moror*; (with *quīn*) *cunctor*.
deliver (**a speech**), *habeō*.
demand, *postulō*.
depart, *discēdō*.
departure, *profectiō*.
deprive, *prīvō*.
desert, *dēserō*.
desire, *cupiō*; *studeō*.
desirous, *cupidus*.
differ, *differō*.
direction, *pars*.
discuss, *agō*.
dismiss, *dīmittō*.
display, *ostendō*.
disposition, *animus*.
disturb, *perturbō*.
ditch, *fossa*.
do, *faciō*.
doubt, *dubitō*.
draw up, *īnstruō*.
drive, *pellō*.
drive back, *repellō*.
drive out, *expellō*.
duty, *officium*.

E

each, *quisque*; (of two), *uterque*.
eagerness, *studium*.
early (adverb), *mātūrē*.
easily, *facile*.
easy, *facilis*.
embassy, *lēgātiō*.
employ, *ūtor*.
encourage, *cohortor*.
engage (**in**), *committō*.
enjoy, *ūtor*.
enough, *satis*.
enroll, *cōnscrībō*.
entire, *tōtus*.
equal, *adaequō*.
escape, *mē*, etc., *ēripiō*.
especially, *maximē*.
establish, *cōnfīrmō*.
even, *etiam*.
everything, *omnia*.
except, *praeter*.
exhaust, *cōnficiō*.
extraordinary, *īnsīgnis*.

F

fact, *rēs*.
fall, *cadō*.
far, *longē*.
farther, *ulterior*.
farthermost, *extrēmus*.
father, *pater*.
favor, *faveō*.
fear (noun), *timor*.
fear (verb), *timeō*; *vereor*.
fertile, *frūmentārius*.
few, *paucī*.
field, *ager*.
fierce, *ācer*.
fiercely, *ācriter*.
fifteen, *quīndecim*.
fight, *pugnō*.
fight a decisive battle, *dēcertō*.
fight it out, *dēcertō*.
fill, *compleō*.
finally, *tandem*.
find (come to meet), *occurrō*; **find**

(general), *reperiō;* **find** (by chance), *nancīscor.*
find out, *cōgnōscō.*
first (adjective), *prīmus.*
first (adverb), *prīmum;* **(in the) first (place),** *prīmum.*
five, *quīnque.*
flee, *fugiō.*
flight, *fuga.*
follow, *sequor.*
follow closely, *subsequor.*
food, *cibus.*
foot, *pēs.*
foot soldier, *pedes.*
for, *nam.*
ford, *vadum.*
form, *faciō.*
former, *ille.*
fortification, *mūnītiō.*
fortify, *mūniō.*
fortune, *fortūna.*
four hundred, *quadringentī.*
free, *līber.*
free will: (of one's) free will, *sponte.*
friend, *amīcus.*
friendly (adjective), *amīcus.*
friendship, *amīcitia.*
frighten thoroughly, *perterreō.*
from: away from, *ā, ab;* **down from,** *dē;* **out from,** *ē, ex.*
front: (in) front (of), *prō.*
further, *amplius.*

G

gain (possession of), *potior.*
Gallic, *Gallicus.*
Gaul (country), *Gallia;* (inhabitant), *Gallus.*
Geneva, *Genava.*
give, *dō.*
give orders, *mandō.*
give up, *trādō.*
go, *eō.*
go away, *discēdō.*
god, *deus.*
go forth, *exeō.*
gradually, *paulātim.*
grain, *frūmentum.*
grain (in the fields), *frūmenta.*
grain supply, *rēs frūmentāria.*
grateful: (be) grateful, *grātiam habeō.*
gratitude, *grātia.*
great, *magnus;* **(so) great,** *tantus.*
greatly, *magnopere.*
grieve, *doleō.*
guard, *praesidium.*
guide, *dux.*

H

happen: (it) happens, *accidit.*
happen upon, *incidō in* (with accusative).
harass, *vexō.*
hard press, *premō.*
harm, *noceō.*
hasten, *contendō.*
haughtily, *superbē.*
haughty, *superbus.*
have, *habeō.*
headlong, *praeceps.*
hear (of), *audiō.*
help: (verb), *iuvō, adsum;* (noun), *auxilium.*
Helvetian, *Helvētius.*
here, *hīc.*
hesitate, *dubitō.*
hide, *abdō* (transitive); *mē,* etc., *abdō* (intransitive).
high, *superus.*
hill, *collis.*

himself, *ipse;* (of) **himself**, *suī.*
hinder, *impediō.*
hindrance, *impedīmentum.*
hire, *condūcō.*
his (own), *suus.*
hold, *habeō.*
hold out, *sustineō.*
home, *domus.*
hope, *spēs.*
horse, *equus.*
horseman, *eques.*
hostage, *obses.*
how (modifying adjectives or adverbs), *quam;* (modifying verb), *quōmodo.*
however, *autem* (postpositive).
hurry, *contendō.*

I

I, *ego.*
if, *sī.*
in, *in* (with abl.).
increase (transitive), *augeō;* (intransitive), *augeor.*
indulge, *indulgeō.*
influence (noun), *auctōritās.*
influence (verb), *addūcō; commoveō.*
inform (some one), (*aliquem*) *certiōrem faciō.*
inhabit, *incolō.*
injury, *iniūria.*
into, *in* (with acc.).
intrust, *committō.*
Italy, *Ītalia.*

J

journey, *iter.*

K

keep, *teneō.*
keep off, *prohibeō.*
keep out, *prohibeō.*
kill, *interficiō.*
kind deed, *beneficium.*
king, *rēx.*
kinsman, *propinquus.*
know (perfect systems of), *nōscō, cōgnōscō.*
known, *nōtus.*

L

lacking: (am) **lacking**, *absum.*
lake, *lacus.*
land, *terra; ager.*
language, *lingua.*
large, *magnus.*
last (adverb), *proximē.*
late in the day, *multō diē.*
latter, *hīc.*
law, *lēx.*
lay waste, *populor.*
lead, *dūcō.*
lead back, *redūcō.*
leader, *dux.*
lead out, *ēdūcō.*
learn, *cōgnōscō.*
leave behind, *relinquō.*
legion, *legiō.*
less: (by which the) **less**, *quōminus.*
lieutenant, *lēgātus.*
light-armed, *expedītus.*
like, *similis.*
line of battle, *aciēs.*
line of march, *agmen.*
little (adverb), *paulō.*
live, *incolō.*
locality, *regiō.*
long, *longus.*
long (time), *diū.*
loss, *calamitās; dētrīmentum.*
lot, *sors.*

M

magistrate, *magistrātus.*
make, *faciō.*

make war, *bellum īnferō*.
man, *homō; vir*.
many, *multī*; (**so**) **many**, *tot*.
march (noun), *iter*; (**forced**) **march**, *magnum iter*.
march (verb), *iter facere*.
Marne, *Matrona*.
matter, *rēs*.
means, *rēs*.
meanwhile, *intereā*.
meet, *occurrō* (with dative).
memory, *memoria*.
message, *nūntius*.
messenger, *nūntius*.
method, *genus*.
middle, *medius* (adjective).
midnight, *media nox*.
mile, *mīlle passūs*.
miles, *mīlia passuum*.
mind, *animus*.
month, *mēnsis*.
more (adverb), *amplius; magis*.
mountain, *mōns*.
move, *moveō*.
much (adverb), *multō*; (**very**) **much**, *maximē; plūrimum*.

N

name, *nōmen*.
narrow, *angustus*.
nation, *populus*.
near (adverb), *prope*.
nearest (adj.), *proximus*.
necessary: (**is**) **necessary**, *necesse est*.
neighbor, *fīnitimus*.
neighboring, *fīnitimus*.
neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque*.
never, *numquam*.
news, *nūntius*.
next: (adj.), *proximus*; (**on the**) **next** (**day**), *postrīdiē*.
night, *nox*.
no, *nūllus*; (before comparatives), *nihilō*.
nobles, *nōbilitās*.
noise, *strepitus*.
no one, *nēmō*.
nor, *neque* (*nec*).
not, *nōn*.
nothing, *nihil*.
not yet, *nōndum*.
now, *iam*; (of present time), *nunc*.
number, *numerus*.
Numidian, *Numida*.

O

obtain one's request, *impetrō*.
occupy, *teneō; obtineō*.
offer, *offerō*.
often, *saepe*.
once: (**at**) **once**, *statim*.
one, *ūnus*.
one . . . another, *alius . . . alius*.
one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter*.
one at a time, *singulī*.
only, *sōlus*.
open, *apertus*.
opportunity, *facultās*.
order: (verb), *imperō; iubeō*; (noun), *imperātum*.
other (of several), *alius*; (of two), *alter*; (**the**) **other**, *reliquus; cēterī*.
otherwise, *aliter*.
ought, *dēbeō; oportet*.
overlook, *neglegō*.
overrun, *vexō*.
overtake, *cōnsequor*.

P

pace, *passus*.
panic-stricken, *perterritus; perturbātus*.

pardon, *īgnōscō*.
part, *pars*.
pay, *pendō*.
peace, *pāx*.
people, *populus*.
persuade, *persuādeō*.
pertain, *pertineō*.
phalanx, *phalanx*.
pitch (camp), *pōnō*.
place, *pōnō*.
place around, *circumdō*.
plan, *cōnsilium ; ratiō*.
plunder, *praedor*.
point out, *dēmōnstrō*.
power, *potestās*.
powerful, *potēns*.
prepare, *comparō*.
prepared, *parātus*.
present, *praemium*.
prevent, *dēterreō ; impediō*.
prisoner, *captīvus*.
procure, *comparō*.
prominent man, *prīnceps*.
promise, *polliceor*.
proper: (**it is**) **proper**, *oportet*.
propose, *prōpōnō*.
protection, *praesidium*.
province, *prōvincia*.
prudence, *cōnsilium*.
punish (some one), *animadvertō* (*in aliquem*).
purchase, *redimō*.
pursue, *sequor*.
put to death, *interficiō*.
put up, *cōnstituō*.

Q

quickly, *celeriter*.

R

rampart, *vāllum*.
rank, *ōrdō*.
rapidly, *celeriter*.
ravage, *populor*.
ready, *parātus*.
realize, *sentiō*.
rear, *novissimum agmen*.
reason, *causa ;* (**for this**) **reason**, *quam ob rem*.
rebuild, *restituō*.
receive, *accipiō ; recipiō ;* (**a charge**), *excipiō*.
redoubt, *castellum*.
reënforcement, *subsidium*.
refuse, *recūsō*.
regular, *legiōnārius*.
remain, *remaneō*.
remaining, *reliquus*.
reply (noun), *respōnsum*.
reply (verb), *respondeō*.
report, *renūntiō*.
resist, *rĕsistō*.
resources, *facultātēs*.
rest: (**the**) **rest** (**of**), *reliquī*.
restrain, *teneō ; dēterreō*.
result: (**the**) **result** (**was**), *factum est*.
return, *revertor*.
revolt, *dēficiō*.
revolution, *novae rēs*.
reward, *praemium*.
Rhine, *Rhēnus*.
Rhone, *Rhodanus*.
right, *dexter*.
ripe, *mātūrus*.
river, *flūmen*.
road, *iter*.
Roman, *Rōmānus*.
Rome, *Rōma*.
rout, *in fugam coniciō*.
royal power, *rēgnum*.
rule, *imperium*.
rumor, *rūmor*.

S

safety, *salūs.*
sake: (for the) **sake** (of), *causā.*
sally, *ēruptiō.*
same, *īdem.*
Saône, *Arar.*
save, *cōnservō;* (one's self), *mē*, etc., *ēripiō.*
say, *dīcō.*
say . . . not, *negō.*
scarcity, *inopia.*
scout, *explōrātor.*
secure, *potior.*
see, *videō.*
seek, *petō.*
seem, *videor.*
Seine, *Sēquana.*
seize, *occupō; capiō.*
sell, *vēndō.*
senate, *senātus.*
send, *mittō.*
send ahead, *praemittō.*
send away, *dīmittō.*
send back, *remittō.*
separate, *dīvidō.*
Sequanian, *Sēquanus.*
set on fire, *incendō.*
seven, *septem.*
seventh, *septimus.*
several, *complūrēs; nōnnūllī.*
shield, *scūtum.*
short, *brevis.*
shout, *clāmor.*
show, *dēmōnstrō; ostendō.*
side, *pars.*
similar, *similis.*
since, *cum.*
six, *sex.*
six hundred, *sescentī.*
size, *magnitūdō.*
skilled, *perītus.*
slave, *servus.*
slavery, *servitūs.*
slay, *interficiō.*
small, *parvus.*
snatch, *ēripiō.*
so (modifying adjectives), *tam;* (modifying verbs), *ita.*
soldier, *mīles.*
some, *nōnnūllī.*
some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī.*
some one, *aliquis.*
son, *filius.*
space, *spatium.*
spare, *cōnservō.*
speak, *dīcō; loquor.*
speech, *ōrātiō.*
speed, *celeritās.*
spring (from), *orior.*
stand, *stō.*
standard, *signum.*
stand together, *ūnā cōnsistō.*
stand up, *mē*, etc., *sustineō.*
start out, *proficīscor.*
station, *cōnstituō.*
stay, *remaneō.*
stone, *lapis.*
stop, *prohibeō.*
storm, *expugnō.*
strategy, *ratiō.*
strengthen, *cōnfīrmō.*
strip, *nūdō.*
strong, *fīrmus.*
successive, *continuus.*
suffer, *patior;* **suffer defeat**, *superor.*
sufficient, *satis.*
suitable, *commodus; idōneus.*
summer, *aestās.*
summon, *ad mē*, etc., *vocō.*
supply, *commeātus; cōpia.*
surpass, *superō.*

surrender (noun), *dēditiō*.
surrender (verb). *trādō; dēdō*.
surround, *circumveniō*.
surround (with), *circumdō*.
survive, *supersum*.
suspect, *suspicor*.
suspicion, *suspīciō*.
sustain (loss), *accipiō*.
swear, *iūrō*.
sword, *gladius*.

T

take, *capiō*.
take away, *removeō*.
talk, *loquor*.
tear, *lacrima*.
tell, *dīcō*.
ten, *decem*.
tenth, *decimus*.
territory, *fīnēs*.
than, *quam*.
that, *is;* (conjunction), *ut, quīn*.
themselves: **(of) themselves**, *suī*.
then, *deinde; tum*.
there (in that place), *ibi;* (to that place), *eō*.
therefore, *quam ob rem*.
thing, *rēs*.
think, *arbitror*.
third, *tertius*.
this, *hīc*.
though, *cum; etsī*.
thousand, *mīlle*.
three, *trēs*.
through, *per*.
throughout, *per*.
throw, *iaciō; coniciō*.
thus, *ita*.
time, *tempus*.
to, *ad*.
too, *quoque*.
top, *summus* (adjective).
toward, *ad*.
tower, *turris*.
training, *exercitātiō*.
treachery, *īnsidiae*.
tree, *arbor*.
trial, *iūdicium*.
tribe, *gēns*.
tribune, *tribūnus*.
tribute, *stīpendium*.
troops, *cōpiae*.
trust, *cōnfīdō*.
try, *cōnor; temptō*.
turn away, *iter āvertō*.
twelve, *duodecim*.
twenty, *vīgintī*.
two, *duo*.
two hundred, *ducentī*.

U

undergo, *subeō*.
understand, *intellegō*.
undertake, *suscipiō*.
unencumbered, *expedītus*.
unfavorable, *inīquus*.
unfriendly, *inimīcus*.
unless, *nisi*.
unlike, *dissimilis*.
until, *dum*.
unwilling: **(am) unwilling**, *nōlō*.
urge, *cohortor*.
use (noun), *ūsus*.
use (verb), *ūtor*.

V

various, *varius*.
very (adj.), *ipse*.
victor, *victor*.
victory, *victōria*.
village, *vīcus*.
violence, *vīs*.

W

wage (war), *gerō*.
wait, *exspectō*.
wall, *mūrus*.
want, *volō*.
war, *bellum*.
warn, *moneō*.
watch, *vigilia*.
weapon, *tēlum*.
well-known, *nōbilis*.
what, *quis, quae, quid*.
when, *cum*.
where, *ubi*.
whether, *num*.
whichever, *quīcumque*.
while, *dum*.
who (interrogative), *quis;* (relative), *quī*.
why, *cūr*.
wide, *lātus*.
width, *lātitūdō*.
willing: (am) **willing**, *volō*.
willingness, *voluntās*.
win, *conciliō; potior*.
wing, *cornū*.
winter quarters, *hīberna*.
wisdom, *cōnsilium*.
wish, *volō*.
with, *cum*.
withdraw, *discēdō; mē*, etc., *recipiō*.
without, *sine*.
withstand, *sustineō*.
woman, *mulier*.
wonder, *admīror*.
woods, *silva*.
word, *verbum*.
wound, *vulnus*.
wrong, *iniūria*.
wrongdoing, *iniūria*.
wrongfully, *iniūriā*.

Y

year, *annus*.
yield, *concēdō*.
you, *tū*.
young man, *adulēscēns*.
your (of one person), *tuus;* (of several), *vester*.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Principal parts of *regular* verbs are indicated by the number of the conjugation.

A

a., abbr. for **ante.**

A., abbr. for **Aulus.**

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, away from; by, on.*

abdō, -ere, abdidī, abditum (**dō**, *give, put*), *put away; hide;* with **sē**, *withdraw.*

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead away, carry off.*

absēns, absentis (pres. part. of **absum**, *be away*), *absent.*

abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold one's self from, refrain, abstain.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, — (**sum**, *be*), *be away from, be lacking; be of no use to.*

ac, see **atque.**

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *go* or *come to; be added.*

acceptus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **accipiō**, *receive*), *pleasing to, popular with.*

accidō, -ere, accidī, — (**cadō**, *fall*), *fall to, happen to, befall, happen.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō**, *take*), *take to one's self, accept, receive; endure.*

acclīvis, -e, adj., *sloping upward.*

acclīvitās, acclīvitātis, f. (**acclīvis**, *sloping upward*), *upward slope.*

accommodō, 1, *fit, put on.*

accurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum**, *run to, hurry up to.*

accūsō, 1, *accuse, blame, upbraid.*

acervus, -ī, m., *pile, heap.*

aciēs, -ēī, f. (cf. **ācer**, *keen*), *keenness, edge; line of battle.*

ācriter, ācrius, ācerrimē, adv. (**ācer**, *keen*), *sharply; vigorously.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards; near; for, in order to; about; according to.*

adaequō, 1 (**aequō**, *make equal*), *make equal to, equal.*

adamō, 1 (**amō**, *love*), *love strongly, become much attached to.*

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead to, lead up, bring; influence.*

adeō, -īre, adiī, aditum (**eō**, *go*), *go to, reach; get at.*

adequitō, 1, *ride to.*

adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum (**habeō**, *have*), *have present; bring in, summon.*

adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (**agō**, *drive*), *drive at, hurl, cast.*

aditus, -ūs, m. (**adeō**, *go to*), *a going to, approach; right of approach.*

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum (**iuvō**, *help*), *help, aid.*

Admagetobriga, -ae, f., a town in central Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.

administrō, 1, *serve, attend, provide for; execute.*

admīror, 1 (**mīror**, *wonder*), *wonder at, be surprised.*

admittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum** (**mittō**, *send*), *let go: spur on.*

adorior, **-īrī**, **-ortus sum** (**orior**, *rise*), *rise against, attack.*

adsum, **adesse**, **affuī**, — (**sum**, *be*), *be near, be at hand.*

Aduatucī, **-ōrum**, m., a tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul, originally Germans.

adulēscēns, **adulēscentis**, m., *young man* (17–25 years old).

adulēscentia, **-ae**, f., *youth.*

adventus, **-ūs**, m. (**adveniō**, *come toward*), *coming, arrival.*

adversus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. (perf. part. of **advertō**), *turned toward* or *against, opposite; unfavorable, facing.*

aedificium, **-ī**, n., *building, house.*

Aeduus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Aeduan;* as a subst., **Aeduus**, **-ī**, m., generally pl., *the Aeduans*, a tribe in central Gaul, friends of the Romans.

aegrē, **aegrius**, **aegerrimē**, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty.*

Aemilius, **-ī**, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Aemilius*, an officer in Caesar's cavalry.

aequāliter, adv. (cf. **aequus**), *evenly.*

aequitās, **aequitātis**, f. (**aequus**, *equal*), *equality, fairness.*

aequō, 1 (**aequus**, *equal*), *make equal.*

aequus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *equal.*

aestās, **aestātis**, f., *summer.*

aestuārium, **-ī**, n., *salt marsh.*

aetās, **aetātis**, f., *age, old age.*

afferō, **afferre**, **attulī**, **allātum** (**ferō**, *bring*), *bring to, carry to; cause.*

afficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** (**faciō**, *do*), *do to; treat, affect.*

affīnitās, **affīnitātis**, f., *relationship by marriage.*

ager, **agrī**, m., *land, field; country.*

agger, **aggeris**, m., *material for earthworks; embankment, mound; causeway.*

aggredior, **aggredī**, **aggressus sum**, *advance to* or *against, attack.*

agmen, **agminis**, n. (**agō**, *drive*), *line of march, marching column;* with **novissimum**, *rear.*

agō, **-ere**, **ēgī**, **āctum**, *drive, take along; perform, do; discuss;* with **conventūs**, *hold;* with **grātiās**, *give.*

alacritās, **alacritātis**, f., *eagerness.*

ālārius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *belonging to the wing of an army;* as noun, **ālāriī**, **-ōrum**, m., *allied troops, auxiliaries.*

aliās, adv., *at another time;* **aliās . . . aliās**, *at one time . . . at another.*

aliēnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. (**alius**, *other*), *another's; unfavorable.*

aliquamdiū, adv. (**aliquis**, *some* + **diū**, *long*), *for a long time.*

aliquid, adv., *somewhat.*

aliquis, **-quid**, and **aliquī**, **-qua**, **-quod**, indef. pron., *some one, something, some; any one, anything, any.*

aliter, adv. (**alius**, *other*), *otherwise.*

alius, **-a**, **-ud**, gen. **alīus**, adj. pron., *another, other, second.*

Allobrogēs, **-um**, m., a tribe of southeastern Gaul.

alō, -ere, aluī, altum, *nourish, promote, maintain.*

Alpēs, Alpium, f., *the Alps.*

alter, altera, alterum, gen. **alterius,** adj. pron., *the other* (of two), *the second;* **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other.*

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f. (**altus,** *high, deep*), *height, depth.*

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul, clients of the Aeduans.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.

āmentia, -ae, f. (**mēns,** *mind*), *madness, folly.*

amīcitia, -ae, f. (**amīcus,** *friendly*), *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly;* as a noun, *friend.*

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō,** *send*), *send away, let go.*

amor, amōris, m. (**amō,** *love*), *affection.*

amplē, adv., *largely, generously;* comp., **amplius,** *more, farther.*

amplificō, 1 (cf. **amplē,** *largely* + **faciō,** *make*), *make larger, extend.*

an, conj., *or, whether.*

anceps, ancipitis, adj. (**ambō,** *both* + **caput,** *head*), *two-headed, double, from two sides, undecided.*

Andebrogius, -ī, m., an ambassador of the Remi.

Andēs, Andium, m., a tribe of western Gaul.

angustiae, -ārum, f. (**angustus,** *narrow*), *narrows, narrow passes; straits, difficulties.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow;* **in angustō,** *in a critical condition.*

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum (**animus,** *mind* + **ad,** *to* + **vertō,** *turn*), *turn the mind towards;* with **in,** *punish.*

animus, -ī, m., *mind, heart, courage, feeling, character;* **esse in animō** (with dat.), *have in mind, intend.*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um, adj. (**annus,** *year*), *yearly.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before;* adv., *before, formerly.*

anteā, adv. (**ante,** *before* + **eā,** *this*), *before, formerly.*

antīquitus, adv. (**antīquus,** *ancient*), *from ancient times, long ago.*

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. (**ante,** *before*), *ancient, old.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed, unprotected.*

appellō, 1, *call by name, call, name.*

appetō, -ere, -petīvī or **petiī, -petītum** (**petō,** *seek*), *seek for, aim at; approach.*

appropinquō, 1, *approach.*

Aprīl., abbr. for **Aprīlis, -e,** adj., *of April.*

apud, prep. with acc., *with, among, in the presence of, near; in the power of.*

Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.

Aquītānī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.

Aquītānia, -ae, f., a country in southwestern Gaul.

Arar, Araris, m., a river of eastern Gaul; the modern *Saône.*

arbitrium, -ī, n., *judgment, discretion.*

arbitror, 1, *decide, think.*

arbor, arboris, f., *tree.*

arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum, *summon, invite.*

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, difficult.*

ariēs, arietis, m., *battering ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., a king among the Germans.

arma, -ōrum, n., *arms, weapons.*

armātūra, -ae, f. (**armō,** *arm*), *armor, equipment.*

armātus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **armō,** *arm*), *armed.*

arroganter, adv., *haughtily.*

arrogantia, -ae, f., *haughtiness, insolence.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul, rivals of the Aeduans.

arx, arcis, f., *fortress, citadel.*

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *climb up, climb to.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, m. (**ascendō,** *climb up*), *ascent, way up; approach.*

ascīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *approve, receive.*

at, conj., *but, at least.*

atque and **ac,** conjs., *and, and also;* after words denoting identity or comparison, *as, than.*

Atrebātēs, -um, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.

attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctum (**tangō,** *touch*), *border on; approach, reach.*

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f. (**augeō,** *increase*), *influence, prestige.*

auctus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **augeō,** *increase*), *increased, improved.*

audācia, -ae, f. (**audāx,** *bold*), *daring, boldness.*

audācter, adv. (**audāx,** *bold*), *boldly.*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture.*

audiō, 4, *hear, hear of;* **audiēns, audientis,** pres. part., *hearing, obedient.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, *increase, add to.*

Aulercī, -ōrum, m., a strong tribe of central Gaul, divided into four branches.

Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

Aurunculēius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, on the other hand, besides, moreover.*

auxilium, -ī, n. (**augeō,** *increase*), *help;* pl., *auxiliary troops.*

avāritia, -ae, f., *greed.*

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum (**vertō,** *turn*), *turn away from.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, m., a river of northern Gaul; the modern *Aisne.*

B

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus,* a centurion.

Baleārēs, -ium, m., inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, off the eastern coast of Spain.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *strange; savage, uncivilized.*

Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belgians,* a people of northeastern Gaul, occupying one of the three parts of Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. (**bellum,** *war*), *warlike.*

bellō, 1, *wage war.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgians.

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

bene, melius, optimē, adv. (**bonus**, *good*), *well, properly.*

beneficium, -ī, n. (**bene**, *well* + **faciō**, *do*), *kindness, favor.*

Bibracte, Bibractis, n., a town in eastern Gaul, chief city of the Aeduans.

Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi in northern Gaul.

bīduum, -ī, n. (**bis**, *twice* + **diēs**, *day*), *period of two days.*

biennium, -ī, n. (**bis**, *twice* + **annus**, *year*), *period of two years.*

bīpertītō, adv. (**bis**, *twice* + **partior**, *divide*), *in two divisions.*

Biturīgēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in central Gaul; a nomadic people, who fought with the Helvetians against Caesar and were placed by him among the Aeduans.

bonitās, bonitātis, f. (**bonus**, *good*), *goodness, fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj.; comp., **melior**; superl., **optimus**, *good, loyal;* neut. as a noun, *good, profit;* pl., *property.*

bracchium, -ī, n., *forearm, arm.*

Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci in northern Gaul.

brevis, -e, adj., *short.*

brevitās, brevitātis, f. (**brevis**, *short*), *shortness.*

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.*

C

C., abbr. for **Gaius** (*Caius*).

Cabūrus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had been presented with Roman citizenship.

cadāver, cadāveris, n., *dead body.*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall; be slain.*

Caemānī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., a Roman family name of the Julian gens. *Gaius Julius Caesar*, general, writer, and statesman.

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *loss, disaster, defeat.*

Caletī, -ōrum (**Caletēs, -um**), m., a tribe of the Belgians.

cālō, cālōnis, m., *officer's servant, camp follower.*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, *take, capture, seize; deceive.*

captīvus, -ī, m. (**capiō**, *take*), *prisoner.*

caput, capitis, n., *head; person.*

Carnutēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Cassius.*

Cassius, -ī, the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul, B.C. 107; killed in battle with the Tigurini.

castellum, -ī, n., *fort, stronghold.*

Casticus, -ī, m., a prominent Sequanian.

castra, -ōrum, n., *fortified camp, camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m. (**cadō,** *fall*), *chance, situation*; *disaster.*

Catamantaloedis, Catamantaloedis, m., a chieftain of the Sequanians.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain.*

Caturīgēs, -um, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason, motive; case;* **causā,** following a gen., *for the sake of.*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard.*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, *go, go away; give way.*

celeritās, celeritātis, f. (**celer,** *swift*), *speed, quickness.*

celeriter, adv. (**celer,** *swift*), *swiftly, speedily.*

cēlō, 1, *hide.*

Celtae, -ārum, m., the people in central Gaul, occupying the largest of the three divisions of Gaul.

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *estimate, decide, decree.*

cēnsus, -ūs, m. (**cēnseō,** *estimate*), *enumeration, census.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *one hundred.*

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., *centurion.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *decided, sure, reliable;* **certiōrem facere,** *to inform;* **certior fierī,** *to be informed.*

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *the remaining;* as noun, *the rest.*

Ceutronēs, -um, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

cibāria, -ōrum, n. (**cibus,** *food*), *provisions;* **molita cibāria,** *meal, flour.*

Cimberius, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Nasua.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany; invaded southern Europe and were defeated by Marius.

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *surround.*

circinus, -ī, m., *a pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv., *round about, nearly.*

circuitus, -ūs, m. (cf. **circumeō,** *go around*), *winding path, roundabout way, circumference.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about, near.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum (**dō,** *put*), *place around, surround.*

circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō,** *lead*), *lead* or *draw around.*

circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō,** *throw*), *throw* or *place around.*

circummūniō, 4 (**mūniō,** *fortify*), *fortify on all sides.*

circumsistō, -ere, circumstitī, — (**sistō,** *stand*), *stand around, surround.*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō,** *come*), *come around, surround, outflank.*

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (**cis,** *on this side of*), *nearer, hither.*

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citrō, adv. (**citrā,** *on this side of*), *to this side;* **ultrō citrōque,** *back and forth.*

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *citizenship; community, state; citizens.*

clāmor, clāmōris, m., *shout, outcry; din.*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, *shut, close;* **agmen claudere,** *bring up* (the rear).

clēmentia, -ae, f., *gentleness, mercy.*

cliēns, clientis, m. and f., *dependent, vassal, adherent.*

coacervō, 1, *pile up.*

coāctus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **cōgō.**

coëmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (emō, *buy*), *purchase.*

coepī, coepisse, defective, *began.*

coërceō, 2, *restrain.*

cōgitō, 1, *consider carefully, think, plan.*

cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *learn, examine.*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum (agō, *drive*), *drive together, gather; compel.*

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort, guard;* **praetōria cohors**, *bodyguard.*

cohortātiō, cohortātiōnis, f. (**cohortor**, *urge*), *urging, encouragement.*

cohortor, 1, *urge on, cheer.*

colligō, 1, *bind together.*

collis, collis, m., *hill.*

collocō 1 (cf. **locus**, *place*), *station, set.*

colloquium, -ī, n. (**colloquor**, *talk with*), *conference.*

colloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum (loquor, *talk*), *converse, discuss.*

combūrō, -ere, -bussī, -bustum, *burn up.*

commeātus, -ūs, m., *provisions, supplies.*

commemorō, 1, *recall, mention, tell.*

commeō, 1, *go back and forth, visit.*

comminus, adv. (**manus**, *hand*), *hand to hand.*

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (mittō, *send*), *bring together, engage; intrust, commit, cause.*

commodē, adv. (**commodus**, *convenient*), *conveniently, easily, advantageously.*

commodum, -ī, n. (**commodus**, *convenient*), *advantage.*

commodus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable.*

commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (moneō, *remind* + **faciō**, *make*), *remind forcibly.*

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (moveō, *move*), *move greatly, influence, alarm.*

commūniō, 4 (**mūniō**, *fortify*), *fortify strongly.*

commūnis, -e, adj., *common, general.*

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f. (**commūtō**, *change completely*), *complete change, change.*

commūtō, 1, *change completely.*

1. **comparō**, 1 (**parō**, *prepare*), *prepare thoroughly; collect.*

2. **comparō**, 1 (**par**, *equal*), *compare.*

compellō, -ere, compulī, compulsum (pellō, *drive*), *drive together, collect; force.*

comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertum, *find out, learn.*

complector, -ī, -plexus sum, *embrace.*

compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill completely, fill up; cover, crowd.*

complūrēs, -a or **-ia**, adj. (**plūs**, *more*), *a great many, several.*

comportō, 1 (**portō**, *carry*), *carry together, collect, bring.*

cōnātum, -ī, n. (**cōnor**, *try*), *attempt.*

cōnātus, -ūs, m. (**cōnor**, *try*), *attempt.*

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, *go*), *go away; yield, allow.*

concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedō, *cut*), *cut down; kill, destroy.*

conciliō, 1 (**concilium**, *assembly*), *bring together; win, gain.*

concilium, -ī, n., *assembly.*

conclāmō, 1, *cry out together, shout.*

concurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum (currō, *run*), *run together, hurry, rally.*

concursus, -ūs, m. (concurrō, *run together*), *a running together, rally, attack.*

condīciō, condīciōnis, f., *condition; agreement, terms.*

condōnō, 1 (dōnō, *give*), *give up; pardon.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, *lead*), *lead together, collect; hire.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (ferō, *bring*), *bring together; compare; ascribe to; postpone;* **sē cōnferre**, *betake one's self.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, compact.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (faciō, *do*), *complete, make; prepare; muster; wear out.*

cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *trust completely, believe.*

cōnfīrmō, 1, *make strong, establish, encourage; state.*

cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *contend, fight.*

congredior, congredī, -gressus sum, *meet, fight.*

conicio, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, *throw*), *throw together, hurl, drive.*

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum (iungō, *join*), *join together, unite.*

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f. (coniūrō, *swear together*), *conspiracy.*

coniūrō, 1, *swear together, conspire.*

cōnor, 1, *try.*

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum (quaerō, *seek*), *seek for carefully, search out.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj., *of the same blood;* masc. as noun, *kinsman.*

cōnscīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *approve, decide upon;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere**, *commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um, adj. (sciō, *know*), *conscious, aware.*

cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum (scrībō, *write*), *write together, enroll.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. (cōnsentiō, *agree*), *agreement, consent.*

cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum (sentiō, *feel*), *feel with, sympathize; agree.*

cōnsequor, -ī, secūtus sum (sequor, *follow*), *follow up; attain, gain.*

cōnservō, 1 (servō, *keep*), *save, spare.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Publius Considius*, an officer of Caesar.

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *sit down together, settle, encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *council, design, plan, advice; prudence.*

cōnsimilis, -e, adj. (similis, *like*), *quite similar.*

cōnsistō, -ere, constitī, — (sistō, *stand*), *take a stand, halt, rally; depend upon.*

cōnsōlor, 1, *comfort.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m. (cōnspiciō, *look at*), *sight.*

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look at, perceive.*

cōnspicor, 1, *observe, see.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f., *firmness.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum (**statuō**, *set up*), *construct, appoint, decide, draw up, halt.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *accustom one's self;* in perf. tenses, *be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, f. (**cōnsuēscō**, *accustom one's self*), *custom, habit.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul,* one of two chief magistrates chosen annually by the Romans.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. (**cōnsul**, *consul*), *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, *consult, deliberate.*

cōnsultum, -ī, n. (**cōnsulō**, *consult*), *decree, decision.*

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum (**sūmō**, *take*), *use up, consume.*

contemptus, -ūs, m., *contempt, scorn.*

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, *push forward, hasten; struggle, fight.*

contentiō, contentiōnis, f. (**contendō**, *struggle*), *struggle, fight.*

continenter, adv. (**continēns**, *continuous*), *constantly.*

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold together, hem in; restrain, keep; occupy.*

contingō, -ere, contigī, -tāctum, *touch upon, border; happen to.*

continuus, -a, -um, adj. (**contineō**, *hold together*), *successive.*

contrā, adv., *against, on the other hand;* prep. with acc., *opposite, against.*

contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum (**trahō**, *draw*), *gather together; assemble, collect.*

contrārius, -a, -um, adj. (**contrā**, *against*), *opposite, facing.*

contumēlia, -ae, f., *indignity, insult.*

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō**, *come*), *come together, meet;* impers., *be agreed upon.*

conventus, -ūs, m. (**conveniō**, *come together*), *assembly, conference; court* (of justice).

convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum (**vertō**, *turn*), *turn about, turn;* with **sīgna**, *reverse*, i.e. *wheel about.*

convincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum (**vincō**, *conquer*), *prove.*

convocō, 1 (**vocō**, *call*), *call together, summon.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply;* in pl., *forces, wealth, resources.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. (**cōpia**, *abundance*), *well-supplied, rich.*

cōram, adv., *in person.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

corpus, corporis, n., *body, person, dead body.*

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark* (of a tree).

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. (**cotīdiē**, *daily*), *daily; usual.*

cotīdiē, adv. (cf. **diēs**, *day*), *daily.*

Cotta, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family; see **Aurunculēius.**

Crassus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* one of the first triumvirate; father of *Publius Licinius Crassus* (adulēscēns), a lieutenant of Caesar.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *numerous.*

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *believe, feel sure.*

cremō, 1, *burn.*

creō, 1, *create; choose, elect.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow; grow powerful.*

Crētēs, -um (acc. **Crētas**), m., inhabitants of the island of Crete.

cruciātus, -ūs, m., *cruelty, torture.*

crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis, f., *cruelty.*

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

cultus, -ūs, m., *cultivation, refinement.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with, along with, with* (*against*), *furnished with.*

cum, conj.; of time, *when, while, after;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as;* of cause, *since, as;* of concession, *although;* **cum . . . tum,** *both . . . and; not only . . . but also.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., *all together, all.*

cupidē, adv. (**cupidus,** *eager*), *eagerly.*

cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. (**cupidus,** *eager*), *eagerness, desire.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. (**cupiō,** *be eager*), *eager, desirous.*

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be eager; wish well to.*

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, concern.*

cūrō, 1 (**cūra,** *care*), *care for, arrange, cause.*

cursus, -ūs, m. (**currō,** *run*), *running, speed.*

cūstōdia, -ae, f. (**cūstōs,** *guard*), *guard; protection.*

cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., *guard, watchman.*

D

d., abbr. for **diem.**

damnō, 1, *condemn, convict.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from; during; about; of; in regard to, for;* with **sūmere,** *upon;* **dē imprōvīsō,** *suddenly.*

dēbeō, 2, *owe; ought, must.*

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō,** *go*), *go from* or *away, withdraw.*

decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten;* **decem novem,** *nineteen.*

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decide, decree.*

dēcertō, 1, *fight a decisive battle.*

dēcidō, -ere, dēcidī, — (**cadō,** *fall*), *fall from* or *off.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**decem,** *ten*), *tenth.*

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō,** *take*), *catch; deceive.*

dēclārō, 1, *disclose, set forth, announce.*

dēclīvis, -e, adj., *sloping downward.*

decumānus, -a, -um, adj.; with **porta,** *rear.*

decuriō, decuriōnis, m., *decurion,* a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.

dēcurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum** (**currō,** *run*), *run down, hurry down.*

dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. (**dēdō,** *surrender*), *surrendered;* masc. as noun, *subject, prisoner.*

dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f. (**dēdō,** *surrender*), *surrender.*

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum (**dō,** *give*), *give up* or *away, surrender.*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō,** *lead*), *lead off, withdraw; bring.*

dēfatīgō, 1, *tire out completely, exhaust.*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *keep off, repel; defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, **dēfēnsiōnis**, f. (**dēfendō**, *keep off*), *defense, protection.*

dēfēnsor, **dēfēnsōris**, m. (**dēfendō**, *keep off*), *defender.*

dēferō, -ferre, dētulī, dēlātum (**ferō**, *bear*), *bring down* or *from; carry, announce, report, bestow.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied, worn out.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō**, *do*), *fail, give out; revolt from, forsake.*

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *throw down; dislodge; disappoint.*

dēiectus, -ūs, m. (**dēiciō**, *throw down*), *slope, declivity.*

deinde, adv. (**inde**, *thence*), *from there; then, in the next place.*

dēleō, -ēre, -lēvī, -lētum, *wipe out, destroy.*

dēlīberō, 1, *consider carefully, deliberate.*

dēligō, 1, *bind fast, fasten.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, select.*

dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum, *take away, lessen, diminish.*

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *send* or *let down; bow.*

dēmōnstrō, 1, *show, point out, mention.*

dēmum, adv., *at length, finally.*

dēnegō, 1 (**negō**, *deny*), *deny, refuse.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. **decem**, *ten*), *ten each.*

dēnique, adv., *at length, at least, finally.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, close.*

dēnūntiō, 1 (**nūntiō**, *announce*), *announce; threaten.*

dēperdō, -ere, -perdidī, -perditum, *lose.*

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (**pōnō**, *place*), *put away, lay aside; place in safety.*

dēpopulor, 1 (**populor**, *lay waste*), *lay waste, pillage.*

dēprecātor, **dēprecātōris**, m. (**dēprecor**, *plead for*), *mediator, intercessor.*

dēprecor, 1 (cf. **prex**, *prayer*), *beg off, petition against.*

dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *abandon, desert.*

dēsīgnō, 1, *mark out, point out; mean.*

dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitum, *abandon, cease, desist from.*

dēspērō, 1 (**spērō**, *hope*), *give up hope, despair; give up.*

dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look down upon, despise.*

dēspoliō, 1, *rob, deprive.*

dēstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum (**statuō**, *set up*), *set aside, abandon, forsake.*

dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *draw, unsheathe.*

dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfuī**, — (**sum**, *be*), *be lacking, fail.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above.*

deterior, -ius, comp. adj., *worse; less.*

dēterreō, 2, *frighten off, deter, prevent.*

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum (**trahō**, *draw*), *draw off, remove.*

dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss, harm.*

deus, -ī; nom. pl., **dīī**; dat. and abl. pl., **dīs,** m., *god.*

dēvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum (vehō, *carry*), *bring down.*

dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (veniō, *come*), *come down; come to, reach.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *on the right hand;* fem. as noun, *right hand.*

diciō, diciōnis, f., *sway, control.*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, speak, tell; appoint; plead.*

dictiō, dictiōnis, f. (**dīcō,** *say*), with **causae,** *pleading.*

dictum, -ī, n. (**dīcō,** *say*), *saying, word; command.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day; time;* **ad diem,** *punctually.*

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum (ferō, *bear*), *bear apart; differ.*

difficilis, -e; superl., **difficillimus,** adj. (**facilis,** *easy*), *difficult.*

difficultās, difficultātis, f. (**difficilis,** *difficult*), *difficulty, trouble.*

dignitās, dignitātis, f., *worthiness, standing, dignity.*

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, scrupulously.*

dīligentia, -ae, f., *carefulness, painstaking, care.*

dīmētior, -īrī, -mēnsus sum (mētior, *measure*), *measure out* or *off.*

dīmicō, 1, *fight, contend.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (mittō, *send*), *send in different directions, dispatch; send away, dismiss, adjourn.*

dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (emō, *take*), *break off.*

dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tear in pieces; plunder.*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, *go*), *go apart* or *away, depart, withdraw.*

discessus, -ūs, m. (**discēdō,** *go away*), *departure, withdrawal.*

disciplīna, -ae, f. (cf. **discō,** *learn*), *training.*

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn, be taught.*

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, *throw*), *scatter; break.*

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum, *scatter, disperse.*

dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (pōnō, *place*), *place at intervals, distribute.*

dissipō, 1, *scatter, break up.*

distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (teneō, *hold*), *keep apart, separate.*

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *for a long time, long;* **quam diū,** *as long as;* **diūtius,** *longer, too long.*

diurnus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **diēs,** *day*), *of the day, by day.*

diūturnitās, diūturnitātis, f. (**diūturnus,** *long*), *long duration, length.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. (**diū,** *long*), *long, lasting.*

dīversus, -a, -um, adj., *turned away; separated; different.*

dīves, dīvitis, adj., *wealthy, rich;* superl., **dītissimus.**

Dīviciācus, -ī, m. 1. A chieftain of the Aeduans and friend of Caesar. 2. A chieftain of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetians.

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate;* **dīvīsus, -a, -um,** perf. part. as adj., *divided.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the gods, divine.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, deliver, offer, concede, grant;* with **inter sē**, *exchange.*

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, *show, instruct, teach, explain.*

doleō, 2, *suffer, grieve; be annoyed.*

dolor, dolōris, m. (**doleō**, *suffer*), *distress, grief; vexation.*

dolus, -ī, m., *deception, cunning, trickery.*

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. (**domus**, *home*), *of home, native.*

domicilium, -ī, n. (**domus**, *home*), *dwelling place, residence.*

dominor, 1, *lord it, be master.*

domus, -ūs, f., *house, home;* **domī**, *at home;* **domō**, *from home.*

dōnō, 1, *give, present.*

Dubis, Dubis, m., a river in eastern Gaul, branch of the Arar.

dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f. (**dubitō**, *doubt*), *doubt; hesitation.*

dubitō, 1 (**dubius**, *doubtful*), *doubt, be uncertain; hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**duo**, *two* + **centum**, *hundred*), *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ere, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *lead, conduct, bring; draw, put off, prolong; think;* with **in mātrimōnium**, *marry.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, m., a chieftain of the Aeduans, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*

duodecim, indecl. num. adj. (**duo**, *two* + **decem**, *ten*), *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**duodecim**, *twelve*), *twelfth.*

duodēvigintī, indecl. num. adj. (**duo**, *two* + **dē**, *from* + **vigintī**, *twenty*), *eighteen.*

duplex, duplicis, adj., *twofold, double.*

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard, rough, difficult.*

dux, ducis, m. and f. (**dūcō**, *lead*), *leader, commander, guide.*

E

ē, ex, prep. with abl., *from, out of, after, on, as a result of, according to.*

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

ēditus, -a, -um, adj. (**ēdō**, *set forth*), *elevated, lofty.*

ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditum (**dō**, *give*), *set forth, give out; inflict.*

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead out* or *forth.*

effēminō, 1, *make feeble, enervate.*

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum (**ferō**, *bear*), *carry out, take along; disclose.*

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō**, *do*), *work out, bring about, make.*

ego, meī, pers. pron., *I;* pl., **nōs, nostrum** or **nostrī**, *we.*

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out, depart, make a sally.*

ēgregiē, adv. (**ēgregius**, *extraordinary*), *remarkably.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *extraordinary, unusual.*

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick, choose.*

ēmigrō, 1, *go away, move away.*

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *send forth, throw away; cast, hurl.*

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy, purchase.*

ēnāscor, -ī, -nātus sum (**nāscor**, *be born*), *grow out, sprout forth.*

enim, conj., *for, in fact.*

ēnūntiō, 1 (**nūntiō**, *tell*), *disclose, make known; give out information.*

eō, adv. (**is**, *this, that*), *there, to that place.*

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum**, *go, march, advance.*

eōdem, adv. (**īdem**, *the same*), *to the same place* or *point.*

eques, equitis, m. (**equus**, *horse*), *horseman, cavalryman; knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. (**eques**, *horseman*), *of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs, m. (cf. **equus**, *horse*), *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away, take away; save.*

ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, *f., a bursting forth, sally, sortie.*

Esuviī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northwestern Gaul.

et, conj., *and;* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

etiam, conj., *and also, even, yet, furthermore;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

etsī, conj. (**et**, *and* + **sī**, *if*), *even if, although.*

ēvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *pull out.*

ēventus, -ūs, m. (cf. **veniō**, *come*), *outcome, result.*

ex, see **ē**.

exagitō, 1 (**agitō**, frequentative of **agō**, *drive*), *drive out; disturb, harass.*

exanimō, 1, *exhaust.*

exaudiō, 4 (**audiō**, *hear*), *hear from a distance; hear distinctly.*

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *go out* or *away, withdraw.*

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō**, *take*), *take out; receive; sustain.*

excursiō, excursiōnis, f. (cf. **currō**, *run*), *a running out, sally, sortie.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example, precedent.*

exeō, -īre, exiī, exitum (**eō**, *go*), *go out, withdraw.*

exerceō, 2, *train, exercise.*

exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis, f. (cf. **exerceō**, *train*), *training, practice; skill.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **exerceō**, *train*), *trained, skilled.*

exercitus, -ūs, m. (**exerceō**, *train*), *trained body of men, army.*

exiguitās, exiguitātis, f., *scantiness, shortness.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj., *choice, excellent.*

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis, f. (**exīstimō**, *estimate*), *judgment, opinion.*

exīstimō, 1, *estimate, judge, deem, think, believe.*

expedītus, -a, -um, adj. (**expediō**, *set free*), *unencumbered, in light marching order; easy; disengaged.*

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum (**pellō**, *drive*), *drive out, banish.*

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, *try, test.*

explōrātōr, explōrātōris, m. (**explōrō**, *search*), *searcher, scout, spy.*

explōrō, 1, *search, investigate, reconnoiter.*

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum (**premō**, *press*), *press out, extort.*

expugnō, 1 (**pugnō**, *fight*), *take by storm, capture.*

exquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum (**quaerō**, *search*), *search out; learn by inquiry.*

exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum (**sequor**, *follow*), *follow out; enforce.*

exspectō, 1 (**spectō**, *look at*), *look out for, expect, await.*

exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *pile up, build, rear.*

extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **exterus, exterior**; *outermost, farthest, last; end of.*

exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *burn up.*

F

Fabius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Gauls in B.C. 121.

facile, facilius, facillimē, adv. (**facilis**, *easy*), *easily.*

facilis, -e, facilior, facillimus, adj. (**faciō**, *do*), *easy to do, easy.*

facinus, facinoris, n. (**faciō**, *do*), *deed; misdeed, crime.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; pass. **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *do, make, build, perform; cause, furnish; fight;* **certiōrem facere**, *inform;* **facere verba**, *speak;* **vim facere**, *offer violence.*

factiō, factiōnis, f., *party, faction.*

factum, -ī, n. (**faciō**, *do*), *deed, act, action.*

facultās, facultātis, f., *power, chance; resources.*

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, *cheat, deceive, disappoint.*

famēs, famis, f., *hunger, famine.*

familia, -ae, f., *household; body of servants* or *retainers.*

familiāris, -e, adj. (**familia**, *household*), *personal, private;* as a noun, *close friend;* with **rēs**, *private property.*

fās, n., indecl., *right, divine right.*

fastīgātus, -a, -um, adj., *sloping.*

fātum, -ī, n., *lot, fate.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor.*

felīcitās, felīcitātis, f., *good fortune, success.*

ferāx, ferācis, adj. (**ferō**, *bear*), *fruitful, fertile.*

ferē, adv., *almost, about.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure; inflict;* with **molestē**, *be vexed;* **sīgna ferre**, *advance.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, spear point.*

fertilitās, fertilitātis, f. (**fertilis**, *fruitful*), *fruitfulness, fertility.*

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, fierce, savage.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, confidence; fidelity; promise; protection.*

fīlia, -ae, dat. and abl. pl., **fīliābus**, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*

fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum, *form, shape, devise; control.*

fīnis, fīnis, m., *end, limit;* pl., *borders, territory.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, adjoining;* masc. as noun, *neighbor.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, see **faciō**, *be made, be done, be brought about; happen; become.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, sturdy, brave.*

Flaccus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor of the province of Gaul, B.C. 83.

flāgitō, 1, *demand.*

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep.*

flētus, -ūs, m. (**fleō**, *weep*), *weeping.*

flōrēns, flōrentis, adj., *blooming, flourishing.*

flūmen, flūminis, n. (**fluō**, *flow*), *river.*

fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxum, *flow.*

fore = **futūrus esse**, see **sum.**

fors, fortis, f., *chance;* abl. as adv., *by chance.*

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, strong.*

fortiter, adv. (**fortis**, *brave*), *bravely.*

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. (**fortis**, *brave*), *bravery, courage.*

fortūna, -ae, f. (**fors**, *chance*), *fortune, luck, chance; lot, condition; property.*

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench, moat.*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break; crush, discourage.*

frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*

frāternus, -a, -um, adj. (**frāter**, *brother*), *brotherly, of brother.*

fremitus, -ūs, m., *uproar, din.*

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold, frost.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead, front.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **frūx**, *fruit*), *fruitful, productive.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. (**frūmentum**, *grain*), *of grain; productive;* with **rēs**, *grain supply.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain, corn;* pl., *standing grain.*

frūx, frūgis, f., *fruit;* pl., *crops.*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight, retreat.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, — (**fuga**, *flight*), *flee.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um, adj. (**fugiō**, *flee*), *fleeing;* masc. as noun, *deserter.*

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*

funditor, funditōris, m., *slinger.*

furor, furōris, m., *rage, madness.*

futūrus, fut. part. of **sum.**

G

Gabīnius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Aulus Gabinius*, a consul.

Gaius, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

Galba, -ae, m., a king of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, corresponding in general to France.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*

Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul.

Genava, -ae, f., the city of *Geneva.*

generātim, adv. (**genus**, *tribe*), *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, clan.*

genus, generis, n., *tribe, race; kind, nature.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German;* generally masc. pl., *the Germans.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *bear, carry; carry on, wage; manage;* pass., *be done, occur;* **rēs gestae**, *achievements.*

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f., *fame, reputation, glory.*

glōrior, 1 (**glōria**, *fame*), *boast, glory.*
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek.*
Grāiocelī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the western Alps.
grandis, -e, adj., *large.*
grātia, -ae, f. (**grātus**, *pleasing*), *favor, good will, popularity;* **grātiam referre**, *show gratitude;* **grātiās agere**, *thank.*
grātulātiō, **grātulātiōnis**, f. (**grātulor**, *show joy*), *a show of joy, rejoicing, thanksgiving.*
grātulor, 1 (**grātus**, *pleasing*), *show joy; congratulate.*
grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, acceptable;* neut. as noun, *favor.*
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe.*
graviter, adv. (**gravis**, *heavy*), *heavily, seriously, bitterly.*
gravor, 1 (**gravis**, *heavy*), *be burdened; be unwilling.*

H

habeō, 2, *have, hold, keep; consider; regard;* with **ōrātiōnem**, *deliver.*
Harūdēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Germany.
Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian;* as a noun, **Helvētius**, -ī, m., generally masc. pl., *the Helvetians*, a tribe that occupied what is now Switzerland.
hīberna, -ōrum, n., *winter quarters.*
hīc, **haec**, **hoc**, demonst. pron., *this; he, she, it;* abl., *on this account.*
hiemō, 1, *pass the winter.*
Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*
homō, **hominis**, m. and f., *human being, man.*
honestus, -a, -um (**honōs**, *honor*), *honorable; respected, distinguished.*
honōrificus, -a, -um (**honōs**, *honor* + **faciō**, *make*), *conferring honor.*
honōs, **honōris**, m., *honor, respect; honorable position.*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*
horreō, -ēre, **horruī**, —, *tremble at, shudder at.*
hortor, 1, *encourage, urge.*
hospes, **hospitis**, m. and f., *host; friend, guest-friend.*
hospitium, -ī, n. (**hospes**, *host*), *feeling of hospitality, friendship.*
hostis, **hostis**, m. and f., *public enemy, foe.*
hūc, adv. (cf. **hīc**, *this*), *to this place.*
hūmānitās, **hūmānitātis**, f., *humanity; refinement, culture.*

I

iaceō, -ēre, **iacuī**, —, *lie, lie dead.*
iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactum**, *throw, hurl; throw up, construct.*
iactō, 1 (frequentative of **iaciō**, *throw*), *toss about; talk about, discuss.*
iam, adv., *already, now; at last;* with negative, *no longer.*
ibi, adv., *in that place, there.*
Iccius, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Remi.
ictus, -ūs, m., *blow, stroke.*
Id., see **Īdūs.**
īdem, **eadem**, **idem**, demonst. pron. (**is**, *this, that*), *this same, the same.*
identidem, adv. (**īdem**, *the same*), *repeatedly.*
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, proper.*
Īdūs, **Īduum**, f. pl., *the Ides*, the 15th of March, May, July, and October; the 13th of the other months.
ignis, **ignis**, m., *fire.*

īgnōrō, 1, *not know, be ignorant; overlook.*

īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *forgive, pardon.*

ille, illa, illud, demonst. pron., *that, that one; he, she, it.*

illīc, adv. (**ille**, *that*), *in that place, there.*

Illyricum, -ī, n., a Roman province on the east shore of the Adriatic.

immortālis, -e, adj. (cf. **mors**, *death*), *immortal.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n. (**impediō**, *hinder*), *hindrance;* pl., *baggage* (of an army), *baggage train.*

impediō, 4 (cf. **pēs**, *foot*), *hinder, obstruct, delay.*

impedītus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **impediō**, *hinder*), *hindered, delayed, burdened; at a disadvantage.*

impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsum (**pellō**, *drive*), *drive on, incite, impel, influence.*

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *overhang.*

imperātor, imperātōris, m. (**imperō**, *command*), *commander in chief, general.*

imperātum, -ī, n. (**imperō**, *command*), *command, order.*

imperītus, -a, -um (**perītus**, *experienced*), *inexperienced, ignorant.*

imperium, -ī, n. (**imperō**, *command*), *command, dictation; authority, supreme power; supremacy, dominion.*

imperō, 1, *demand from, enjoin upon; command, order, instruct.*

impetrō, 1, *obtain, obtain one's request, gain.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, charge; fury, force.*

implōrō, 1, *beseech, beg, entreat.*

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (**pōnō**, *place*), *place on, place; impose.*

importō, 1 (**portō**, *carry*), *bring in, import.*

imprīmīs, adv. (**prīmus**, *first*), *particularly, especially.*

improbus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, malicious.*

improvīsō, adv. (**improvīsus**, *unexpected*), *suddenly.*

improvīsus, -a, -um, adj. (**prōvideō**, *foresee*), *unforeseen, unexpected;* **dē improvīsō**, *unexpectedly.*

impugnō, 1 (**pugnō**, *fight*), *fight against, attack.*

impūnē, adv. (cf. **poena**, *punishment*), *without punishment.*

impūnitās, impūnitātis, f. (cf. **poena**, *punishment*), *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

in, prep. with acc. and abl.; with acc., (*a*) with verbs of motion, *into, to; against; among; into the country of, towards;* (*b*) with expressions of time, *for, during;* (*c*) other uses, *toward, with regard to, over;* with abl., *in, within, on, among, over, in the case of.*

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set on fire.*

incidō, -ere, incidī, — (**cadō**, *fall*), *fall upon, fall in with, meet; happen.*

incīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (**caedō**, *cut*), *cut into, notch.*

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō**, *take*), *undertake, begin, commence.*

incitō, 1, *arouse, urge on.*

incolō, **-ere**, **-coluī**, —, *inhabit, live in; live, dwell.*

incolumis, **-e**, adj., *unhurt, unharmed, safe.*

incommodum, **-ī**, n., *inconvenience; disaster, loss, defeat.*

incrēdibilis, **-e**, adj. (cf. **crēdō**, *believe*), *incredible, extraordinary.*

increpitō, **1**, *blame, upbraid, abuse.*

incursus, **-ūs**, m., *attack, onset.*

incūsō, **1** (cf. **causa**, *case, charge*), *bring a charge against; reproach, blame.*

inde, adv., *from that place, from there; then.*

indicium, **-ī**, n., *information;* **per indicium**, *through spies.*

indīcō, **-ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictum** (**dīcō**, *say*), *proclaim, appoint.*

indignitās, **indignitātis**, f. (**dignitās**, *worth*), *unworthiness; insult, outrage.*

indīligenter, adv. (**dīligenter**, *carefully*), *carelessly.*

indūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead on, influence; cover.*

indulgeō, **-ēre**, **-dulsī**, **-dultum**, *favor.*

induō, **-ere**, **induī**, **indūtum**, *put on.*

ineō, **-īre**, **iniī**, **initum** (**eō**, *go*), *enter upon, begin, undertake.*

inermis, **-e**, adj. (**arma**, *arms*), *unarmed.*

īnferō, **-ferre**, **intulī**, **illātum** (**ferō**, *bear*), *bring in* or *into; wage upon, inflict; offer; cause;* **sīgna īnferre**, *advance, charge.*

īnferus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *low;* comp., **īnferior**, **-ius**, *lower;* superl., **īnfimus** or **īmus**, **-a**, **-um**, *lowest, lowest part of, bottom.*

īnflectō, **-ere**, **-flexī**, **-flexum**, *bend down, bend.*

īnfluō, **-ere**, **-flūxī**, **-fluxum** (**fluō**, *flow*), *flow into, empty into.*

ingēns, **ingentis**, adj., *huge, enormous, large.*

ingredior, **ingredī**, **ingressus sum**, *enter.*

iniciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** (**iaciō**, *throw*), *throw into* or *upon; inspire, infuse.*

inimīcus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. (**amīcus**, *friendly*), *unfriendly, hostile;* masc. as noun, *enemy.*

inīquitās, **inīquitātis**, f. (**inīquus**, *unequal*), *unevenness, inequality.*

inīquus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. (**aequus**, *equal, just*), *unjust, unequal; unfavorable.*

initium, **-ī**, n. (**ineō**, *go into*), *beginning.*

iniūria, **-ae**, f. (**iūs**, *right*), *wrong, injustice, injury, outrage;* abl. as adv., *wrongfully.*

iniussū, abl. of **iniussus**, **-ūs**, m. (**iubeō**, *order*), *without command* or *orders.*

innāscor, **-ī**, **-nātus sum** (**nāscor**, *be born*), *be born in, spring up, arise.*

innītor, **-ī**, **-nīxus sum** (**nītor**, *rest on*), *lean upon.*

innocentia, **-ae**, f., *integrity, uprightness.*

inopia, **-ae**, f., *lack, need, scarcity.*

inopīnāns, **inopīnantis**, adj., *not expecting, off one's guard.*

īnsciēns, **īnscientis**, adj. (**sciō**, *know*), *not knowing, unaware, ignorant.*

īnsequor, **-ī**, **-secūtus sum** (**sequor**, *follow*), *follow up, follow, pursue.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, f., *ambush, ambuscade; treachery; cunning.*

īnsīgne, īnsīgnis, n. (**īnsīgnis,** *marked*), *mark, sign; ornament.*

īnsīgnis, īnsignis, adj. (cf. **sīgnum,** *mark*), *marked; distinguished, remarkable.*

īnsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap upon.*

īnsistō, -ere, īnstitī, —, *step upon.*

īnsolenter, adv., *haughtily, arrogantly.*

īnstar, indecl. n., *image;* with gen., *like.*

īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum (**statuō,** *set up*), *put in place, draw up; train, educate.*

īnstitūtum, -ī, n. (**īnstituō,** *put in place*), *habit, custom, practice.*

īnstō, -āre, īnstitī, īnstātum, *stand near, come near, approach.*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *build upon, erect; draw up, arrange.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *know, understand, perceive; find out, learn.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, in the midst of; during;* **inter sē dare,** *exchange;* **inter sē differre,** *differ from each other.*

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō,** *go*), *go* or *come between, be between, intervene.*

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō,** *take*), *take between; intercept.*

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum (**claudō,** *close*), *shut off, cut off.*

interdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum (**dīcō,** *speak*), *forbid, exclude, banish.*

interdiū, adv. (cf. **diēs,** *day*), *by day.*

interdum, adv. (**dum,** *while*), *at times, sometimes.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō,** *make*), *kill, slay.*

intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō,** *throw*), *hurl between, place among;* in pass., *intervene.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interior, -ius, comp. adj., *inner;* superl., **intimus,** *innermost.*

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō,** *send*), *leave off, cease, stop.*

interneciō, interneciōnis, f. (**necō,** *kill*), *extermination, annihilation.*

interpellō, 1, *interrupt, hinder, interfere with.*

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (**pōnō,** *place*), *place between, interpose; propose.*

interpres, interpretis, m. and f., *interpreter.*

interscindō, -ere, interscidī, interscissum, *cut in two, cut down; destroy.*

intersum, -esse, interfuī, — (**sum,** *be*), *be between, intervene; concern.*

intervāllum, -ī, n. (**vāllum,** *rampart*), *interval; distance.*

intexō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *weave in, interweave.*

intrā, prep. with acc., *within, inside.*

intrō, 1, *go into, enter.*

intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō,** *lead*), *lead into, bring into.*

intrōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum

(**mittō**, *send*), *send in; let in, admit.*

intrōrsus, adv., *within.*

intueor, 2 (**tueor**, *look*), *look at, gaze upon.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **ūtor**, *use*), *unusual, uncommon, strange.*

inūtilis, -e, adj. (cf. **ūtor**, *use*), *useless, worthless.*

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō**, *come*), *come upon, find; learn.*

inveterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, — (cf. **vetus**, *old*), *grow old; become fixed.*

invictus, -a, -um, adj. (**vincō**, *conquer*), *unconquered; unconquerable.*

invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum (**videō**, *see*), *look askance at; envy.*

invītō, 1, *invite, ask.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling;* **sē invītō**, *against his will.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. **ipsīus**, intens. pron., *self, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, them; very;* in genitive, *own.*

īrācundus, -a, -um, adj., *irritable, passionate.*

irrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *laugh at, mock.*

irrīdiculē, adv., *without wit.*

is, ea, id, demonst. pron., *this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; such;* in genitive, *his, her, hers, its, their.*

ita, adv., *so, in such a way, thus; just as.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, conj. (**ita**, *so* + **que**, *and*), *and so, therefore, accordingly.*

item, adv., *in like manner, likewise, besides.*

iter, itineris, n. (**eō**, *go*), *march, journey, progress; route, road; line of march;* **iter facere**, *march;* **magnum iter**, *forced march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iuba, -ae, f., *mane* (of a horse).

iubeō, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussum**, *order, command.*

iūdicium, -ī, n. (cf. **iūdicō**, *judge*), *court, trial; opinion, judgment.*

iūdicō, 1, *judge, decide; think.*

iugum, -ī, n. (**iungō**, *join*), *yoke; ridge, height.*

iūmentum, -ī, n. (**iungō**, *join*), *draft animal, beast of burden, pack animal.*

iungō, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iūnctum**, *join.*

Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura* mountains.

iūrō, 1 (**iūs**, *right*), *take oath, swear.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right, law, justice.*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n. (**iūs**, *right* and **iūrō**, *swear*), *oath.*

iūstitia, -ae, f. (**iūstus**, *just*), *justice, fairness; uprightness.*

iūstus, -a, -um, adj. (**iūs**, *right*), *just, proper.*

iuvō, -āre, **iūvī**, **iūtum**, *help, assist.*

iūxtā, adv., *next, near.*

K

Kal., abbr. for **Kalendae**, -ārum, f., *the Calends*, the first day of each Roman month.

L

L., abbr. for **Lucius**, a Roman given name.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Titus Labienus*, a favorite officer of Caesar.

labor, labōris, m., *toil, effort, hardship.*

labōrō, 1 (**labor,** *toil*), *toil, strive for; be hard pressed.*

lacessō, -ere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, *harass, provoke, annoy; attack.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

lapis, lapidis, m., *stone.*

largior, 4 (cf. **largiter,** *generously*), *give generously; bribe.*

largiter, adv., *generously, much;* **largiter posse,** *have great influence.*

largītiō, largītiōnis, f. (**largior,** *give generously*), *liberality; bribery.*

lassitūdō, lassitūdinis, f., *weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv. (**lātus,** *broad*), *broadly, widely.*

lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, *lie hid.*

lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f. (**lātus,** *broad*), *breadth.*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in western Germany.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide, extensive.*

latus, lateris, n., *side, flank* (of an army).

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*

laxō, 1, *widen, extend, open.*

lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f. (cf. **lēgātus,** *ambassador*), *embassy, commission.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, commissioner, envoy; lieutenant, staff-officer.*

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion.*

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. (**legiō,** *legion*), *belonging to a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva.*

lēnitās, lēnitātis, f. (cf. **lēniter,** *smoothly*), *smoothness, gentleness.*

lēniter, adv., *smoothly, gently, gradually.*

Leucī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

levis, -e, adj., *light* (in weight).

levitās, levitātis, f. (**levis,** *light*), *lightness; fickleness.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*

līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free; undisputed.*

līberālitās, līberālitātis, f. (cf. **līber,** *free*), *generosity.*

līberāliter, adv. (cf. **līber,** *free*), *generously, kindly.*

līberē, adv. (**līber,** *free*), *freely.*

līberī, -ōrum, m. (**līber,** *free*), *children* (of free parents).

lībertās, lībertātis, f. (**līber,** *free*), *freedom, liberty.*

liceor, 2, *bid* (at an auction).

licet, -ēre, licuit, impers., *it is lawful, permitted, allowed.*

Lingonēs, -um, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue; language.*

linter, lintris, f., *small boat, skiff.*

Liscus, -ī, m., a magistrate of the Aeduans.

littera, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); pl., *letter, epistle.*

locus, -ī, m., pl. **loca, -ōrum,** n., *place, position, locality; room, chance, opportunity; condition, state.*

longē, adv. (**longus,** *long*), *far, at a distance; by far.*

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **longus,** *long*), *long continued.*

longitūdō, longitūdinis, f. (**longus,** *long*), *length.*

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long; distant; extended.*

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk.*

lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae, f., *luxury.*

M

M., abbr. for **Mārcus.**

māchinātiō, māchinātiōnis, f., *contrivance, machine; engine.*

magis, comp. adv., see **magnopere.**

magistrātus, -ūs, m., *public office, magistracy, administration; public officer, magistrate.*

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f. (**magnus,** *great*), *greatness, size, extent.*

magnopere, adv. (**magnus,** *great*), *greatly, much, earnestly;* comp., **magis,** *more, rather;* superl., **maximē,** *most, very, especially.*

magnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, serious;* comp., **maior, -ius;** superl., **maximus, -a, -um.**

maior, maius, comp. of **magnus,** *greater;* **maior nātū,** *elder;* masc. pl. as a noun, *ancestors.*

male, adv., *badly, adversely;* comp., **peius,** *worse;* superl., **pessimē,** *worst.*

maleficium, -ī, n. (**male,** *badly* + **faciō,** *do*), *evil deed, mischief, harm, outrage.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil;* comp., **peior;** superl., **pessimus.**

mandātum, -ī, n. (**mandō,** *intrust*), *instructions, order, command, message.*

mandō, 1 (**manus,** *hand* + **dō,** *give*), *give over, intrust; command, direct, instruct.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain, stay;* **in eō manēre,** *abide by that.*

manipulus, -ī, m., *company* (of soldiers); *maniple* (third of a cohort).

mānsuētūdō, mānsuētūdinis, f., *gentleness, kindness.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; force, band.*

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany.

Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., *of the sea, maritime.*

Marius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Gaius Marius,* a famous Roman general; defeated the Cimbri and the Teutoni.

matara, -ae, f., *javelin.*

māter, mātris, f., *mother;* **mātrēs familiae,** *married women, matrons.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, n. (**māter,** *mother*), *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare,** *give in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *to take in marriage, marry.*

Matrona, -ae, m., a river in northern Gaul; the modern *Marne.*

mātūrē, mātūrius, mātūrrimē, adv. (**mātūrus,** *ripe*), *early, quickly.*

mātūrō, 1 (**mātūrus,** *ripe*), *ripen; hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, early;* comp., **mātūrior;** *superl.,* **mātūrrimus.**

maximē, adv., see **magnopere.**

maximus, -a, -um, adj., see **magnus.**

Maximus, -ī, m., see **Fabius.**

mediocriter, adv. (cf. **medius,** *in the middle of*), *moderately, in an ordinary degree.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle of, middle of, mid-.*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory, recollection, tradition.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind; thought.*

mēnsis, mēnsis, m., *month.*

mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

mercēs, mercēdis, f., *price, hire, pay.*

mereor, 2, *deserve, earn.*

merīdiēs, -ēī, m. (**medius,** *mid-* + **diēs,** *day*), *midday, noon.*

meritum, -ī, n. (**mereor,** *deserve*), *desert, merit.*

Messāla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul B.C. 61.

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, *measure, deal out.*

Metius, -ī, m., *Marcus Metius*, a friend of Ariovistus.

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*

mīlia, see **mīlle.**

mīlitāris, -e, adj. (**mīles,** *soldier*), *of a soldier, military;* **rēs mīlitāris,** *art of war.*

mīlle, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand;* pl. as noun., **mīlia, mīlium,** n., *thousands;* **mīlia passuum,** *thousands of paces, miles.*

minimē, superl. adv., see **parum.**

minimum, adv. (**minimus,** *least*), *very little;* **minimum posse,** *have very little power.*

minimus, -a, -um, superl. adj., see **parvus.**

minor, minus, comp. adj., see **parvus.**

minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum (**minus,** *less*), *lessen, diminish.*

minus, comp. adv., see **parum.**

mīror, 1, *wonder.*

mīrus, -a, -um (**mīror,** *wonder*), *wonderful, strange;* **mīrum in modum,** *astonishingly.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., **miserior, miserrimus,** *unhappy, wretched, miserable.*

misericordia, -ae, f., *pity, mercy.*

miseror, 1 (**miser,** *unhappy*), *lament, bemoan, deplore.*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, *send; hurl.*

mōbilitās, mōbilitātis, f., *changeableness, fickleness.*

modo, adv. (abl. of **modus,** *measure*), *only;* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, manner, kind;* **quem ad modum,** *as, how.*

moenia, moenium, n., *city walls, walls.*

molestē, adv., *with annoyance;* **molestē ferre,** *be vexed.*

molīmentum, -ī, n., *exertion, trouble.*

molō, -ere, moluī, molitum, *grind.*

moneō, 2, *warn, advise, instruct.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*

mora, -ae, f., *delay.*

Morinī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

morior, morī or **morīrī, mortuus sum** (**mors,** *death*), *die.*

moror, 1 (**mora,** *delay*), *delay, wait; hinder.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, stir, remove;* with **castra,** *break.*

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. (**multus,** *much*), *great number, multitude, crowd; the common people.*

multō, adv. (**multus,** *much*), *by far, much.*

multum, plūs, plūrimum, adv. (**multus,** *much*), *much, very greatly.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much;* pl., *many;* masc. pl. as noun, *many persons;* neut. pl. as noun, *many things;* **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* comp., **plūs, plūris,** *more;* pl., *several, many;* superl., **plūrimus, -a, -um,** *most;* pl. as noun, *very many;* **quam plūrimī,** *as many as possible.*

mūnīmentum, -ī, n. (**mūniō,** *fortify*), *fortification, defense.*

mūniō, 4, *defend with a wall, fortify, protect.*

mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f. (**mūniō,** *fortify*), *a fortifying; rampart, fortification; strength.*

mūnus, mūneris, n., *present, gift.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*

N

nactus, -a, -um, see **nancīscor.**

nam, conj., *for.*

Nammēius, -ī, m., a prominent Helvetian.

namque, conj. (**nam,** *for*), *for.*

nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, *get, meet with, find.*

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born; spring up, rise.*

Nasua, -ae, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Cimberius.

nātiō, nātiōnis, f. (**nāscor,** *be born*), *race, tribe, people.*

nātūra, -ae, f. (**nāscor,** *be born*), *nature, character, disposition.*

nātus, -ūs, m. (**nāscor,** *be born*), *birth;* **maior nātū,** *elder.*

nāvicula, -ae, f. (diminutive of **nāvis,** *ship*), *small boat, skiff.*

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.*

nāvō, 1, *do well;* with **operam,** *do one's best.*

nē, 1. conj., *that not, in order that not, lest; not;* 2. adv., **nē . . . quidem,** *not even.*

-ne, enclitic, merely the sign of a question; **utrum . . . necne,** *whether . . . or not.*

nec, see **neque.**

necessāriō, adv. (**necessārius,** *necessary*), *necessarily, of necessity.*

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, urgent; critical;* masc. as noun, *kinsman, friend.*

necessitās, necessitātis, f. (cf. **necessārius,** *necessary*), *necessity, urgency.*

necessitūdō, necessitūdinis, f. (cf. **necessārius,** *kinsman*), *close relations, intimacy.*

necne, conj., *or not.*

necō, 1 (**nex,** *death*), *put to death.*

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *disregard, neglect.*

negō, 1, *say . . . not.*

negōtium, -ī, n., *business, concern, task, undertaking; trouble.*

Nemetēs, -um, m., a tribe living on the border of Germany and Gaul.

nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**, m. and f. (**nē**, *not* + **homō**, *man*), *no one, nobody.*

neque, nec (**nē**, *not* + **que**, *and*), *and not, nor;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*

nēquīquam, adv. (**nē**, *not* + **quisquam**, *any*), *in no way, to no purpose, in vain.*

Nerviī, **-ōrum**, m., a tribe of Belgians.

nervus, **-ī**, m., *sinew;* pl., *force, strength.*

neu, conj., see **nēve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrīus**, adj. (**nē**, *not* + **uter**, *which of two*), *neither.*

nēve, neu, conj., *and not, and lest, nor.*

nex, necis, f., *death.*

nihil, indecl. n., *nothing;* as adv., *not at all.*

nihilō, adv. (**nihil**, *nothing*), *by no means;* **nihilō minus**, *nevertheless.*

nisi, conj. (**sī**, *if*), *if not, unless, except.*

nītor, -ī, nīxus sum, *rest on, depend on.*

nōbilis, -e, adj., *well-known, noted; noble.*

nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f. (**nōbilis**, *well-known*), *fame; the nobility; noble birth, high rank.*

noctū, adv. (**nox**, *night*), *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. (**nox**, *night*), *night, by night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (**nē**, *not* + **volō**, *wish*), *not wish, be unwilling.*

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name;* **suō nōmine**, *on his own account.*

nōminātim, adv. (**nōminō**, *name*), *by name, one by one, expressly.*

nōminō, 1 (**nōmen**, *name*), *call by name, name, mention.*

nōn, adv., *not;* **nōn iam**, *no longer.*

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nōnnūllīus**, adj. (**nūllus**, *no*), *some, several.*

nōnnumquam, adv. (**numquam**, *never*), *sometimes.*

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**novem**, *nine*), *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -æ, f., chief town of the Norici.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *Norican, of the Norici*, a tribe in modern western Austria.

nōs, nostrum or **nostrī**, pl. of **ego**, *we.*

noster, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. (**nōs**, *we*), *our, ours;* masc. pl. as noun, *our men.*

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones in Belgic Gaul.

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, novel, unusual;* **novae rēs**, *revolution, change of government;* **novissimum agmen**, *the rear;* masc. pl. as noun, *the rear.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry*, of women only.

nūdō, 1 (**nūdus**, *naked*), *make bare, strip; leave unprotected.*

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *naked, bare, unprotected.*

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nūllīus**, adj. (**nē**, *not* + **ūllus**, *any*), *not any, no;* as noun, *no one, none.*

num, interrog. particle, hinting a negative answer.

numerus, -ī, m., *number, amount;* in **numerō**, *among.*

Numidae, -ārum, m., a tribe of barbarians in northern Africa.

numquam, adv. (**nē**, *not* + **umquam**, *ever*), *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, 1 (**nūntius**, *messenger*), *announce, report.*

nūntius, -ī, m. (**novus**, *new*), *messenger; message.*

nūper (**noviper**), superl. **nūperrimē**, adv., *recently.*

nūtus, -ūs, m., *nod; command.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.*

obaerātus, -a, -um, adj., *in debt;* masc. as noun, *debtor, serf.*

obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead towards; extend.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *throw in the way, place in front, expose.*

obitus, -ūs, m., *destruction.*

oblīviscor, -ī, **oblītus sum**, *forget.*

obsecrō, 1, *implore, entreat.*

observō, 1 (**servō**, *keep safe*), *watch over, guard; regard.*

obses, obsidis, m. and f., *hostage.*

obsīgnō, 1, *seal.*

obstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind, pledge.*

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold, keep, possess.*

obtulī, see **offerō**.

obveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō**, *come*), *come to, come upon, meet.*

occāsus, -ūs, m. (**cadō**, *fall*), *a going down, setting.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (**caedō**, *cut*), *cut down, slay, kill;* masc. of the perf. part. as noun, *the dead.*

occultō, 1, *hide, conceal.*

occultus, -a, -um, adj., *hidden, secret;* in **occultō**, *in secret, in hiding.*

occupō, 1, *seize, occupy; employ.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run in the way of, meet, come against; attend to.*

Ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean, the Atlantic.*

Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in western Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**octō**, *eight*), *eighth.*

octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **octō**, *eight*), *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, defective, perf. tenses used with meaning of pres., *hate.*

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *hurt, harm.*

offēnsiō, offēnsiōnis, f. (**offendō**, *hurt*), *offense.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum (**ferō**, *bear*), *bring towards, offer; carry, take.*

officium, -ī, n., *service, duty, allegiance.*

omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *let go, disregard.*

omnīnō, adv. (**omnis**, *all*), *in all, entirely; at all.*

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, entire;* masc. pl. as noun, *all;* neut. pl. as noun, *all things.*

onus, oneris, n., *load, burden, weight.*

opera, -ae, f. (**opus**, *work*), *work, exertion;* **dare operam**, *do one's best.*

opīniō, opīniōnis, f., *idea, impression, expectation, reputation.*

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, impers., *it is necessary, it is proper;* translated personally, *must, ought.*

oppidānus, -ī, m. (**oppidum,** *town*), *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *fortified town, town.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, lucky, convenient, advantageous.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum (**premō,** *press*), *press down, crush, overwhelm.*

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f. (**oppugnō,** *fight against*), *assault, attack; method of assault.*

oppugnō, 1 (**pugnō,** *fight*), *fight against, assault, attack, storm.*

ops, opis, f., *help, aid;* pl., *wealth, resources, power.*

optimē, adv., superl. of **bene,** see **bene.**

optimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **bonus,** see **bonus.**

1. **opus, operis,** n., *work, labor; fortification.*

2. **opus,** indecl. n., *need, necessity;* **opus est,** *there is need.*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f. (**ōrō,** *speak*), *a speaking, speech, address.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *row, rank; order, arrangement;* **prīmī ōrdinēs,** *centurions of the first rank.*

Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetians.

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *rise, begin, start; be descended from;* **oriēns sōl,** *rising sun; east.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *decoration, adornment.*

ōrō, 1, *speak; beg, entreat, plead.*

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme western Gaul.

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum (**tendō,** *stretch*), *stretch out before; show, display; assert.*

P

P., abbr. for **Publius,** a Roman given name.

pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis, f. (**pābulum,** *fodder*), *foraging.*

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder.*

pācō, 1 (**pāx,** *peace*), *make peaceful, subdue, pacify.*

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton.*

palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, *spread out, stretch out, extend.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal, similar, like.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. (**parō,** *prepare*), *prepared, ready.*

pāreō, 2, *appear; obey, yield to.*

parō, 1, *prepare, get ready.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion; side, quarter; direction;* **quā ex parte,** *and for this reason;* **magnā ex parte,** *to a large extent.*

partim, adv. (**pars,** *part*), *partly;* **partim . . . partim,** *some . . . others.*

parum, minus, minimē, adv. (cf. **parvus,** *small*), *little* or *too little, less, least.*

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. (diminutive of **parvus,** *small*), *very small, slight.*

parvus, -a, -um, minor, minimus, adj., *small* or *little, less, least.*

1. **passus, -a, -um,** perf. part. of **pandō.**

2. **passus, -ūs,** m., *double step, pace,* five Roman feet; **mīlle passūs,** *a mile.*

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (**pateō,** *lie open* + **faciō,** *make*), *lay open, open up, open.*

patēns, patentis, adj. (pres. part. of **pateō,** *lie open*), *open.*

pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, *lie open; extend, reach.*

pater, patris, m., *father.*

patior, -ī, passus sum, *suffer, endure; allow, permit.*

patrius, -a, -um, adj. (**pater,** *father*), *of a father, ancestral.*

paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few;* as noun, *a few persons* or *things.*

paulātim, adv. (cf. **paulum,** *a little*), *little by little, gradually.*

paulisper, adv. (cf. **paulum,** *a little*), *for a short time.*

paulō, adv. (cf. **paulum,** *a little*), *a little, somewhat.*

paululum, adv. (diminutive of **paulum,** *a little*), *a very little.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, 1, *do wrong, sin.*

pedes, peditis, m. (**pēs,** *foot*), *foot-soldier;* pl., *infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. (**pēs,** *foot*), *on foot;* referring to soldiers, *infantry.*

Pedius, -ī, m, the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Pedius,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

peior, -ius, comp. of **malus,** see **malus.**

pellis, pellis, f., *skin, hide.*

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, drive out, rout; defeat.*

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, *weigh, weigh out, pay.*

per, prep. with acc., *through, by way of; over; by, by means of, through the help of; on account of.*

percontātiō, percontātiōnis, f., *inquiring, questioning.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō,** *lead*), *lead through; build, construct.*

pereō, -īre, periī, peritum (**eō,** *go*), *be destroyed, perish.*

perfacilis, -e, adj. (**facilis,** *easy*), *very easy.*

perferō, -ferre, pertulī, perlātum (**ferō,** *bear*), *carry through; carry among, spread; bear, endure, suffer, undergo.*

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō,** *make*), *carry through, carry out, complete, bring about, accomplish, cause.*

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum (**frangō,** *break*), *break through.*

perfuga, -ae, m. (**perfugiō,** *flee*), *deserter.*

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum (**fugiō,** *flee*), *flee for refuge, seek refuge with; desert.*

perīclitor, 1 (**perīculum,** *trial, danger*), *try, test, make a test.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj. (**perīculum,** *danger*), *dangerous.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *trial, danger, risk.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *tried, skilled, experienced.*

perlātus, see **perferō.**

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum (**maneō,** *remain*), *stay through, remain; continue.*

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *yield, allow, permit.*

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (**moveō**, *move*), *move thoroughly; arouse, alarm, influence.*

perniciēs, -ēī, f. (cf. **nex**, *death*), *destruction, ruin.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj. (**paucī**, *few*), *very few.*

perpetuō, adv. (**perpetuus**, *continuous*), *continuously.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *continuous, lasting; entire.*

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through, force a passage.*

persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum (**sequor**, *follow*), *follow up.*

persevērō, 1, *persist, persevere.*

persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, *pay in full, pay; suffer.*

perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look through, see through; understand, perceive.*

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade, induce, convince.*

perterreō, 2, *frighten thoroughly, terrify, dismay.*

pertinācia, -ae, f. (**pertineō**, *hold through*), *stubbornness, obstinacy.*

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, — (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold through, extend, reach; pertain, concern.*

perturbō, 1, *disturb thoroughly, throw into confusion.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō**, *come*), *come to, arrive at, reach.*

pēs, **pedis**, m., *foot;* **pedem referre**, *retreat.*

petō, -ere, petīvī or petiī, petītum, *seek, hunt for, aim at, make for; beg, ask.*

phalanx, **phalangis**, f., *a compact body* (of soldiers), *phalanx.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin.*

Pīsō, **Pīsōnis**, m., the name of a Roman family. (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul B.C. 61, I. 26; 690. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul B.C. 58, father-in-law of Caesar, I. 110; 218. (3) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul B.C. 112, grandfather of (2), I. 218.

placeō, 2, *please;* impers., *it pleases.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *plain.*

plēbēs, -eī, or **plēbs**, **plēbis**, f., *people, common people.*

plērumque, adv. (**plērusque**, *the larger part of*), *for the most part, generally.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., *the larger part of, most of.*

plūrimum, adv. (**plūrimus**, *most*), superl. of **multum**, *most, very much;* **plūrimum posse**, *be very powerful;* **plūrimum valēre**, *be the most influential.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **multus**, see **multus.**

plūs, **plūris**, adj., comp. of **multus**, see **multus.**

poena, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

polliceor, 2, *promise, offer.*

pondus, **ponderis**, n. (cf. **pendō**, *weigh*), *weight.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, **positum**, *place, put, establish;* with **castra**, *pitch.*

pōns, **pontis**, m., *bridge.*

poposcī, see **poscō.**

populātiō, **populātiōnis**, f. (**popu-**

lor, *devastate*), *devastation, ravaging.*

populor, 1, *devastate, lay waste, ravage, pillage.*

populus, -ī, m., *people, a people, nation.*

porrēctus, -a, -um, adj., *extended.*

porta, -ae, f., *gate.*

portō, 1, *carry, take, transport.*

portōrium, -ī, n., *toll, tax, duty.*

poscō, -ere, **poposcī**, —, *ask, demand, request.*

positus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **pōnō**, *place*), *situated.*

possessiō, **possessiōnis**, f. (**possideō**, *occupy*), *occupation, possession; possessions.*

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *occupy, possess, control.*

possum, **posse**, **potuī**, —, *be able, can, be powerful;* **plūrimum posse**, *be very powerful;* **minimum posse**, *have very little power.*

post, prep. with acc., *behind, after;* adv., *afterwards, later.*

posteā, adv. (**post**, *after*), *afterwards, later.*

posteāquam, conj. (**posteā**, *afterwards* + **quam**, *than*), *after.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., **posterior**, **postrēmus** (**post**, *after*), *next, following.*

postquam, conj. (**post**, *after* + **quam**, *than*), *after, as soon as.*

postrēmō, adv. (**postrēmus**, *last*), *finally, at last.*

postrīdiē, adv. (**posterus**, *next* + **diēs**, *day*), *on the next day, the following day.*

postulātum, -ī, n. (**postulō**, *demand*), *demand, claim.*

postulō, 1, *demand, ask, require.*

potēns, **potentis**, adj. (pres. part. of **possum**, *be able*), *powerful, influential.*

potentātus, -ūs, m. (**potēns**, *powerful*), *chief power, control, supremacy.*

potentia, -ae, f. (**potēns**, *powerful*), *power, influence.*

potestās, **potestātis**, f. (**potēns**, *powerful*), *power, control; chance, opportunity.*

potior, -īrī, **potītus sum**, *become master of, gain control of, gain, obtain.*

potius, comp. adv., *rather.*

prae, prep. with abl., *before; in comparison with.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed.*

praebeō, 2, *hold out, offer, furnish.*

praecaveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum (**caveō**, *be on one's guard*), *guard against in advance, take precautions.*

praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *go before; surpass.*

praeceps, **praecipitis**, adj. (cf. **caput**, *head*), *headlong.*

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō**, *take*), *take beforehand; direct.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially, particularly.*

praedicō, 1, *proclaim, declare, report; boast.*

praedor, 1, *plunder, rob, raid.*

praefectus, -ī, m. (**praeficiō**, *put in command of*), *officer, commander.*

praeferō, -ferre, **praetulī**, **praelātum**

(**ferō**, *bear*), *place before, outdo, surpass.*

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō**, *make*), *put in command of, place in charge of.*

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *send ahead.*

praemium, -ī, n., *prize, reward.*

praeoptō, 1, *choose, prefer.*

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (**pōnō**, *place*), *place at the head of, put in command of.*

praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum (**scrībō**, *write*), *order, dictate, prescribe.*

praescrīptum, -ī, n. (**praescrībō**, *order*), *order, dictation.*

praesēns, praesentis, adj. (pres. part. of **praesum**, *be before*), *present.*

praesentia, -ae, f. (**praesēns**, *present*), *presence;* **in praesentiā**, *for the present.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison, defense; protection, support.*

praestō, -āre, praestitī, praestitum, *stand before; excel, surpass; show, exhibit;* impers., *it is better.*

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, — (**sum**, *be*), *be before* or *over, be in charge of, command.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *beyond, past; except; besides, in addition to.*

praetereā, adv. (**praeter**, *beyond*), *in addition, besides, furthermore.*

praeteritus, -a, -um, adj. (**praeter**, *past* + **eō**, *go*), *past;* neut. pl. as noun, *the past.*

praeterquam, adv., *except.*

praetor, praetōris, m., *commander, praetor.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. (**praetor**, *commander*), *of a commander, praetorian;* **praetōria cohors**, *body guard.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, *press, push hard, assail.*

prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsum, *lay hold of, seize, catch.*

pretium, -ī, n., *price.*

prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty.*

prīdiē, adv. (**prae**, *before* + **diēs**, *day*), *on the day before.*

prīmipīlus, -ī, m., *chief centurion.*

prīmō, adv. (**prīmus**, *first*), *at first, in the first place.*

prīmum, adv. (**prīmus**, *first*), *first, in the first place.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of **prior**), *first;* **prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak;* **prīmā nocte**, *in the first part of the night.*

prīnceps, prīncipis, adj. (**prīmus**, *first* + **capiō**, *take*), *chief, first;* masc. as noun, *chief, leader, prominent man.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m. (**prīnceps**, *chief*), *chieftainship, leadership.*

prior, prius, comp. adj., *former;* masc. pl. as noun, *those in front;* superl., **prīmus.**

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **prior**, *former*), *former, old, ancient.*

prius, comp. adv. (**prior**, *former*), *before, sooner;* with **quam**, a conj., *sooner than, before.*

prīvātim, adv. (**prīvātus**, *private*), *privately; as private citizens.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., *private, personal, individual.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; for, in behalf of; for, in place of, as; in return for, in consideration of; in view of; in accordance with.*

probō, 1, *approve; prove, show.*

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, *go*), *go forward, advance, proceed.*

Procillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus.

procul, adv., *at a distance, a long way off.*

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *lean forward; fall down.*

prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run forward, rush ahead.*

prōdeō, -īre, prōdiī, prōditum (eō, *go*), *go forward, advance.*

prōdō, -ere, prōdidī, prōditum (dō, *give*), *give forth; hand down.*

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, *lead*), *lead forth, lead out; draw up.*

proelior, 1 (**proelium**, *battle*), *engage in battle, fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, fight.*

profectiō, profectiōnis, f. (**proficīscor**, *start out*), *a starting out, departure.*

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *start out, depart, go; come.*

prōflīgō, 1, *strike down, overcome; rout.*

profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum (**fugiō**, *flee*), *flee, run away, escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj. (**nāscō**, *be born*), *descended, sprung.*

prōgredior, progredī, -gressus sum, *go forward, proceed, advance.*

prohibeō, 2 (**habeō**, *have, keep*), *keep from, keep out, hinder, prevent, prohibit; defend.*

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *throw forward, cast, hurl; give up, reject, abandon.*

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (**moveō**, *move*), *move forward, push forward, advance.*

prope, prep. with acc., *near, close to;* adv., **prope, propius, proximē**, *near, almost.*

prōpellō, -ere, propulī, propulsum (**pellō**, *drive*), *drive forward, drive, put to flight, rout, repel.*

properō, 1, *hasten, hurry.*

propinquitās, propinquitātis, f. (**propinquus**, *near*), *nearness; kinship, relationship.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. (**prope**, *near*), *near, close by;* as noun, *relative, kinsman.*

propius, see **prope**.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (**pōnō**, *place*), *put forward, present, display; make known, disclose.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of, because of.*

propterea, adv. (**propter**, *on account of*), *on account of this, for this reason;* **propterea quod**, conj., *for the reason that, because.*

prōpugnō, 1 (**pugnō**, *fight*), *fight for, defend, make a sortie.*

prōpulsō, 1 (frequentative of **propellō**, *drive forward*), *drive forward, drive off, repel.*

prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum (**sequor**, *follow*), *follow, pursue;* with **ōrātiōne**, *address.*

prōspectus, -ūs, m. (**prōspiciō**, *look forward*), *view, outlook, prospect.*

prōspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look forward, look out for, see to, provide for.*

prōtinus, adv., *at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, 1, *drive in confusion, frighten away, repel.*

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum (**videō,** *see*), *see ahead, foresee; attend to, care for, see to.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

prōvolō, 1, *fly forth, rush out.*

proximē, adv., superl. of **prope** (**proximus,** *nearest*), *nearest; last, most recently.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **propior,** *nearest, next, following; shortest; last;* with the force of a prep. with acc., *next to.*

prūdentia, -ae, f. (cf. **prōvideō,** *see beforehand*), *foresight, wisdom, prudence.*

pūblicē, adv. (**pūblicus,** *public*), *in the name of the state, officially.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public, of the state;* **rēs pūblica,** *commonwealth, state, government.*

Publius, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

pudor, pudōris, m., *sense of shame, sense of honor.*

puer, puerī, m., *boy;* pl., *children.*

pugna, -ae, f. (**pugnō,** *fight*), *fighting, battle.*

pugnō, 1, *fight, contend, strive.*

pulsus, see **pellō.**

pūrgō, 1, *clean, clear, excuse, free from blame.*

putō, 1, *think, consider.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *of the Pyrenees* (*mountains*); between Gaul and Spain.

Q

Q., abbr. for **Quīntus.**

quā, adv. (abl. of **quī,** *who*), *by which way, where.*

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **quattuor,** *four*), *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. **quattuor,** *four* + **centum,** *hundred*), *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *seek, look for; ask, inquire about.*

quaestor, quaestōris, m. (**quaerō,** *seek*), *quaestor,* Roman officer in charge of public money and military finances.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., *of what sort.*

quam, 1. interrog. adv., *in what manner, how;* 2. rel. adv., with a superl., *as . . . as possible;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **quam diū,** *as long as;* 3. conj., with a comp., *than;* **priusquam,** *sooner than.*

quantopere, adv. (**quantus,** *how great* + **opus,** *work*), *how greatly, how much.*

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great, how large, how many;* neut. as noun, *how much;* **tantus . . . quantus,** *as much as, as great as.*

quārē, adv. (**quī,** *which* + **rēs,** *thing*), *on account of which thing, why.*

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**quattuor,** *four*), *fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj. (**quattuor,** *four* + **decem,** *ten*), *fourteen.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and.*

queror, -ī, questus sum, *lament, bemoan.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; he who, those who;* **quem ad modum,** *as;* **quam ob rem,** *why, therefore.*

quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj., *which, what;* **quem ad modum,** *how;* **quam ob rem,** *why.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam,** indef. pron., *a certain, a certain one, one; certain, some.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at any rate;* **nē . . . quidem,** *not even.*

quīn, conj., *that not, but that, from;* **quīn etiam,** *nay, even; moreover.*

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam; quisnam, quidnam, interrog. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever.*

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj. (**quīnque,** *five* + **decem,** *ten*), *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**quīnque,** *five* + **centum,** *hundred*), *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**quīnque,** *five*), *five each, five.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **quīnque,** *five*), *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**quīnque,** *five*), *fifth.*

Quīntus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who, which, what;* **quid,** *why, how.*

quis, quae, quid, indef. pron. used after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** *any one, anything; someone, something; any.*

quisnam, see **quīnam.**

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron., *any, any one, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque and (as adj.) **quodque,** indef. pron., *each, each one, every, every one.*

quisquis, quicquid, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvis, quaevīs, quidvīs and (as adj.) **quodvīs,** indef. pron., *any one, anything whatever, any.*

quō, 1. adv., rel., *where;* interrog., *whither;* indef., *anywhere;* 2. conj., with a comp., *in order that, so that;* **eō . . . quō,** *the . . . the.*

quod, conj., *in that, as to the fact that, that, namely that; so far as; because;* **propterea quod,** *for the reason that, because;* **quod sī,** *but if.*

quōminus, conj., *so that not, that not, but that, to.*

quoniam, conj., *since now, since, because.*

quoque, conj., *also, too.*

quot, indecl. num. adj., *how many.*

quotannīs, adv. (cf. **annus,** *year*), *yearly, annually.*

quotiēns, adv., *how many times, how often.*

R

rādīx, rādīcis, f., *root;* pl. with **montis,** *foot, base.*

raeda, -ae, f., *wagon* (with four wheels).

rāmus, -ī, m., *bough, branch.*

rapīna, -ae, f., *robbery, plunder; plundering.*

ratiō, ratiōnis, f., *reckoning, list, estimate; plan, method, design;*

strategy, shrewdness; reason, cause; terms, condition; consideration.

ratis, ratis, f., *raft.*

Rauracī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

recēns, recentis, adj., *late, recent.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (capiō, *take*), *take back, receive, admit;* **sē recipere,** *betake one's self, withdraw, retreat; recover.*

recūsō, 1, *refuse, object.*

redāctus, see **redigō.**

reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum (dō, *give*), *give back, return; render.*

redēmptus, see **redimō.**

redeō, -īre, rediī, reditum (eō, *go*), *go back, return; descend.*

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (agō, *drive*), *bring back, bring under, reduce; make, render.*

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (emō, *buy*), *buy back, buy up, purchase.*

redintegrō, 1, *renew, restore, revive.*

reditiō, reditiōnis, f. (**redeō,** *return*), *return.*

Redonēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, *lead*), *lead back, bring back.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum (ferō, *bear*), *bring back, report;* **pedem referre,** *retreat.*

refringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum (frangō, *break*), *break open.*

regiō, regiōnis, f., *direction, district, part, quarter, region.*

rēgnum, -ī, n. (cf. **rēx,** *king*), *royal power, control, sovereignty.*

rēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, *throw*), *throw back, drive back, repel; cast aside, reject.*

relanguēscō, -ere, -languī, —, *become weak* or *feeble.*

relātus, see **referō.**

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave, abandon;* pass., *be left, remain.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **relinquō,** *leave*), *left, remaining, the rest, the rest of, the other;* **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future;* neut. as noun, *remainder, rest.*

remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum (maneō, *remain*), *remain behind, stay.*

reminīscor, -ī, —, *call to mind, recollect, remember.*

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (mittō, *send*), *send back, return, cast back; weaken, lessen, relax.*

remōtus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **removeō,** *move back*), *removed, remote, far away.*

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (moveō, *move*), *move back, remove, dismiss.*

remūneror, 1 (cf. **mūnus,** *reward*), *reward, repay.*

Rēmus, -a, -um, *Reman;* generally masc. pl., a tribe of Belgians.

renūntiō, 1 (**nūntiō,** *announce*), *bring back word, report.*

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum (pellō, *drive*), *drive back, repulse, repel.*

repente, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **repente,** *suddenly*), *sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *secure, find; find out, discover, learn.*

repetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum (petō, *seek*), *seek again, ask back, demand back.*

repraesentō, 1, *do at once.*

reprehendō, -ere, **-prehendī**, **-prehēnsum** (cf. **prēndō**, *lay hold of*), *hold back; find fault with, blame, censure.*

repudiō, 1, *put aside, refuse, reject.*

repugnō, 1 (**pugnō**, *fight*), *fight back, oppose; offset.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, fact, cause; circumstance, condition, interests; item, list; business;* **rēs pūblica**, *state;* **rēs familiāris**, *private property;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *art of war;* **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain supply;* **rēs gestae**, *achievements;* **novae rēs**, *revolution;* **rēs nostrae**, *our fortune;* **in extrēmīs rēbus**, *in the greatest danger;* **quam ob rem**, *why, therefore.*

rescindō, -ere, **rescidī**, **rescissum**, *cut down, break down, destroy.*

rescīscō, -ere, **-scīvī**, **-scītum**, *find out, learn.*

rescrībō, -ere, **-scrīpsī**, **-scrīptum** (**scrībō**, *write*), *write again; transfer.*

reservō, 1 (**servō**, *keep*), *keep back, reserve.*

resistō, -ere, **restitī**, —, *stand against, resist, oppose, withstand.*

respiciō, -ere, **-spēxī**, **-spectum**, *look back.*

respondeō, -ēre, **-spondī**, **-spōnsum**, *answer, reply.*

respōnsum, -ī, n. (**respondeō**, *answer*), *answer, reply.*

respuō, -ere, **respuī**, —, *reject, spurn.*

restituō, -ere, **-stituī**, **-stitūtum** (**statuō**, *set up*), *set up again, rebuild, restore, renew.*

retineō, -ēre, **-tinuī**, **-tentum** (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold back, restrain, detain, hinder; keep, retain.*

revellō, -ere, **-vellī**, **-vulsum**, *tear away, pull away.*

revertō, -ere, **-vertī**, **-versum** and **revertor**, -ī, **-versus sum** (**vertō**, *turn*), *turn back, return, come* or *go back;* the perf. tenses are usually active in form, the others passive.

revocō, 1 (**vocō**, *call*), *call back, recall.*

rēx, **rēgis**, m., *king.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river *Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the river *Rhone.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a stream).

rogō, 1, *ask, ask for, request.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman;* generally masc. pl., *the Romans.*

rubus, -ī, m., *bramble, brier.*

rūmor, **rumōris**, m., *report, rumor.*

rūpēs, **rūpis**, f., *rock, cliff.*

rūrsus, adv. (shortened from **reversus**, from **revertō**, *turn back*), *again.*

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Sabis, **Sabis**, m., a river in northern Gaul.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently;* comp., **saepius**, *more often, again and again.*

saepenumerō, adv. (**saepe**, *often* + **numerus**, *number*), *very often, repeatedly.*

saepēs, saepis, f., *hedge.*

sagittārius, -ī, m., *archer, bowman.*

salūs, salūtis, f., *welfare, preservation; security, safety.*

sanciō, -īre, **sānxī, sānctum,** *guarantee, arrange, agree.*

sānitās, sānitātis, f., *soundness, good sense, sanity.*

Santonī, -ōrum (**Santonēs,** -um), m., a tribe of western Gaul.

sarcinae, -ārum, f., *packs, personal luggage.*

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently;* indecl. adj., *enough, sufficient, rather;* indecl. noun, *enough;* **satis habēre,** *be satisfied.*

satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (**satis,** *enough* + **faciō,** *do*), *do enough, make amends; apologize.*

satisfactiō, satisfactiōnis, f. (**satisfaciō,** *do enough*), *satisfaction; apology.*

saxum, -ī, n., *rock, large stone.*

scelus, sceleris, n., *wickedness, wicked deed, crime.*

scientia, -ae, f. (**sciō,** *know*), *knowledge, skill.*

sciō, 4, *know, understand.*

scrībō, -ere, **scrīpsī, scrīptum,** *write.*

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield, buckler.*

sē, see **suī.**

sēcrētō, adv., *separately, secretly, privately.*

sectiō, sectiōnis, f., *booty.*

sēcum, for **cum sē.**

secundum, prep. with acc. (cf. **sequor,** *follow*), *after, besides, along.*

secundus, -a, -um, adj. (**sequor,** *follow*), *second; favorable, successful, prosperous.*

sed, conj., *but, but yet, but in fact.*

sēdecim, indecl. num. adj. (**sex,** *six* + **decem,** *ten*), *sixteen.*

sēdēs, sēdis, f., *seat, residence, abode, settlement.*

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *rebellious, mutinous.*

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of east central Gaul.

semel, num. adv., *once;* **semel atque iterum,** *time and again.*

sēmentis, sēmentis, f., *a sowing.*

semper, adv., *always, constantly.*

senātor, senātōris, m. (**senex,** *old*), *elder; senator.*

senātus, -ūs, m. (**senex,** *old*), *body of elders, senate.*

senex, senis, adj., *old;* masc. as noun, *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**sex,** *six*), *six each.*

Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.

sententia, -ae, f. (**sentiō,** *perceive*), *opinion, thought, view; purpose.*

sentiō, -īre, **sēnsī, sēnsum,** *perceive, feel, realize, think.*

sentis, sentis, m., *brier, thorn.*

sēparātim, adv. (**parō,** *prepare*), *separately, individually.*

septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*

septentriō, septentriōnis, m. (cf. **septem,** *seven*), *the seven stars of the Great Bear;* hence *the north.*

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**septem,** *seven*), *seventh.*

sepultūra, -ae, f., *burial.*

Sēquana, -ae, m., a river in Gaul; the modern *Seine.*

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *Sequanian;* generally masc. pl., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; accompany, attend.*

servīlis, -e, adj. (**servus,** *slave*), *of a slave, of slaves, servile.*

servitūs, servitūtis, f. (**servus,** *slave*), *slavery, subjection.*

servō, 1, *keep, maintain.*

servus, -ī, m., *slave.*

sescentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**sex,** *six* + **centum,** *hundred*), *six hundred.*

sēsē, see **suī.**

sētius, adv., *less;* **nihilō sētius,** *nevertheless.*

seu, see **sīve.**

sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **sex,** *six*), *sixty.*

Sextius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Baculus.**

sī, conj., *if, whether, to see whether;* **quod sī,** *but if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus, in such a way; as follows.*

sīcut or **sīcutī,** adv. (**sīc,** *so* + **ut,** *as*), *so as, just as.*

sīgnifer, sīgniferī, m. (**sīgnum,** *standard* + **ferō,** *bear*), *standard bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, sīgnificātiōnis, f. (**sīgnificō,** *make signs*), *announcement, indication, signal.*

sīgnificō, 1 (**sīgnum,** *sign* + **faciō,** *make*), *make signs, make plain, show, announce, indicate.*

sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, standard, ensign;* **sīgna ferre,** *advance;* **sīgna īnferre,** *charge;* **sīgna convertere,** *wheel about.*

silva, -ae, f., *wood, woods, forest.*

silvestris, -e, adj. (**silva,** *wood*), *wooded.*

simul, adv., *at the same time.*

simulātiō, simulātiōnis, f. (**simulō,** *pretend*), *pretense, feigning.*

simulō, 1, *pretend, feign.*

sīn, conj., *but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singulāris, -e, adj. (**singulī,** *one by one*), *one by one; singular, remarkable, unusual.*

singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *one by one, single, separate.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left;* fem. as noun, *left hand.*

sīve, seu, conj., *or if;* **sīve . . . sīve,** *either . . . or, whether . . . or.*

socer, socerī, m., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*

sollicitō, 1, *arouse, disturb, stir up; tempt; incite.*

solum, -ī, n., *soil.*

sōlum, adv. (**sōlus,** *alone*), *alone, only;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. **sōlīus,** adj., *alone, only.*

soror, sorōris, f., *sister;* **soror ex mātre,** *half-sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot.*

spatium, -ī, n., *space, distance, period of time.*

speciēs, -ēī, f., *sight, appearance, show.*

spectō, 1, *look at, face, lie; consider.*

speculātor, speculātōris, m. (**speculor,** *spy*), *spy, scout.*

speculor, 1, *spy.*

spērō, 1 (**spēs,** *hope*), *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*

spīritus, -ūs, m., *breath; pride, haughtiness, airs.*

spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), f., *of one's own will;* **suā sponte**, *by their own influeuce, of his own free will.*

statim, adv., *immediately, at once, on the spot.*

statiō, statiōnis, f., *guard, outpost, picket.*

statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum, *set up, put in place; decide, determine; pass sentence, judge.*

statūra, -ae, f., *size* (of body), *stature.*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, adj. (**stīpendium**, *tribute*), *paying tribute, tributary.*

stīpendium, -ī, n., *tribute, tax.*

strepitus, -ūs, m., *uproar, din, noise.*

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, *be eager for, strive for, desire; pay attention to; favor.*

studium, -ī, n. (**studeō**, *be eager*), *eagerness, zeal; devotion.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl.; 1, with acc., *under, up to, towards, near to;* 2, with abl., *under, at the foot of.*

subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead off, withdraw.*

subeō, -īre, subiī, subitum (**eō**, *go*), *go under, come up to, approach; undergo, endure.*

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *throw from under, cast upward, hurl.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly.*

sublātus, see **tollō**.

sublevō, 1, *raise up, lighten; aid, assist, help.*

subministrō, 1, *furnish, supply, provide.*

submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *send up, send, dispatch.*

submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (**moveō**, *move*), *move away, drive away, dislodge.*

subruō, -ere, subruī, subrutum, *undermine, dig under.*

subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum (**sequor**, *follow*), *follow closely, follow up, pursue.*

subsidium, -ī, n., *relief, reserves; aid, help, assistance, reënforcement.*

subsistō, -ere, substitī, —, *stand fast, halt, hold one's position, make a stand.*

subsum, -esse, subfuī, — (**sum**, *be*), *be near, be at hand, be close by.*

subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum (**traho**, *drag*), *take away, withdraw.*

subvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring up, carry up, convey up.*

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *come up to, approach near to; come up, advance.*

Suēbus, -a, -um, *of the Suebi;* generally masc. pl., a tribe of central Germany.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgians.

suī (gen.), **sibi, sē** (**sēsē**), **sē** (**sēsē**), third pers., reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

Sūlla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, consul B.C. 88, dictator 81–79.

sum, esse, fuī, —, *be, exist, live; come to pass, happen; remain.*

summa, -ae, f. (**summus,** *highest*), *sum, total; control, management;* **summa imperiī,** *chief command.*

summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **superus,** see **superus.**

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take away, take up, gather; take, assume;* with **supplicium,** *inflict.*

sūmptus, -ūs, m., *expense.*

superbē, adv., *haughtily, proudly, arbitrarily.*

superior, -ius, adj., superl. of **superus,** see **superus.**

superō, 1 (**superus,** *above*), *conquer, defeat.*

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *refrain from, postpone, omit.*

supersum, -esse, superfuī, — (**sum,** *be*), *be over, survive, remain.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., *above, over;* comp., **superior,** *higher, upper; former, previous;* superl., **summus,** *highest, greatest, chief; remarkable, most important;* **summus mōns,** *the top of the mountain.*

suppetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum (**petō,** *seek*), *be near, be on hand.*

supplex, supplicis, adj., *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis, f., *public prayer, thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, adv. (**supplex,** *suppliant*), *humbly.*

supplicium, -ī, n. (**supplex,** *suppliant*), *punishment, capital punishment, torture.*

supportō, 1 (**portō,** *carry*), *bring up, convey.*

suprā, adv., *above, before.*

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō,** *take*), *take up, undertake, assume.*

suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f. (**suspiçor,** *suspect*), *suspicion.*

suspicor, 1, *suspect, mistrust.*

sustentō, 1 (frequentative of **sustineō,** *hold up*), *hold up, sustain, withstand, hold out.*

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō,** *hold*), *hold up, withstand, sustain; stand up; hold out, endure.*

suus, -a, -um, possess. adj., *his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, hers, its, their;* masc. pl. as noun, *his* (*their*) *men, friends, countrymen;* neut. as noun, *his* (*their*) *property, possessions.*

T

T., abbr. for **Titus.**

tabernāculum, -ī, n, *tent.*

tabula, -ae, f., *board; tablet, list.*

taceō, 2, *be silent, keep silent, leave unmentioned.*

tacitus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **taceō,** *be silent*), *silent.*

tam, adv., *so far, so, to such a degree.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*

tametsī, conj., *although.*

tandem, adv., *at length, at last, finally;* **quid tandem,** *what, pray.*

tantopere, adv. (**tantus,** *so great* + **opus,** *work*), *so greatly, so eagerly; so bitterly.*

tantulus, -a, -um, adj. (diminutive of **tantus,** *so great*), *so small, so trifling.*

tantum, adv. (**tantus,** *so great*), *so much, so far, to such a degree.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so large, so great, so much;* **tantī,** *of such value;* **tantus . . . quantus,** *as much as, as great as.*

tardō, 1 (**tardus,** *slow*), *make slow, delay; check.*

tardus, -a, um, adj., *slow, weary.*

tēctum, -ī, n., *shelter, roof.*

tegimentum, -ī, n., *covering.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, weapon; dart, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um, adj. (**temerē,** *rashly*), *rash, reckless, headstrong.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, recklessly, blindly.*

temperantia, -ae, f. (**temperō,** *control one's self*), *self-control, prudence, moderation.*

tempero, 1, *control one's self, refrain;* **sibi temperāre quīn,** *restrain themselves from.*

temptō, 1, *try to gain, attempt, try; tempt.*

tempus, temporis, n., *time; crisis, emergency;* **omnī tempore,** *always;* **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future.*

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum or **tēnsum,** *stretch; stretch out, extend.*

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold, have, keep, occupy; keep back, restrain, bind.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young.*

ter, num. adv. (cf. **trēs,** *three*), *three times.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back;* **terga vertere,** *flee.*

terra, -ae, f., *the earth, ground, soil, land.*

terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. (**terra,** *earth*), *of earth.*

terror, terrōris, m., *fright, panic, alarm.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. (**ter,** *three times*), *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, n. (cf. **testis,** *witness*), *will.*

testimōnium, -ī, n. (cf. **testis,** *witness*), *evidence, proof.*

testis, testis, m. and f., *witness.*

testūdō, testūdinis, f., *tortoise; bulwark of shields, testudo,* formed by a body of soldiers holding their shields over their heads.

Teutonī, -ōrum (Teutonēs, -um), m., a tribe of northern Germany.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini;* generally masc. pl., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, *fear, be afraid.*

timidus, -a, -um, adj. (**timeō,** *fear*), *fearful, afraid, cowardly, timid.*

timor, timōris, m. (**timeō,** *fear*), *fear, dread, cowardice, fright, panic.*

Titūrius, -ī, m., see **Sabīnus.**

Titus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

tolerō, 1 (cf. **tollō,** *lift*), *bear, endure, sustain;* with **famem,** *satisfy.*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, take up, carry away, remove; give up;* perf. part., *elated.*

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.

tormentum, -ī, n., *windlass; war engine.*

totidem, adv., *just as many, the same number.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. **tōtīus,** adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*

trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum (dō, *give*), *give over, give up, surrender, yield.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, *lead*), *lead over* or *across, bring over.*

trāgula, -ae, f., *javelin, dart.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, *drag, draw; hurry along.*

trānō, 1, *swim over* or *across.*

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over, beyond.*

trānseō, -īre, trānsiī, trānsitum (eō, *go*), *go across, cross; pass through.*

trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīctum, *pierce through, transfix.*

transgredior, trānsgredī, trānsgressus sum, *go across, cross.*

trānsportō, 1 (**portō,** *carry*), *carry across, bring over.*

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj. (**vertō,** *turn*), *turned across; crosswise;* **trānsversa fossa,** *cross-ditch.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**trēs,** *three* + **centum,** *hundred*), *three hundred.*

trēs, tria, gen. **trium,** num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of north-eastern Gaul.

Tribocī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans in Belgic Gaul.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune;* **tribūnus mīlitum,** *military tribune,* of whom there were six in each legion.

tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, *distribute; assign, ascribe, attribute, give credit;* **magnopere tribuere,** *give especial credit.*

trīduum, -ī, n. (**trēs,** *three* + **diēs,** *day*), *three days.*

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **trēs,** *three*), *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. **trēs,** *three*), *three each, triple.*

triplex, triplicis, adj. (cf. **trēs,** *three*), *triple.*

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy, dejected.*

trīstitia, -ae, f. (**trīstis,** *sad*), *sadness, dejection.*

Troucillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus,* a Gaul, personal friend of Caesar.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.

tum, adv., *at that time, then; then too;* **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also, both . . . and;* **tum dēmum,** *then finally* or *at length.*

tumultus, -ūs, m., *uproar, confusion, noise; uprising, insurrection.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hillock.*

Turonī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly; disgraceful, shameful.*

turpitūdō, turpitūdinis, f. (**turpis,** *ugly*), *disgrace, shame.*

turris, turris, f., *tower.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *secure, safe, protected.*

U

ubi, rel. adv., *where; when, as soon as.*

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *avenge; punish.*

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. **ūllīus,** adj., *any;* as noun, *any one.*

ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., *farther, more remote;* superl., **ultimus,** *farthest, most remote.*

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond.*

ultrō, adv., *willingly, voluntarily;* **ultrō citrōque**, *back and forth.*

ultus, see **ulcīscor.**

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā, adv. (**ūnus**, *one*), *in the same place;* with **cum**, *at the same time with, along with.*

unde, rel. adv., *from which place, whence.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**ūnus**, *one* + **decem**, *ten*), *tenth.*

undique, adv. (**unde**, *whence*), *from all sides, on all sides.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. (**ūnus**, *one*, + **vertō**, *turn*), *all, whole, entire, in a lump.*

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnīus**, num. adj., *one, only one, alone;* **ūnō tempore**, *at the same time;* neut. as noun, *one fact.*

urbs, urbis, f., *city; the city* (of Rome).

urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, *press, push hard.*

usque, adv., *all the way, up to, as far as; even.*

ūsus, -ūs, m. (**ūtor**, *use*), *use, experience, practice; profit, advantage;* **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage.*

ut, utī, adv., *how, as, as if;* conj. with indic., *as, when;* conj. with subjunc. of purpose, *that, in order that;* with subjunc. of result, *that, so that.*

uter, utra, utrum, gen. **utrīus**, adj., *which of two, which.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. **utrīusque**, adj., *each of two, either, both.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtī, see **ūtor.**

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ; accept, adopt; enjoy, receive; practice, display.*

utrimque, adv. (**uterque**, *each of two*), *on each side.*

utrum, conj. (**uter**, *which of two*), *whether;* **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not.*

uxor, uxōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacō, 1, *be empty, lie unoccupied.*

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. (**vacō**, *be empty*), *empty, unoccupied; clear, free.*

vadum, -ī, m., *shallow place, ford.*

vagor, 1, *wander, roam, rove.*

valeō, 2, *be strong, have power* or *influence.*

Valerius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Procillus, Cabūrus, Flaccus, Troucillus.**

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart, entrenchment, earthworks.*

Vangionēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *changing, varying.*

vāstō, 1, *lay waste, plunder, ravage.*

vāticinātiō, vāticinātiōnis, f., *prediction, prophecy.*

vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., *tax, toll, tribute;* pl., *revenue.*

vehementer, adv., *vigorously, fiercely, severely, thoroughly, very much.*

vel, conj., *or;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*

Veliocassēs, -ium, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., *swift, rapid.*

velut, adv., *as, just as.*

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (**dō**, *give*), *offer for sale, sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme western Gaul.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive;* impers. in pass., **ventum est**, *he* (*they*) *came.*

Verbigenus, -ī, m., a district of Helvetia.

verbum, -ī, n., *word;* **facere verba**, *speak, plead.*

vereor, 2, *reverence; fear, dread.*

vergō, -ere, —, —, *incline, slope, lie.*

vergobretus, -ī, m., *vergobret*, the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate.

vērō, adv. (**vērus**, *true*), *in fact; but, however.*

versō, 1 (frequentative of **vertō**, *turn*), *keep turning;* pass., *be engaged, be busy; be, remain.*

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, *turn;* **terga vertere**, *flee.*

Verucloetius, -ī, m., an ambassador of the Helvetians.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true.*

Vesontiō, Vesontiōnis, f., a town of the Sequanians.

vesper, vesperī or **vesperis**, m., *evening;* **sub vesperum**, *towards nightfall.*

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. (**vetus**, *old*), *old, veteran.*

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid.*

vetus, veteris, adj., *old, former, ancient, long-standing;* comp., lacking; superl., **veterrimus.**

vēxillum, -ī, n., *standard, ensign, flag.*

vexō, 1, *harass, disturb; plunder, overrun.*

via, -ae, f., *way, road; march.*

victor, victōris, m. (**vincō**, *conquer*), *conqueror, victor;* as adj., *victorious, flushed with victory.*

victōria, -ae, f. (**victor**, *conqueror*), *victory.*

victus, see **vincō.**

victus, -ūs, m., *mode of living, living.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village, hamlet.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see, notice, perceive, know;* pass., *be seen, seem, appear; seem best.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *watching, period of watching, watch*, one of the four equal parts of the time from sunset to sunrise.

vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, vīminis, n., *twig, osier.*

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *bind, fetter.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat, overcome.*

vinculum, -ī, n. (**vinciō**, *bind*), *chain, fetters;* **ex vinculīs**, *in chains.*

vīnea, -ae, f., *shed* (movable), *shelter.*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

vir, virī, m., *man.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

virtūs, virtūtis, f. (**vir**, *man*), *manliness; valor, courage;* pl., *good qualities, virtues.*

vīs, vīs, f., *force, strength, power; large number;* **vim facere**, *offer violence.*

vīta, -ae, f., *life.*

vītō, 1, *avoid, shun.*

vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.*

Vocciō, Vocciōnis, m., a king of the Noricans.

vocō, 1 (**vōx**, *voice*), *call, summon.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme southeastern Gaul.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing, desire; mean, intend.*

voluntās, voluntātis, f. (**volō**, *wish*), *wish, desire, free will; good will; approval, consent.*

voluptās, voluptātis, f. (**volō**, *wish*), *satisfaction, pleasure, enjoyment.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, utterance, tones of the voice;* pl., *words, cries.*

vulgō, adv. (**vulgus**, *common people*), *commonly, generally.*

vulgus, -ī, n., *the common people, crowd, the public, populace.*

vulnerō, 1 (**vulnus**, *wound*), *wound, hurt.*

vulnus, vulneris, n., *a wound.*

vultus, -ūs, m., *looks, expression, countenance.*

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M—6-40

Tx
47
C1

1 Caesar, J.
C128r Caesar's Gallic
Edited by Riess,

NAME	DATE

10 M-10-40-39108

LIBRARY SCHOOL OF EDUCATION STANFORD
97618